



DuPont Performance Building Solutions

# DuPont™ Tyvek® Water-Resistive and Air Barriers (WRB) and DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installation Guidelines

Windows and Doors Installed  
**BEFORE** the Tyvek® WRB



**For Type III and Type V Wood-Framed Structures Including Multi-Family and Light Commercial Buildings**



December 2025

# Table of Contents

Introduction.....	3	Non-Flanged Window with Floating Lintel and Brick Facade.....	152
Applicable Products.....	3	Non-Flanged Door on Slab.....	164
Additional Materials Based on Project Requirements, Details, and Specifications <sup>1</sup> .....	4	Non-Flanged Window (Using <b>DuPont™ VersaFlange™</b> ).....	171
Warranty.....	4	Non-Flanged Door (Using <b>DuPont™ VersaFlange™</b> ).....	179
Applicable Structures and Performance Criteria.....	5	Storefront Window on Slab.....	188
Water-Resistive Barrier (WRB) Code Requirements.....	7	Storefront Window on Knee Wall.....	194
Flashing Products Code Requirements.....	7	Hybrid Condition – <b>DuPont™ Tyvek™ WRB</b> Terminated with <b>DuPont™ StraightFlash™</b> and/or <b>DuPont™ FlexWrap™</b> and Integrated with <b>DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products</b> .....	202
Additional Codes and Standards Information for DuPont™ Tyvek® Commercial Air and Water Barrier Systems.....	8	<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB</b> Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed <b>BEFORE</b> the <b>Tyvek® WRB</b> ).....	207
General Instructions.....	8	Key Installation Requirements for <b>DuPont™ Tyvek® WRBs</b> .....	207
Special Considerations.....	8	Temporary Fastening.....	208
Installation Methods for <b>DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products</b> Installed <b>BEFORE</b> the <b>DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB</b> .....	11	Alternate Fasteners.....	209
Key Installation Requirements for Drainable Window/Door Installation.....	11	Installation Method for New Construction.....	210
Alternate Installation Considerations.....	12	DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Integration.....	212
Integral Flanged Window.....	13	Continuity.....	214
Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6” of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows).....	18	Penetrations.....	228
Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods.....	36	Flashing Beam/Truss Penetrations.....	232
Integral Flanged Door.....	66	Knife Plates.....	234
Drip Cap Installation for Windows and Doors.....	72	Handling Tears and Holes.....	238
Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”).....	77	Tilt Wall Instructions.....	239
Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using <b>DuPont™ VersaFlange™</b> ).....	95	Façade Considerations.....	240
Field Applied Flanged Window (Using <b>DuPont™ VersaFlange™</b> ).....	112	Product Composition and UV Stability.....	242
Field Applied Flanged Door (Using <b>DuPont™ VersaFlange™</b> ).....	120	Design Considerations.....	242
Brick Mold Window (Using <b>DuPont™ VersaFlange™</b> ).....	130	Safety and Handling.....	242
Brick Mold Door (Using <b>DuPont™ VersaFlange™</b> ).....	137	Hazard Statement.....	243
Non-Flanged Windows and Doors (Using “Wrap the Cavity” Method).....	146	For More Information.....	243

## Introduction

This Installation Guideline pertains to wood-framed buildings of any height, of Type III and Type V construction, including multi-family buildings and light commercial buildings. See [Applicable Structures and Performance Criteria](#) for more information regarding building types and building envelope performance.

This Installation Guideline outlines recommended installation techniques and details for **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** installed **BEFORE DuPont™ Tyvek® Water Resistive and Air Barriers**, referred to in this document as **DuPont™ Tyvek® WRBs**. This includes **DuPont™ Tyvek® HomeWrap®**, **Tyvek® StuccoWrap®**, **Tyvek® DrainWrap™**, **Tyvek® ThermaWrap® LE**, **Tyvek® CommercialWrap®** and/or **Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D**. Where applicable, **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** are shown installed in conjunction with **Tyvek® WRBs** in hybrid conditions. Both **Tyvek® WRBs** and **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** meet or exceed the requirements of a water-resistive barrier as defined in the 2024 International Building Code (IBC).

Always check [building.dupont.com](http://building.dupont.com) for the latest versions of DuPont Installation Guidelines and other product literature.

## Applicable Products

### Water-Resistive and Air Barriers (Tyvek® WRBs)

Product	Dimensions	Area
<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® HomeWrap®</b>	3 ft x 100 ft	300 ft <sup>2</sup>
	3 ft x 165 ft	495 ft <sup>2</sup>
	5 ft x 200 ft	1,000 ft <sup>2</sup>
	9 ft x 100 ft	900 ft <sup>2</sup>
	9 ft x 150 ft	1,350 ft <sup>2</sup>
	10 ft x 100 ft	1,000 ft <sup>2</sup>
	10 ft x 150 ft	1,500 ft <sup>2</sup>
<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® StuccoWrap®</b>	5 ft x 200 ft	1,000 ft <sup>2</sup>
<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® DrainWrap™</b>	9 ft x 125 ft	1,125 ft <sup>2</sup>
	10 ft x 125 ft	1,250 ft <sup>2</sup>
<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® ThermaWrap® LE</b>	5 ft x 150 ft	750 ft <sup>2</sup>
	9 ft x 100 ft	900 ft <sup>2</sup>
<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® CommercialWrap®</b>	5 ft x 200 ft	1,000 ft <sup>2</sup>
	10 ft x 125 ft	1,250 ft <sup>2</sup>
<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D</b>	5 ft x 200 ft	1,000 ft <sup>2</sup>
	10 ft x 125 ft	1,250 ft <sup>2</sup>

### Fluid Applied Products

Product	Quantity
<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™</b>	5 gal, 50 gal
<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Flashing and Joint Compound+</b>	28 oz, 3.5 gal

### Self-Adhered Flashing Products

Product	Width
<b>DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ</b>	2.75 in
<b>DuPont™ FlexWrap™</b>	6 in
	9 in
<b>DuPont™ StraightFlash™</b>	4 in
	9 in
<b>DuPont™ VersaFlange™</b>	6 in
<b>DuPont™ Flashing Tape</b>	4 in
	6 in
	9 in
	12 in

### Flashing Integration Membrane

Product	Dimensions	Area
<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™</b>	9 in x 300 ft	225 sq ft

### Installation Accessories

Product	Type	Quantity
<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape</b>	2 in Bulk Pack	6 rolls/bulk pack
	3 in Bulk Pack	
<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® Metalized Tape</b>	3 in x 82 ft Rolls	12 rolls/case
<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Staples</b> or other cap staples for Stinger® Cap Stapler	7/8 in, 1-1/4 in, and 1-1/2 in lengths	2,000/box
	3/8 in and 5/8 in lengths	2,016/box
<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Nails</b>	1 in electro-galvanized ring shank nail	2,000/box
<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Screws</b>	2 in dia. plastic cap, 1-3/4 in screw length	1,000/box
<b>Great Stuff Pro™ Window &amp; Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant</b>	Can (reusable dispensing gun sold separately)	20 oz
<b>Great Stuff Pro™ Gaps &amp; Cracks Polyurethane Foam Sealant</b>	Can (reusable dispensing gun sold separately)	20 oz
<b>DuPont™ RainVent™ Battens</b>	5/8 in x 3/8 in x 8 ft	40/pack

Tower® Residential Sealant<sup>1</sup>

TRUFAST® Walls Grip-Deck® screws with Thermal-Grip FastCap™ washers (TRUFAST® Walls formerly Rodenhouse)<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>For information regarding installation and performance of Tower® Residential Sealant, refer questions to Tower at 866-897-7568.

<sup>2</sup>For information regarding installation of TRUFAST® Walls fasteners, refer to the [Key Installation Requirements for DuPont™ Tyvek® WRBs](#) section of this document.

## Additional Materials Based on Project Requirements, Details, and Specifications<sup>1</sup>

- Backer Rod
- Sealant<sup>2</sup>
- Adhesive/Primer<sup>2</sup>
- Brushes for Surface Preparation
- J-Roller
- Trowels

<sup>1</sup>Apply per manufacturers' guidelines. **For non DuPont products, DuPont assumes no liability in use of recommended products** — installers need to evaluate suitability of recommended products in their end-use applications.

<sup>2</sup>For information regarding chemical compatibility of sealants, see technical bulletin [Chemical Compatibility of Representative Building Sealants and Adhesives/Primers](#).

## Warranty

Please refer to the [DuPont Building Envelope Solutions Products 10-Year Limited Warranty for Wood-Framed Multi-Family and Light Commercial Buildings](#).

**NOTE:** In order to make a claim under the DuPont Performance Building Solutions 10-Year Limited Product and Labor Warranty, you must have met all of the terms and conditions of the warranty, including use of the applicable DuPont Installation Guidelines available at the date of original installation. In the event that a specific detail or installation technique is not covered in the DuPont Installation Guidelines at the time of construction, then the Key Installation Requirements outlined in this document must have been followed in order to make a claim under the warranty. It is in the sole discretion of DuPont to determine if full compliance with the Key Installation Requirements exists. Please contact DuPont or a DuPont Representative if you have any questions regarding any DuPont Installation Guideline.

## Applicable Structures and Performance Criteria

### Applicable Structures

**These Installation Guidelines pertain solely to Wood-Framed Multi-Family and Light Commercial Buildings as defined below.**

DuPont categorizes structures into three primary groups:

- i.) **“Single-Family Residential Buildings”** are defined as fully-detached one or two family structures, as well as townhouse structures not more than three stories above grade plane as defined in the 2024 International Residential Code (IRC) Section R101.2, both to the extent they are exclusively Residential Use building structures.
- ii.) **“Wood-Framed Multi-Family and Light Commercial Buildings”** are defined by DuPont as the following (must meet **ALL** criteria):
  - a. Constructed of wood-based structural exterior framing of Type III or Type V Construction\* (IBC Chapter 6); and
  - b. Does not exceed 2024 IBC max height (Table 504.3) for Type V construction (70 ft.) or Type III construction (85 ft.), including allowances for Automatic Sprinkler height increase (IBC 504.1 and Table 504.4) and ‘podium’ structures outlined in the Special Provisions\* (IBC Section 510); and
  - c. Design requirements for the building envelope do not exceed air barrier performance of ASTM E1677 (10.8 psf structural load, 65 mph equivalent wind load), and water infiltration resistance criteria of 6.24 psf (50 mph equivalent wind-driven rain) when tested in accordance with ASTM E331, ASTM E1105, or equivalent.

\*Special Provisions (IBC Section 510) allows for a “horizontal building separation”, or ‘podium’, to be built under the wood-framed Type III or Type V building. The podium is typically constructed of steel framing or concrete. Podium-style buildings are included under “Wood-Framed Multi-Family and Light Commercial Buildings”, as long as all other definition criteria (a. through c. above) are met.
- iii.) **“Commercial and High-Performance Buildings of Any Height”** are defined by DuPont as any of the following:
  - a. Structures constructed of steel-based structural exterior framing and any exterior sheathing, or
  - b. Structures with exterior above grade walls constructed of concrete or concrete masonry units (CMU), or
  - c. Structures of any height and construction type (including any framing type) that are designated as high-performance. “High-performance” is defined as air barrier performance exceeding ASTM E1677 and/or water infiltration resistance criteria exceeding 6.24 psf when tested in accordance with ASTM E331, ASTM E1105, or equivalent.

**NOTE:** “Podium” style structures with wood-framed floors built above steel-framed or concrete/CMU floors are covered under “Wood-Framed Multi-Family and Light Commercial Buildings” unless they are “high-performance”.

### Water-Resistive Barrier Performance Requirements

These Installation Guidelines pertain to Wood-Framed Multi-Family and Light Commercial Buildings with air barrier performance not exceeding ASTM E1677 (10.8 psf structural load, 65 mph equivalent wind load), and water infiltration resistance criteria not exceeding 6.24 psf (50 mph equivalent wind-driven rain) when tested in accordance with ASTM E331, ASTM E1105, or equivalent.

Buildings with high-performance air barrier designs are defined by DuPont as those with air barrier performance equivalent to ASTM E2357 (or other exceeding ASTM E1677), and/or water infiltration resistance criteria greater than 6.24 psf when tested in accordance with ASTM E331, ASTM E1105, or equivalent. Installation of DuPont Building Envelope Solutions Products on high-performance buildings requires the use of the [DuPont™ Tyvek® Mechanically-Fastened Water-Resistive and Air Barrier \(WRB\) and DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installation Guidelines for Commercial and High Performance Buildings of Any Height](#).

### Allowable Building Height and Number of Stories

Chapter 5 of the 2024 International Building Code (IBC) contains information regarding the maximum height and number of stories for buildings of Group R Occupancy Classification (IBC Section 310). Including increased allowances for automatic sprinklers and a “podium” horizontal building separation (Section 510), Group R buildings of Type III or Type V construction can have the following **maximum heights above grade plane:**

#### Buildings with Group R (Residential) Occupancy Classification

Type of Construction	Maximum Building Height in Feet Per 2024 IBC Table 504.3
VA	70
VB	60
IIIA	85
IIIB	75

**For Wood-Framed Multi-Family and Light Commercial Buildings up to 70 feet in height, any DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB can be used. For buildings between 70 and 85 feet in height, DuPont™ Tyvek® CommercialWrap® or DuPont™ Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D must be used on all above grade wood-framed exterior walls, and 3” Tyvek® Tape must be used.**

**NOTE:** In general, [Tyvek® CommercialWrap®](#) or [Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D](#) are recommended for Wood-Framed Multi-Family and Light Commercial Buildings due to their increased durability and UV exposure limit which can help accommodate longer construction times. See [Product Composition and UV Stability](#) section for more information.

## Applicable Structures and Performance Criteria

### DuPont Building Envelope Solutions Products Installation Considerations for Wood-Framed Multi-Family and Light Commercial Buildings

These Installation Guidelines should be used for buildings which meet the applicable structures definitions and performance criteria on the previous page. The following table provides a summary of typical installation information. For more information, please see the respective section in this document.

Installation Considerations	Total Building Height Above Grade Plane <sup>1</sup>	
	70 Feet and Under	70 – 85 Feet
<b>Performance Criteria</b>	Building air barrier performance not exceeding ASTM E1677, <b>AND</b> WRB and self-adhered flashing water infiltration resistance criteria not exceeding 6.24 psf when tested in accordance with ASTM E331, ASTM E1105, or equivalent.	
<b>Tyvek® WRB<sup>2</sup></b>	<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® HomeWrap®, Tyvek® DrainWrap™, Tyvek® StuccoWrap®, Tyvek® ThermaWrap® LE<sup>3</sup>, Tyvek® CommercialWrap®, Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D</b>	<b>Tyvek® CommercialWrap®, Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D</b> (required on all above grade wood-framed exterior walls)
<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products</b>	Can be used on any above grade exterior wall where specified in hybrid details in this guide. Recommended for use on above grade exterior CMU and/or concrete walls. Refer to the <a href="#">DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™ and DuPont Flashing Products Installation Guidelines</a> for additional information.	
<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape</b>	2" (3" required when using <b>Tyvek® DrainWrap™, Tyvek® StuccoWrap®, or Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D</b> )	3"
<b>Typical Recommended Fasteners and Spacing<sup>4</sup></b>	1" <b>DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Staples or Nails</b> (or equivalent) fastened along stud lines spaced at 6" – 18" vertically	2" <b>DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Screws</b> or approved TRUFAST® Walls Fasteners (formerly Rodenhouse) 1" plastic cap fasteners are considered temporary fasteners
<b>Air Barrier Details</b>	Required when the designated building envelope performance requirements are equivalent to ASTM E1677	
<b>Tyvek® WRB Terminations to Sheathing</b>	<b>DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products</b>	
<b>Recommended Window/Door Head Flap Treatment</b>	<b>DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape or DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products</b>	<b>DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products</b> Install mechanical fasteners through flashing as needed for increased holding power
<b>Self-Adhered Flashing Patches behind Cladding Fasteners</b>	Required when water infiltration resistance criteria for the building envelope exceeds 0.56 psf (15 mph equivalent wind-driven rain), nominal test pressure per ASTM E1677. See <a href="#">Alternate Fastening</a> section for more information.	

<sup>1</sup>Height above grade plane based on the approved calculation method as defined in architectural plans/construction documents.

<sup>2</sup>Buildings requiring NFPA 285 compliance must use **Tyvek® CommercialWrap®** or **Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D** in accordance with [DuPont NFPA 285 documentation](#).

<sup>3</sup>Use **DuPont™ Tyvek® Metalized Tape** when taping **Tyvek® ThermaWrap® LE**.

<sup>4</sup>For increased holding power and for higher air and water holdout performance, DuPont recommends fasteners of sufficient length to penetrate securely into the stud. Temporary Fastening methods can be used. See [Temporary Fastening](#) section for more information.

## Water-Resistive Barrier (WRB) Code Requirements

The 2024 International Building Code (Section 1402.2 Weather Protection) requires that “exterior walls shall provide the building with a weather-resistant exterior wall envelope. The exterior wall envelope shall be designed and constructed in such a manner as to prevent the accumulation of water within the wall assembly by providing a water-resistive barrier behind the exterior veneer, as described in Section 1403.2, and a means for draining water that enters the assembly to the exterior.” The exterior wall envelope shall include flashing, as described in Section 1404.4. Section 1403.2 (Water-resistive barrier) states that “not fewer than one layer of No. 15 asphalt felt, complying with ASTM D226 for Type 1 felt or other approved materials, shall be attached to the studs or sheathing, with flashing as described in Section 1404.4 in such a manner as to provide a continuous water-resistive barrier behind the exterior veneer.”

The **DuPont™ Tyvek® WRBs** listed below qualify as approved water-resistive barriers based on ICC-ES AC38 Acceptance Criteria according to the associated Evaluation Reports:

- ICC-ES Evaluation Report ESR 2375
  - **DuPont™ Tyvek® HomeWrap®**
  - **DuPont™ Tyvek® StuccoWrap®**
  - **DuPont™ Tyvek® DrainWrap™**
  - **DuPont™ Tyvek® CommercialWrap®**
  - **DuPont™ Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D**
- ICC-ESR-1993: **DuPont™ Tyvek® ThermaWrap® LE**

**DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™** meets ICC-ES AC212, Acceptance Criteria for Water-Resistive Coatings Used as Water-Resistive Barriers Over Exterior Sheathing, per the following:

- Intertek Code Report: CCRR-0307 for **Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™**

Air leakage control and air barriers are required in the IECC-2024 Sections R402.4 and C402.5. Specifically, Section C402.5 identifies three compliance options for air barriers. **Tyvek® WRBs** comply with the option detailed in Section C402.5.1.2.1 Materials:

“Materials with an air permeability no greater than 0.004 cfm/ft<sub>2</sub> (0.02 L/s x m<sup>2</sup>) under a pressure differential of 0.3 inches water gauge (75 Pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178 shall comply with this section.” **Tyvek® WRBs** have been tested in accordance with ASTM E2178 and have air permeability less than 0.004 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> (0.02 L/s x m<sup>2</sup>).

All **Tyvek® WRBs** have been tested to the following standards:

- ASTM E2556 *Type II Standard Specification for Vapor Permeable Flexible Sheet Water-Resistive Barriers Intended for Mechanical Attachment*
- ASTM E1677 *Standard Specification for an Air Retarder (AR) Material or System for Low-Rise Framed Building Walls*
- ASTM E2178 *Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials*
- ASTM E96 *Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials*
- AATCC 127 *Test Method for Water Resistance: Hydrostatic Pressure*
- ASTM E84 *Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials*
- ASTM E2273 *Standard Test Method for Determining the Drainage Efficiency of Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) Clad Wall Assemblies* (excludes **Tyvek® ThermaWrap® LE** and **Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™**)

The application of **Tyvek® WRBs** is governed by the code adopted and enforced by the local jurisdiction. Consult your jurisdiction to assure compliance with the local building code.

## Flashing Products Code Requirements

The 2024 International Building Code (Section 1404.4 Flashing) requires that “flashing shall be installed in such a manner so as to prevent moisture from entering the wall or to redirect that moisture to the exterior. Flashing shall be installed at the perimeters of exterior door and window assemblies, penetrations and terminations of exterior wall assemblies, exterior wall intersections with roofs, chimneys, porches, decks, balconies and similar projections and at built-in gutters and similar locations where moisture could enter the wall. Flashing with projecting flanges shall be installed on both sides and the ends of copings, under sills and continuously above projecting trim. Where self-adhered membranes are used as flashings of fenestration in wall assemblies, those self-adhered flashings shall comply with **AAMA 711**. Where fluid applied membranes are used as flashing for exterior wall openings, those fluid applied membrane flashings shall comply with **AAMA 714**.”

- **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** comply with **AAMA 711** (an FGIA Specification) *Specification for Self Adhering Flashing Used for Installation of Exterior Wall Fenestration Products*.
- **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Flashing and Joint Compound+** complies with **AAMA 714**, *Voluntary Specification for Liquid Applied Flashing Used to Create a Water-Resistive Seal around Exterior Wall*.

## Additional Codes and Standards Information for DuPont™ Tyvek® Commercial Air and Water Barrier Systems

DuPont™ Tyvek® CommercialWrap®, Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, DuPont™ FlexWrap™, and DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products were designed for the rigors of heavy commercial construction. These commercial products have been tested to the following standards:

- ABAA Evaluated
- ASTM E2357 *Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies*
- ASTM E331 *Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Pressure*
- ASTM E1105 *Standard Test Method for Field Determination of Water Penetration of Installed Exterior Windows, Skylights, Door, and Curtain Walls, by Uniform or Cyclic Static Air Pressure Difference*
- ASTM E283 *Standard Test Method for Determining Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen*
- AAMA 501.5 *Test Method for Thermal Cycling of Exterior Walls*
- NFPA 285 *Standard Fire Test Method for Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components*

Energy Conservation Codes for commercial buildings are being adopted in many regions across the U.S. **DuPont™ Tyvek® Water-Resistive and Air Barriers (WRBs)** currently meet the following codes and guidelines.

- ASHRAE 90.1 Model Energy Code air barrier requirements
- 2024 International Energy Conservation Code® (IECC)
- 2024 International Green Construction Code® (IgCC)

## General Instructions

The best time to install Tyvek® WRBs is:

- **AFTER** the roof sheathing is installed
- **AFTER** the step, kick-out, or through wall flashings have been installed

**DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products are not intended for through-wall flashing applications.**

## Special Considerations

1. These Installation Guidelines, including the allowable use of DuPont Products, are based on building air barrier performance not exceeding ASTM E1677, and Tyvek® WRBs and self-adhered flashing water infiltration resistance criteria not exceeding 6.24 psf when tested in accordance with ASTM E331, ASTM E1105, or equivalent. For buildings with design requirements exceeding these criteria, the use of the *Commercial and High Performance Installation Guidelines* is required.
2. Buildings requiring NFPA 285 compliance must use Tyvek® CommercialWrap® or Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D in accordance with DuPont NFPA 285 documentation. See [NFPA 285 Compliant Wall Assemblies with DuPont™ Tyvek® Commercial Air and Water Barrier Systems](#) and [building.dupont.com](http://building.dupont.com) for more information.
3. **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** should be installed on clean, dry surfaces that are free of frost and/or obstructions that could compromise flashing install. Wipe surfaces to remove moisture, dirt, grease and other debris that could interfere with adhesion.
4. **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** perform best when installed at temperatures above 25°F (-4°C).
5. Adverse weather conditions or cold temperatures may require use of an adhesive/primer to promote adhesion of **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** to most common building materials. **Concrete, masonry, and fiber-faced exterior gypsum board require the use of a [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#).** Do not apply adhesive/primer to exterior continuous insulation due to potential sheathing degradation.
6. Remove all wrinkles and bubbles that may allow for water intrusion by smoothing surface and repositioning as necessary during installation of **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products**. Apply pressure along entire surface of flashing for a good bond using firm hand pressure, J-roller, or alternate tool without sharp edges (such as a plastic carpet tuck tool) to assist with application of uniform pressure.
7. Building envelope design requirements exceeding 0.56 psf (15 mph equivalent wind-driven rain) water infiltration resistance per ASTM E1677 require **StraightFlash™**, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or recommended alternate patches behind fastening plates (brick tie base plates, metal fastening clips, metal channels, etc.). When used behind the cladding fasteners and/or fastening plates, the flashing patch must be adhered to the Tyvek® WRB.
8. **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** are not intended for through-wall flashing

## Special Considerations

applications.

9. When using mechanically fastened through-wall flashing, DuPont recommends sealing top edge with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**.
10. When flashing the sill area for windows and doors, DuPont recommends the use of 6" wide **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** for 2"x 4" framing and 9" wide **FlexWrap™** for 2" x 6" framing. When rigid back dams are required or desired, an option would be to use a 3/4" corner guard (back dam) cut to the length of the sill and nail into place on the interior edge of the sill prior to installation of 9" wide **FlexWrap™**. Then install 9" wide **FlexWrap™** over sill and corner guard back dam.
11. **DO NOT STRETCH FlexWrap™** during the installation process along the length of the sill/head. **FlexWrap™** is only intended to be stretched when covering corners or curved sections.
12. Use **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** with roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the back of the window or door frame will be located to allow for the creation of the interior perimeter seal.
13. When installing **DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ** and **FlexWrap™** on penetrations or other wall conditions, ensure the flashing will not be exposed after completion of cladding.
14. **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** can be used to bridge non-movement gaps up to 1" unsupported. Flashing must maintain a 2" adhesive lap on the wall substrate.
15. **Do Not Apply DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** or **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** over **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners**, or recommended fasteners however, fasteners can be installed over the flashing.
16. When installing the **DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB**, **do not install** fasteners within 6" of the sills and jambs of the openings and within 9" of the head of the openings.
17. **Great Stuff Pro™ Window and Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** can be used in lieu of sealant to create a continuous seal around the interior perimeter of the window openings. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window and Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff™ Dispenser Gun** during installation.
18. For extreme/coastal exposures, installation of a high-pressure skirt is recommended to help prevent water intrusion at the sill or threshold.
19. For additional wind load resistance, the use of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** with **Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners**, or recommended fasteners can be installed to secure the head flap of the windows.
20. **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** are the recommended method for terminating the **Tyvek® WRB** at top and bottom of wall, at head flaps, and at other horizontal and vertical locations. **Tyvek® Tape** can be used as indicated in this Installation Guideline to seal the **Tyvek® WRB** to most plastic top sheets of self-adhered products and to thin metal flashings (e.g. drip caps or through wall kick-out flashings). **Tyvek® Tape** should **NOT** be used to seal **Tyvek® WRBs** to wood framing/sheathing, exterior gypsum sheathing, or masonry.
21. **Tyvek® Tape** is a seam tape primarily designed to seal **Tyvek® WRB** seams. **Tyvek® Tape** is **NOT** a flashing product, and should not be used in applications where a flashing product is required.
22. Before applying **Tyvek® Tape**, surfaces should be dry and clean. During installation apply firm, even pressure with hand or "J" roller.
23. In lieu of temporarily taping, **Tyvek® WRB** flaps at window head and jambs can be tucked under the installed **Tyvek® WRB**.
24. Door and window rough sill framing must be level or slightly sloped to the exterior to ensure proper drainage to the exterior. This best practice ensures continuous support with positive slope to the exterior.
25. For window or door openings greater than 6 feet wide, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** can be used with **FlexWrap™** in 3-piece sill/head applications. **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** should be applied the length of the sill prior to placing the **FlexWrap™** corners. The **FlexWrap™** corners should be at least 12" long allowing for 6" up the jamb and 6" of overlap on the **FlexWrap™** sill flashing. When applying the 3-piece flashing detail to the head of the opening, the **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** head piece should be applied prior to installing the **FlexWrap™** corner flashing. Minimum overlapping of the **FlexWrap™** head flashing and jamb flashing should be a minimum of 6". **Registered DuPont Certified Installers may use the 3-piece sill/head flashing method on window and door openings of any size.** Please contact your local Building Envelope Specialist for additional information.
26. **DuPont™ Tyvek® DrainWrap™**, **Tyvek® StuccoWrap®**, and **Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D** must be installed with the grooves going up and down.
27. **DuPont™ Tyvek® HomeWrap®** and **Tyvek® CommercialWrap®** provide >90% drainage efficiency, and **Tyvek® DrainWrap™**, **Tyvek® StuccoWrap®**, and **Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D** provide >98% drainage efficiency when tested in accordance with ASTM E2273.
28. No surface preparation is needed for the installation of **Tyvek® WRBs**.
29. Suitable substrates for **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** include concrete masonry unit (CMU), concrete (48 hrs. cure for green concrete), exterior gypsum, OSB, plywood, wood, and metal. Contact your local DuPont Representative for use with pressure treated or fire retardant treated wood (FRT).
30. DuPont recommends the use of the **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Air Barrier System** for CMU walls with embedded brick ties. Please refer to the [DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™ and DuPont Flashing Products Installation Guidelines](#) for specific installation instructions.
31. **Tyvek® Mechanically-Fastened WRBs should NOT be used on CMU walls with embedded brick ties.**
32. **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** should only be used for wall systems that include a continuous path for drainage allowing moisture that penetrates the facade to exit to the exterior. The drainage path should be continuous throughout the wall assembly, including but not limited to areas such as eyebrows, band boards, penetrations, or other locations where transitions and changes of plane

## Special Considerations

- occur. For membrane drainage wall systems, ensure that the drainage path is not blocked or disrupted to prevent excess moisture buildup in the wall cavity.
33. When **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** are used as the air and water barrier, **DuPont™ Tyvek® WRBs** may be installed as an “intervening layer” over **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** after 48 hours of curing at 70°F (20°C) and 50% RH. For additional information about the use of “intervening layers” see the Stucco section under [Facade Considerations](#).
  34. Uncured **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** must not come in contact with building wraps due to potential impact on performance properties.
  35. **DuPont™ Tyvek® CommercialWrap®** and **Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D** may be installed over **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** after 48 hours of curing at 70°F (20°C) and 50% RH.
  36. **DuPont™ Tyvek® HomeWrap®, Tyvek® StuccoWrap®,** and/or **Tyvek® DrainWrap™** should not come in direct contact with cured or uncured **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products**.
  37. **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** can be applied to damp surfaces. A surface is considered damp if there is no visible water on the surface and no transfer of water to the skin when touched.
  38. **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Flashing and Joint Compound+** can be troweled or brushed to the required thickness in any application outlined in the guide.
  39. **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** should be applied when air and surface temperatures are above 25°F. Do not install once the ambient temperature exceeds 95°F (35°C), unless the application surface is shaded. The maximum surface temperature for application is 140°F (60°C).
  40. **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** may be overcoated once a tack-free skin has formed. Exterior insulation and/or exterior facade may be installed after **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** have cured for 48 hours. Please refer to *Drying/Curing* information in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™ and DuPont Flashing Products Installation Guidelines](#).
  41. Performance testing, included but not limited to peel adhesion, pull strength analysis, field or third-party testing of air and/or water barrier properties, should be conducted after **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** are fully cured (~14 days).
  42. **Tyvek® WRBs must not** come in direct contact with other manufacturers’ cured or uncured fluid-applied and/or deck coating waterproofing products due to potential impact on performance properties. **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used as transitional membrane.
  43. DuPont requires **Tyvek® HomeWrap®, Tyvek® StuccoWrap®,** and **Tyvek® DrainWrap™** be covered within 4 months (120 days) of installation. DuPont requires **Tyvek® CommercialWrap®** and **Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D** and **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** be covered within 9 months (270 days) of installation.
  44. DuPont requires that **DuPont™ FlexWrap™, FlexWrap™ EZ, StraightFlash™,** and **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** be covered within 9 months (270 days) of installation.
- DuPont requires that **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** be covered within four months (120 days) of installation.
45. The maximum in-service temperature for **Tyvek® WRBs, DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products,** and **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** is 180°F.
  46. Tower® Residential Sealant is designed for use with DuPont products and can be used where a chemically-compatible sealant is shown in this guide. Please see technical bulletin [Chemical Compatibility of Representative Building Sealants and Adhesives/Primers](#) for additional information.
  47. For details regarding flashing garage door openings, refer to [Installation Instructions for Garage Doors Installed AFTER the DuPont™ Tyvek® Water-Resistive and Air Barrier \(WRB\) is Installed](#).
  48. When applying a [chemically-compatible sealant](#), during window installation, DuPont recommends minimizing or removing excess sealant that may interfere with adhesion of **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products**.

For additional guidance, please call 1-833-338-7668, visit our website at [building.dupont.com](http://building.dupont.com), or consult your local DuPont Representative.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Key Installation Requirements for Drainable Window/Door Installation

#### When flashing windows or doors, the following principles must be followed:

- An **integral flanged window/door** is defined as a window/door unit with a nailing fin or flange that is continuous around the perimeter of the window and that is a direct extrusion of the window frame.
- A **non-integral flanged window/door** is defined as a window/door unit that has a nailing fin or flange that is **not continuous** around the perimeter of the entire frame or is **not a direct extrusion of the frame** (e.g. field-applied flanges).
- When installed properly, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, **DuPont™ VersaFlange™**, **DuPont™ FlexWrap™**, and **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** provide nail sealability at window/door openings to help protect critical window-wall interfaces. Metal sill pan flashing may be used, but must not replace flexible sill flashing that provides nail sealability.
- Ensure that sill flashing does not slope to the interior. An exterior slope is recommended, but not required.
- Direct water onto an acceptable air and water barrier drainage plane with an unobstructed path to the exterior of the wall. Provide a drainage path for any water intrusion through the window/door attachment system that collects at the sill.
- Properly integrate flashing with acceptable **Tyvek® WRB. DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** must be applied with a minimum 2" lap onto the WRB.
- When applying recommended sealant during window installation, DuPont recommends minimizing or removing excess sealant that may interfere with adhesion of **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products**.
- DuPont requires that **FlexWrap™**, **FlexWrap™ EZ**, **StraightFlash™**, and **VersaFlange™** be covered within 9 months (270 days) of installation. DuPont requires that **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** be covered within 4 months (120 days) of installation.
- Properly prepare all surfaces (remove dirt, dust, or moisture, etc.) per manufacturer's recommendations.
- Barrier installations (full perimeter seal on exterior) are acceptable only in the following instances:
  - Slab on grade doors, store front windows, or other systems with built-in drainage mechanisms that have potential for exposure to standing water
  - Surface barrier wall systems with non-water sensitive framing material (i.e., CMU walls)
  - Very low wind/rain exposure regions (southwest/desert) that follow AAMA 2400 installation guideline.

- Ensure that window/door and flashing system design takes into account common factors that will impact performance, such as:
  - Climate considerations: Rainfall, Wind, Temperature (hot/cold cycles), Humidity
  - Building design: Window/Wall Design (overhangs, recessed openings, bump-outs), Wall Assembly (wood frame or masonry), Window System (wood or vinyl), New Construction or Replacement Window drainage path
  - UV exposure prior to the construction of the exterior facade
  - Compliance with fire resistance code requirements. For more information about NFPA 285 compliant wall assemblies utilizing **Tyvek® WRBs** visit [building.dupont.com](http://building.dupont.com).
- Field testing the window/door and wall installation as a complete system is a recommended best practice.
- DuPont recommends DuPont Building Envelope Solutions Products be installed by a DuPont Certified Installer. Contact your local Building Envelope Specialist for more information about the DuPont Certified Installer program.

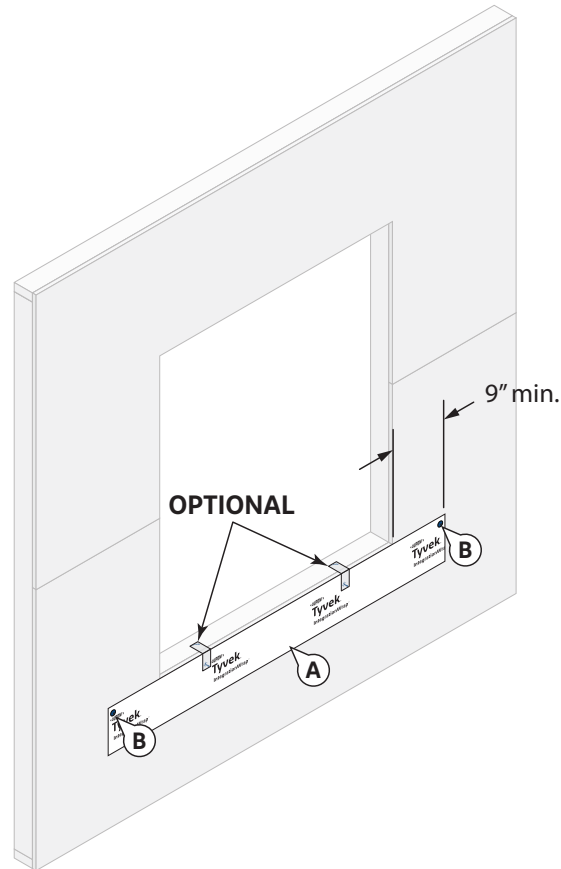
#### Sealants and Adhesives/Primers

Review the manufacturers' literature or label to confirm that the product(s) used have the chemical and adhesive properties necessary for use with **Tyvek® WRBs**, **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products**, and **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products**. Ensure the sealant materials meet the installation temperature requirements of the sealant manufacturer. Refer to [Chemical Compatibility of Representative Building Sealants and Adhesives/Primers](#) for more information about chemical compatibility.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Alternate Installation Considerations

This method of creating the **Tyvek® WRB** apron below the sill involves using **DuPont™ Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™** instead. This installation method can be used in lieu of the standard **Tyvek® WRB** apron shown throughout this guide.



### Install Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™ Under Sill

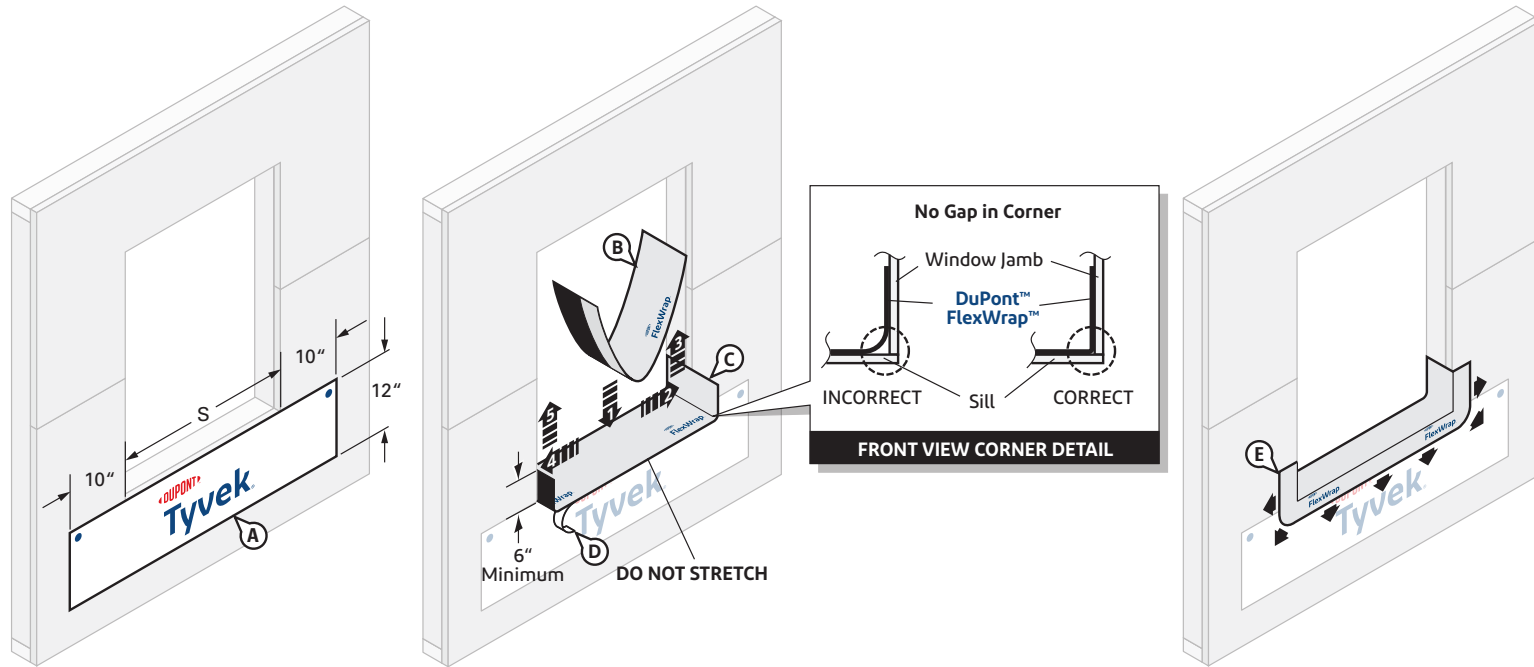
- Cut a piece of **Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™** long enough to extend at least 9" **BEYOND** the sides of the rough opening jamps.
- The top of the **Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™** should be temporarily fastened to the sheathing and the bottom should be left unsecured so it can overlap the **DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB** which will be installed after the window. If using **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners**, or recommended fasteners, avoid fastener placement where **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** will be installed.

**OPTIONAL:** To assist with sill flashing installation, small pieces of **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** can be used to temporarily secure the **Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™** at the sill.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window

This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, and DuPont™ FlexWrap™

An integral flanged window is defined as a window unit with a nailing fin or flange that is continuous around the perimeter of the window and that is a direct extrusion of the window frame.



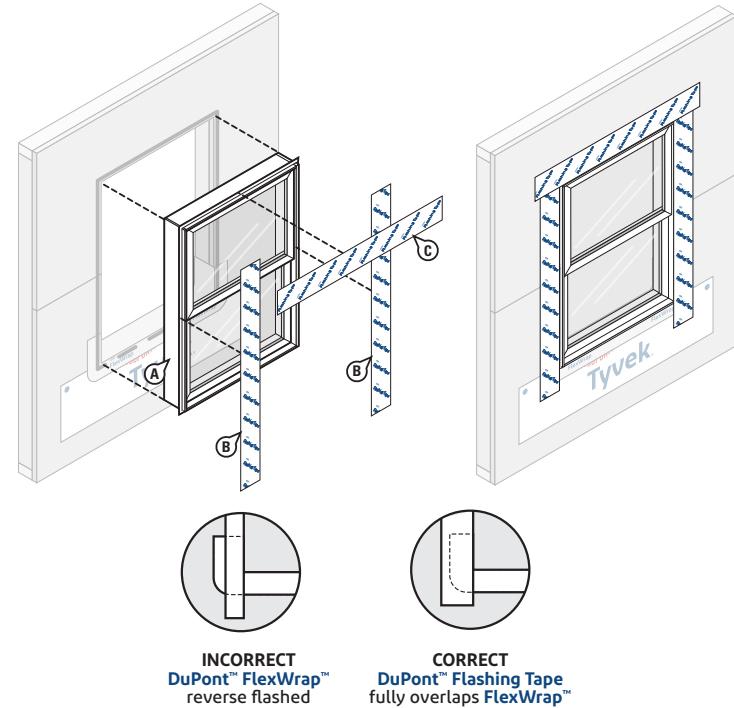
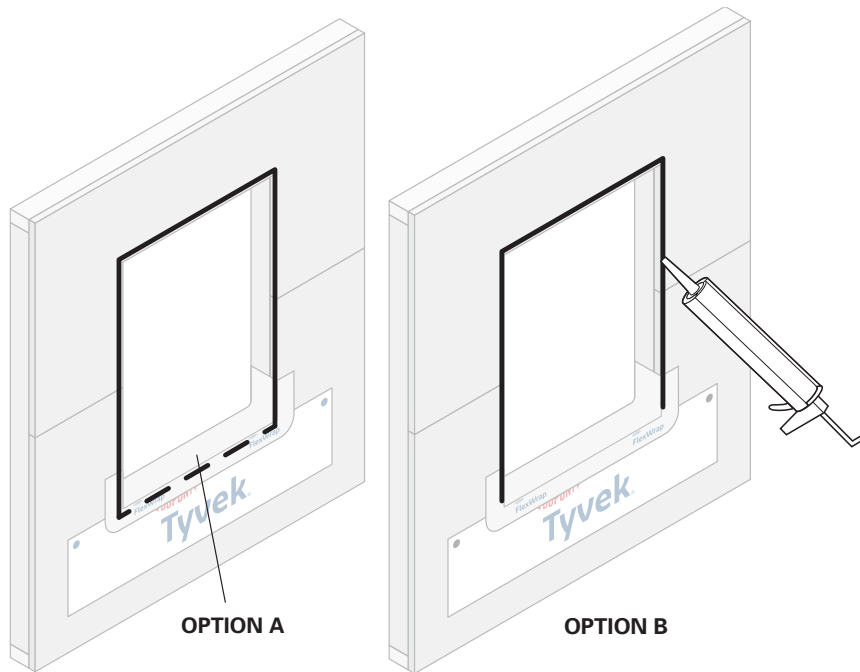
### STEP 1

#### Prepare Tyvek® WRB Apron

**OPTIONAL:** Refer to the [Alternative Installation Considerations](#) section for guidance for using DuPont™ Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™ in lieu of a Tyvek® WRB apron if desired.

- Cut an apron made of Tyvek® WRB for attachment under sill of rough opening. Apron should extend at least 10" **BEYOND** the sides of rough opening jambs (or to first stud in open stud construction) and at least 12" below sill of rough opening, or extend far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the Tyvek® WRB below. The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall and the bottom of the apron should be left unsecured so it can overlap the Tyvek® WRB which will be installed after the window. Avoid placing DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners where DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products will be installed.
- Cut FlexWrap™ at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening sill (S). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- Remove wide piece of release paper. Position on horizontal sill by aligning the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2"– 3" of the FlexWrap™ will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6" up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening.
- Remove narrow release paper.
- Fan out the FlexWrap™ at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window



### STEP 2

**OPTION A:** Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) at window head and jambs to wall or back side of window mounting flange. **To allow for drainage, do not apply continuous sealant bead along sill.** Ensure a minimum 2" wide drainage gap in the sealant bead within 4" from each corner of the jamb-sill interface. Continue applying sealant along the sill with additional 2" wide (min.) drainage gaps for every 6"–12" (on center) of sill width.

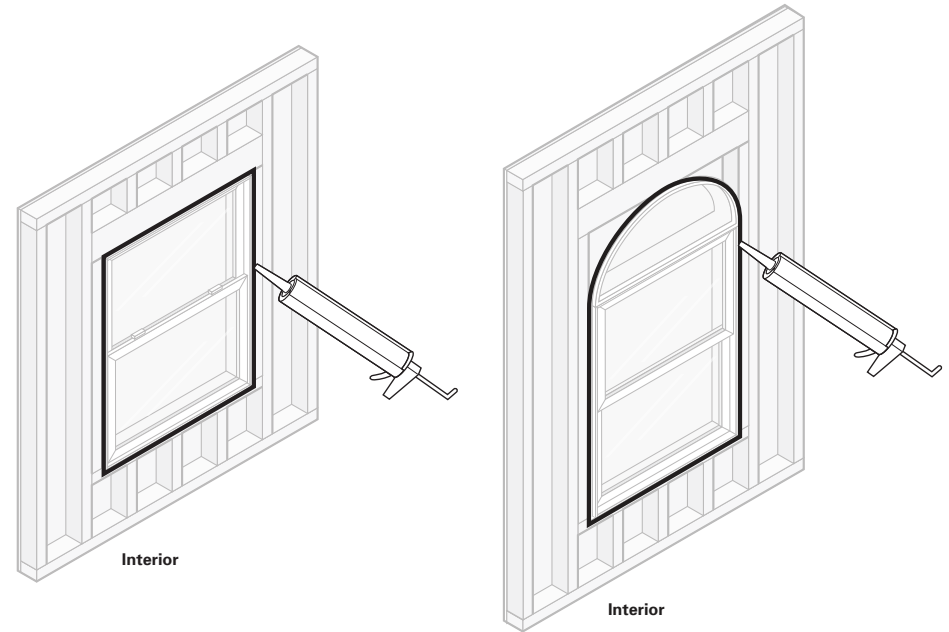
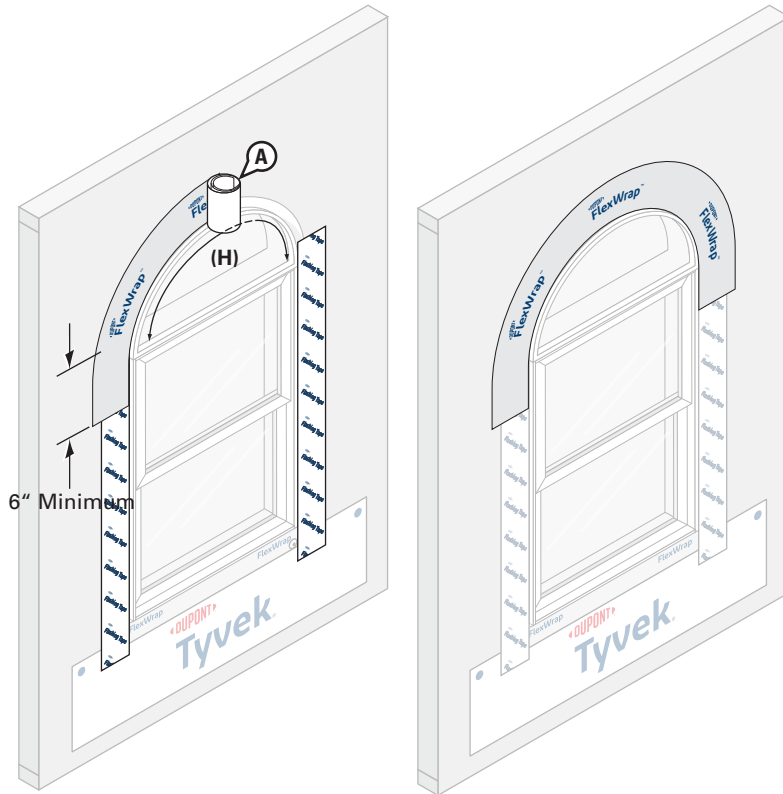
**OPTION B:** Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) at window head and jambs to wall or back side of window mounting flange. **To allow for drainage, do not apply sealant bead along sill.**

### STEP 3

- Install window according to manufacturer's instructions.
- Cut two pieces of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** for jamb flashing extending 1" above window head flange and below bottom edge of sill flashing. Remove release paper and press tightly along sides of window frame. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the window installation before the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product** at the window head flange, see [Drip Cap Installation](#) section and refer to [Option 1](#). **NOTE:** The vertical leg of the drip cap must not be taller than the window head flange when installing drip cap according to [Option 1](#).
- Cut a piece of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** for head flashing long enough to extends **BEYOND** the outer edges of jamb flashings. Remove release paper and install completely covering flange and adhering to exposed sheathing or framing members. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the window installation, but after the window head flashing, see [Drip Cap Installation](#) section and refer to [Option 2](#).

**NOTE:** Ensure proper shingling. **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** at jambs must overlap the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** at the sill and adhere to the **Tyvek® WRB** apron below the sill.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window



### STEP 4 – FOR ROUNDTOP WINDOWS

#### Install Head Flashing

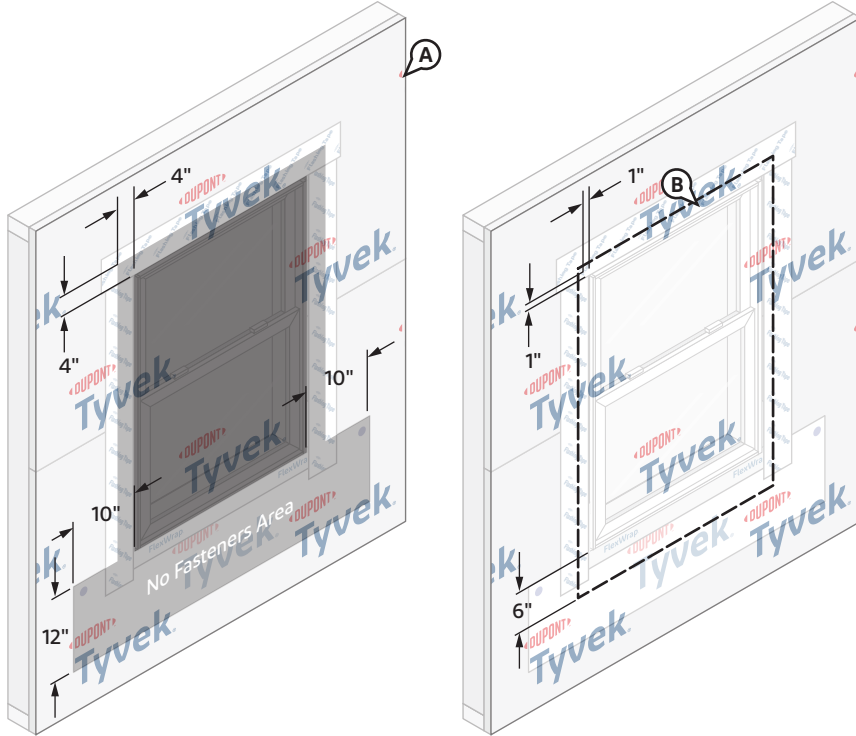
**NOTE:** Follow rectangular window instructions (Steps 1 through 4) for proper installation of sill and jamb flashing prior to head flashing installation.

- Cut **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** head flashing at least 12" **LONGER** than the arc length (H) of roundtop window.
- Remove both release papers and install to conform around top of window, covering entire mounting flange and adhering to exposed sheathing or framing members. Head flashing should overlap jamb flashings by at least 6".

### STEP 5

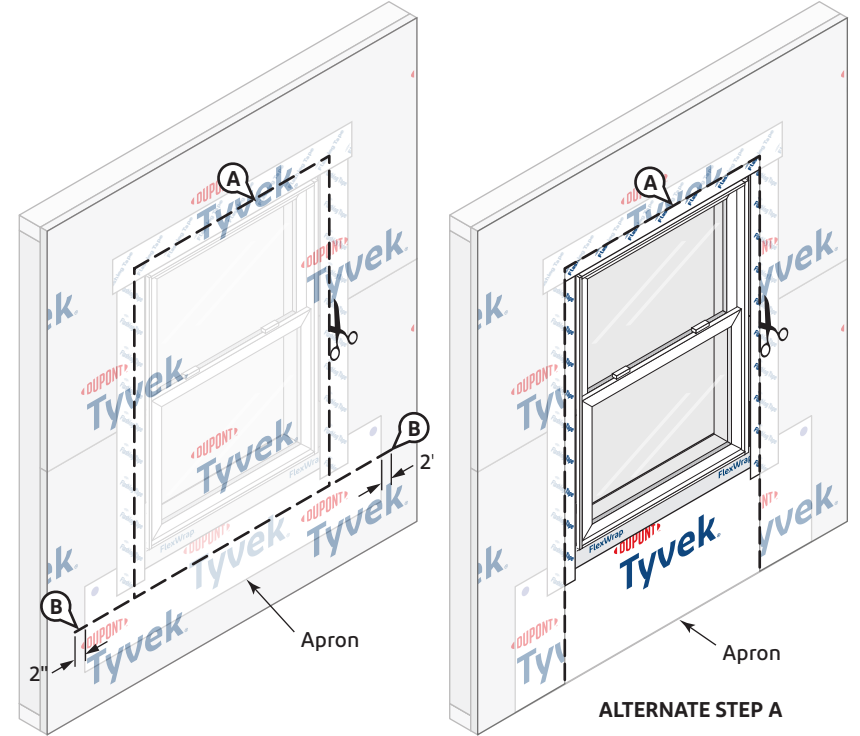
Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the window opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window



### STEP 6

- A. Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the window frame at jambs and head and within 12" of the window frame at sill or location of apron.
- B. Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough opening a minimum of 1" from the jambs and head of the window frame, and 6" below the sill of the window frame.



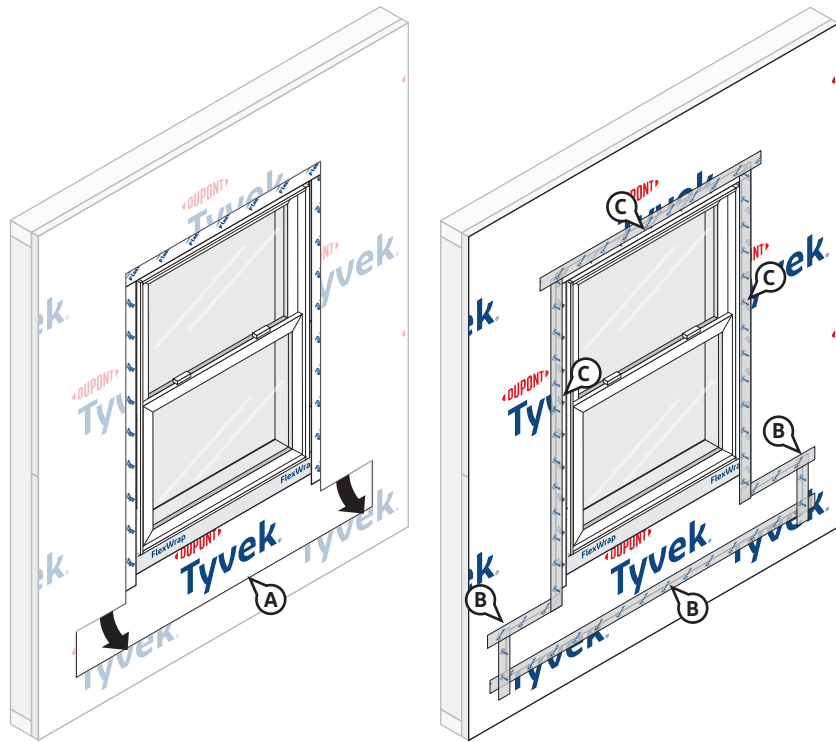
### STEP 7

- A. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.

**ALTERNATE STEP A:** If apron extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap apron.

- B. Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend 1"– 2" **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window



### STEP 8

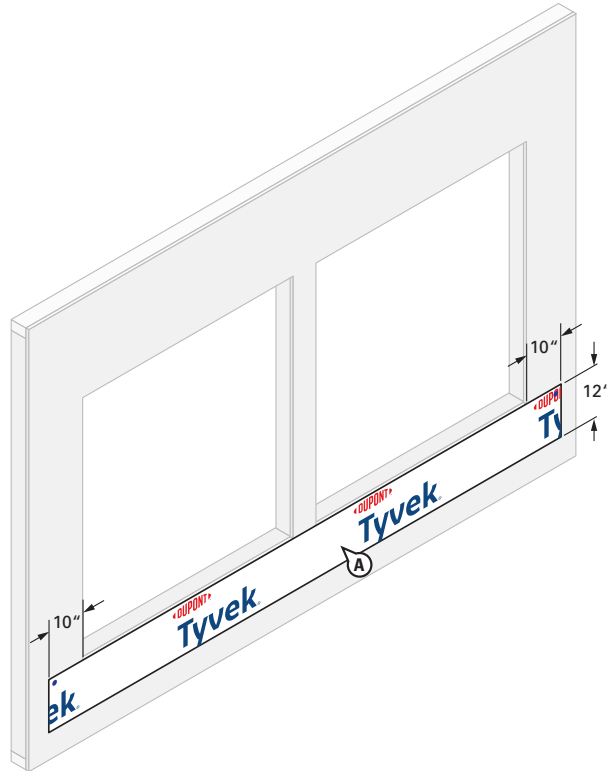
#### Final Step

- A. Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- B. Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
- C. Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jambs and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around window. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

### Option 1 – When Using DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows

This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, and DuPont™ FlexWrap™



## STEP 1

### Prepare Tyvek® WRB Apron

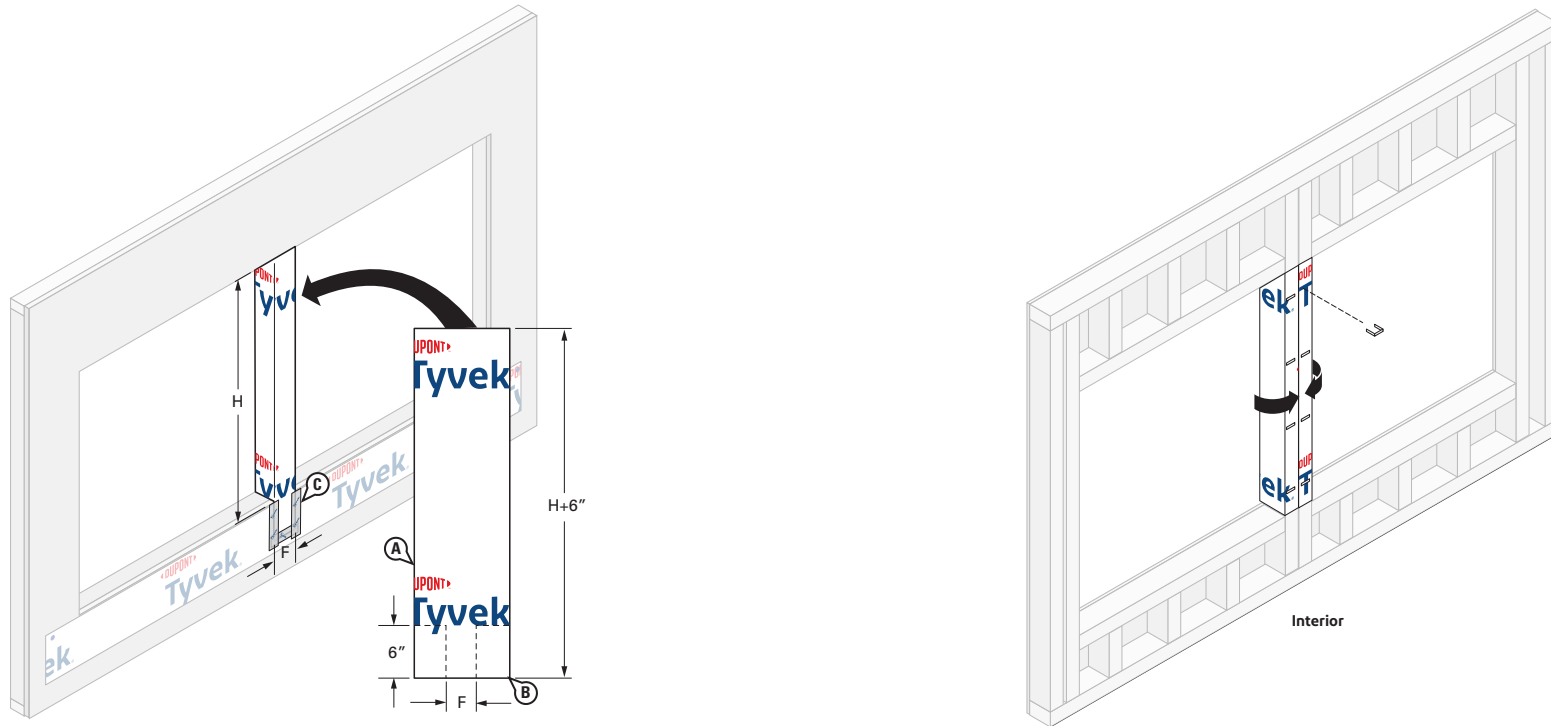
**OPTIONAL:** Refer to the [Alternative Installation Considerations](#) section for guidance for using **DuPont™ Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™** in lieu of a **Tyvek® WRB** apron if desired.

- A. Cut a single apron made of **Tyvek® WRB** for attachment under both sills of rough opening. Apron should extend at least 10" **BEYOND** the left and right sides of each rough opening jamb (or to first stud in open stud construction) and at least 12" below sill of rough opening, or extend far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below.

The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall and the bottom of the apron should be left unsecured so it can overlap the **Tyvek® WRB** which will be installed after the windows. Avoid placing **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners** where **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** will be installed.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

### Option 1 – When Using DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows



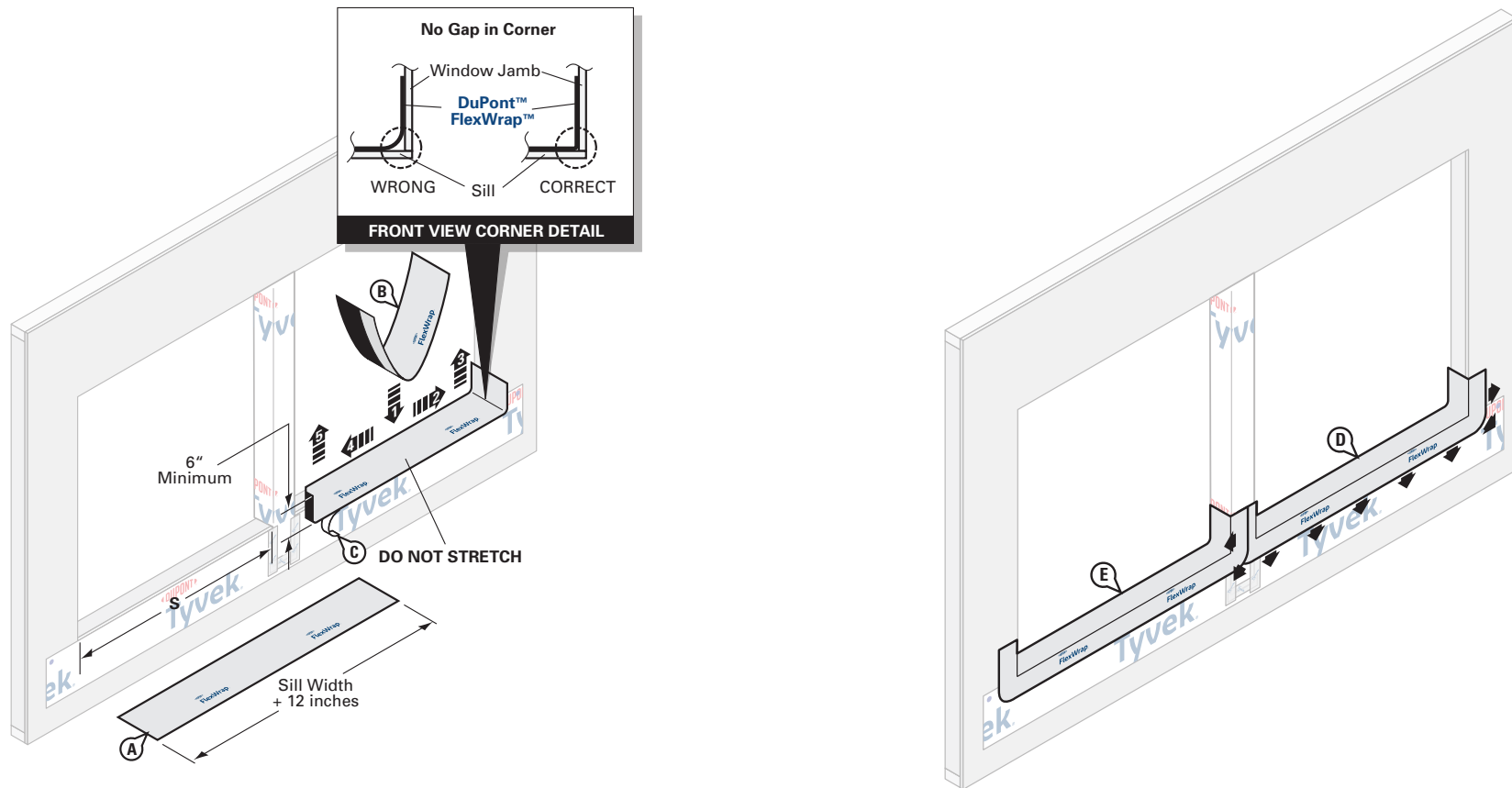
## STEP 2

### Preparation of Framing/Sheathing Separating Adjacent Windows Using Tyvek® WRB.

- Cut a piece of **Tyvek® WRB** wide enough to cover the framing/sheathing between windows when wrapped into the window rough openings and 6" longer than the height (H) of the rough opening.
- Cut corners to create side flaps that will fold into adjacent window rough openings with 6" of the **Tyvek® WRB** piece extending below the rough openings.
- Install **Tyvek® WRB** piece onto the framing/sheathing between windows. Do not install fasteners within 6" of the rough openings. **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** may be used if necessary to hold **Tyvek® WRB** piece in place. Seal vertical seams below window with Tyvek® Tape.
- Fold the two side flaps into rough opening, and secure. Cut off excess flaps if necessary.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed **BEFORE** the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

### Option 1 – When Using DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows

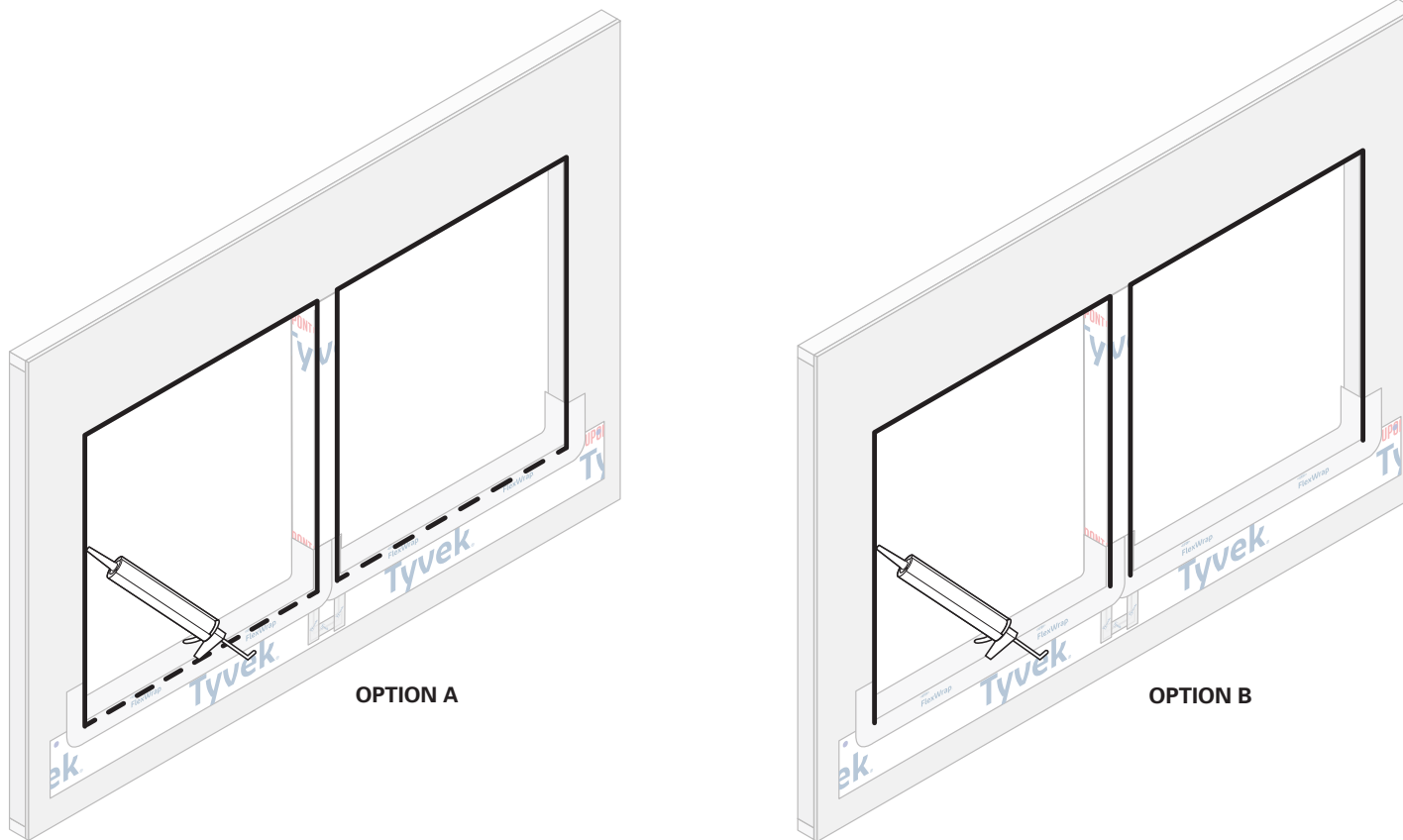


### STEP 3

- A. Cut 2 pieces of **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening sill (S). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- B. Remove wide piece of release paper from the first piece of **FlexWrap™**. Position on horizontal sill by aligning the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2"– 3" of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6" up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening.
- C. Remove narrow release paper from the **FlexWrap™**.
- D. Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at bottom corners onto face of wall and framing/ sheathing between windows. Coverage of **FlexWrap™** should be 2" – 3" onto the face of the wall.
- E. Repeat Steps B-D for second window. **NOTE:** The **FlexWrap™** installed in the second window may overlap the **FlexWrap™** installed in the first window at the vertical exposed sheathing/framing separating the windows.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

Option 1 – When Using DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows



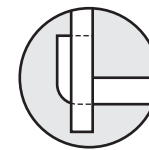
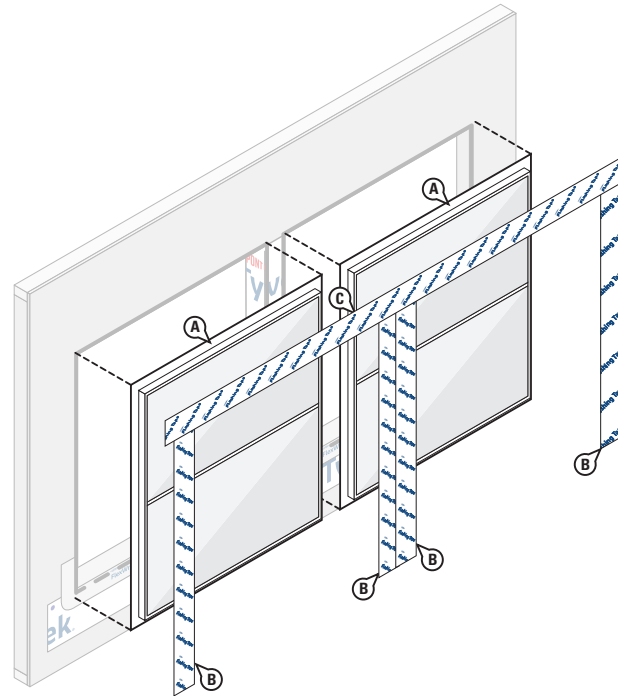
### STEP 4

**OPTION A:** Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) at window head and jambs to wall or back side of window mounting flange. **To allow for drainage, do not apply continuous sealant bead along sill.** Ensure a minimum 2" wide drainage gap in the sealant bead within 4" from **each corner** of the jamb-sill interface. Continue applying sealant along the sill with additional 2" wide (min.) drainage gaps for every 6"– 12" (on center) of sill width.

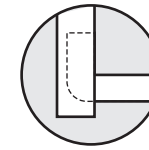
**OPTION B:** Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) at window head and jambs to wall or back side of window mounting flange. **To allow for drainage, do not apply sealant bead along sill.**

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

### Option 1 – When Using DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows



**INCORRECT**  
DuPont™ FlexWrap™  
reverse flashed



**CORRECT**  
DuPont™ Flashing Tape  
fully overlaps FlexWrap™

## STEP 5

A. Install windows according to manufacturer's instructions.

B. Cut four pieces of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** for jamb flashing extending 1" above window head flanges and below bottom edge of sill flashing. Remove release paper and press tightly along sides of window frame.

**NOTE:** The **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** for the inside jamb flashing of one window may overlap the **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** on the inside jamb of the other window.

**NOTE:** If the inside jamb flanges of the two windows are sufficiently close, it is acceptable to use a single piece of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** to cover both inside jamb flanges. Select roll width wide enough to fully cover both jamb flanges.

**OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the window installation before the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing** membrane at the window head flange, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 1](#). The vertical leg of the drip cap must not be taller than the window head flange when installing drip cap according to [Option 1](#).

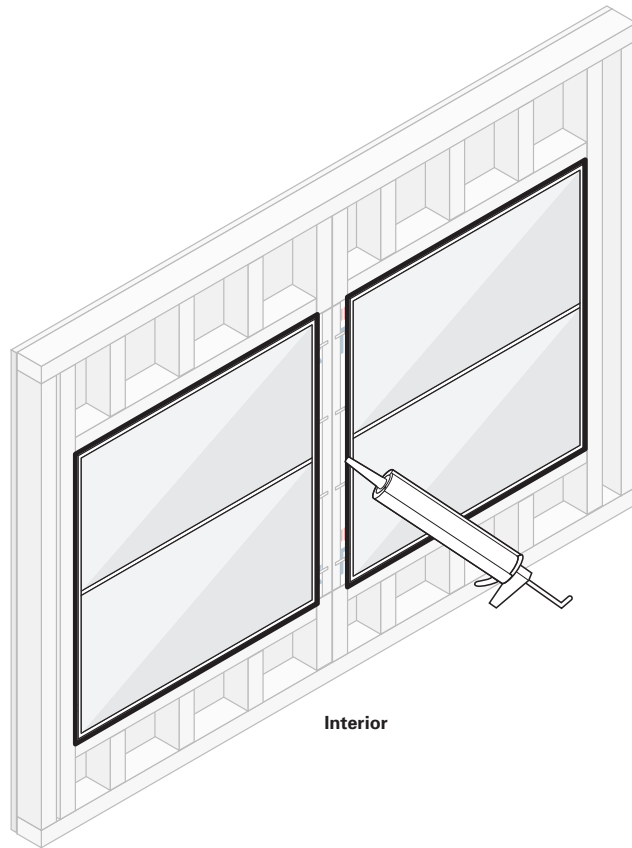
C. Cut a piece of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** for head flashing long enough to extend **BEYOND** the edges of flashing at outer jambs. Remove release paper and adhere to head flanges, extending onto sheathing. The **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing** membrane over the window must extend **BEYOND** the top edge of the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing** membrane previously installed between windows.

**NOTE:** Ensure proper shingling. **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** at jambs must overlap the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** at the sill and adhere to the **Tyvek® WRB** apron below the sill.

**OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the window installation, but after the window head flashing, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 2](#).

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

### Option 1 – When Using DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows

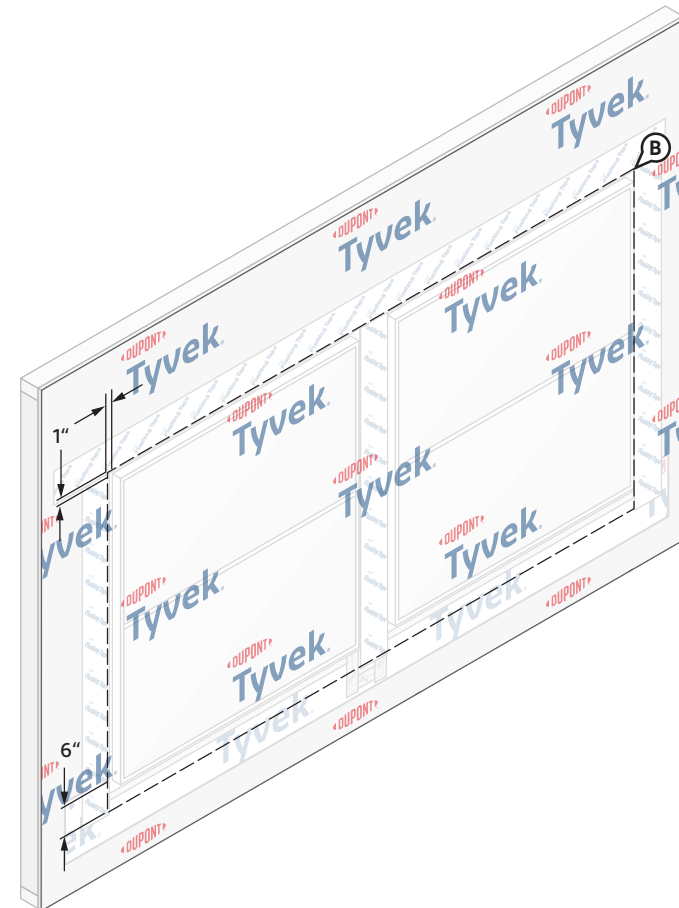
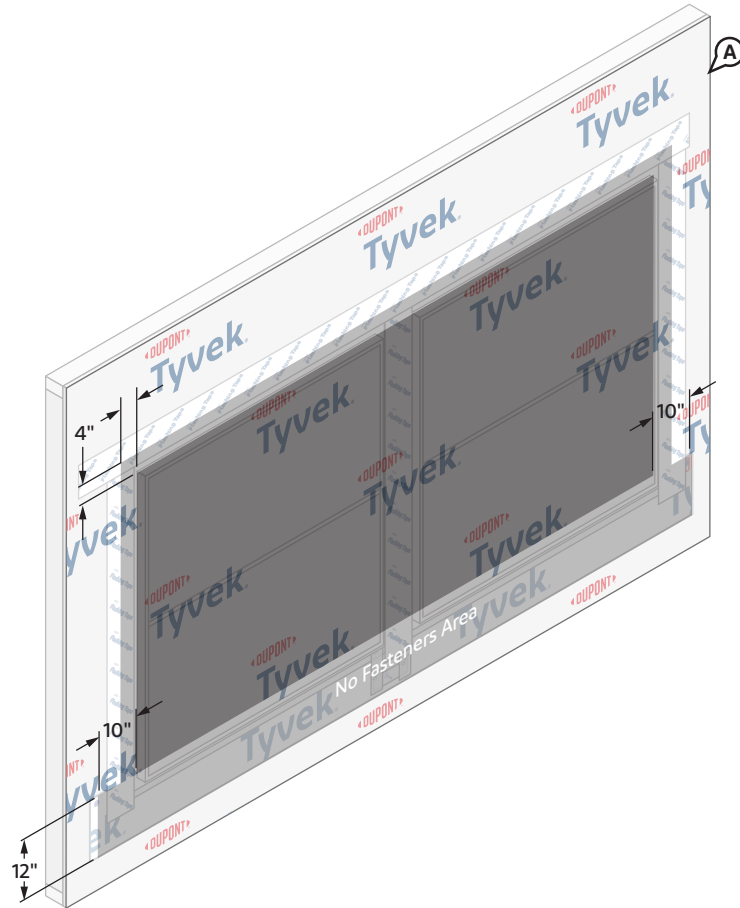


#### STEP 6

Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the window opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed **BEFORE** the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

### Option 1 – When Using DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows



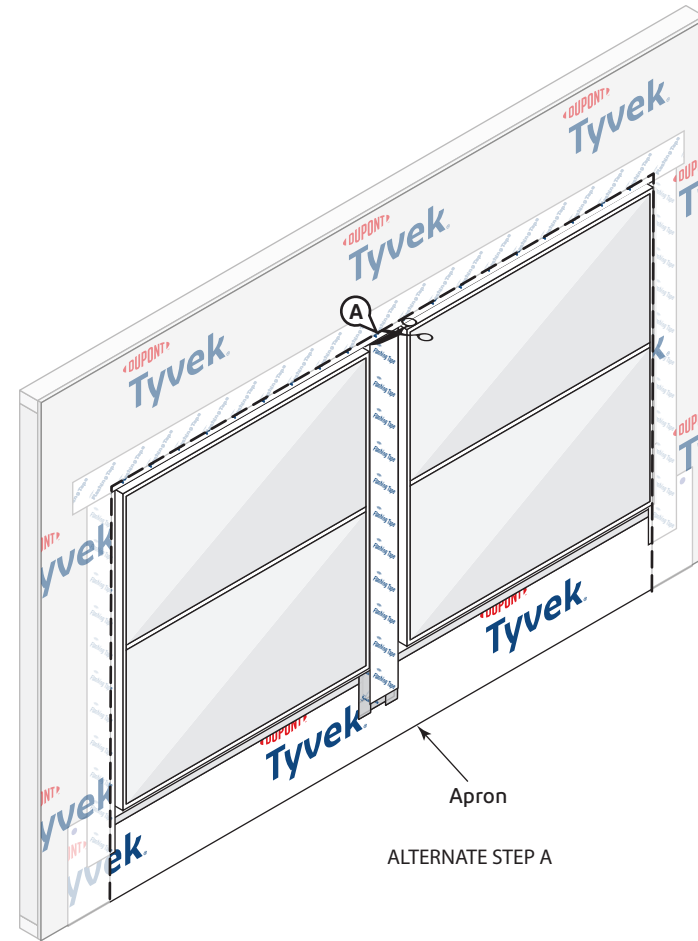
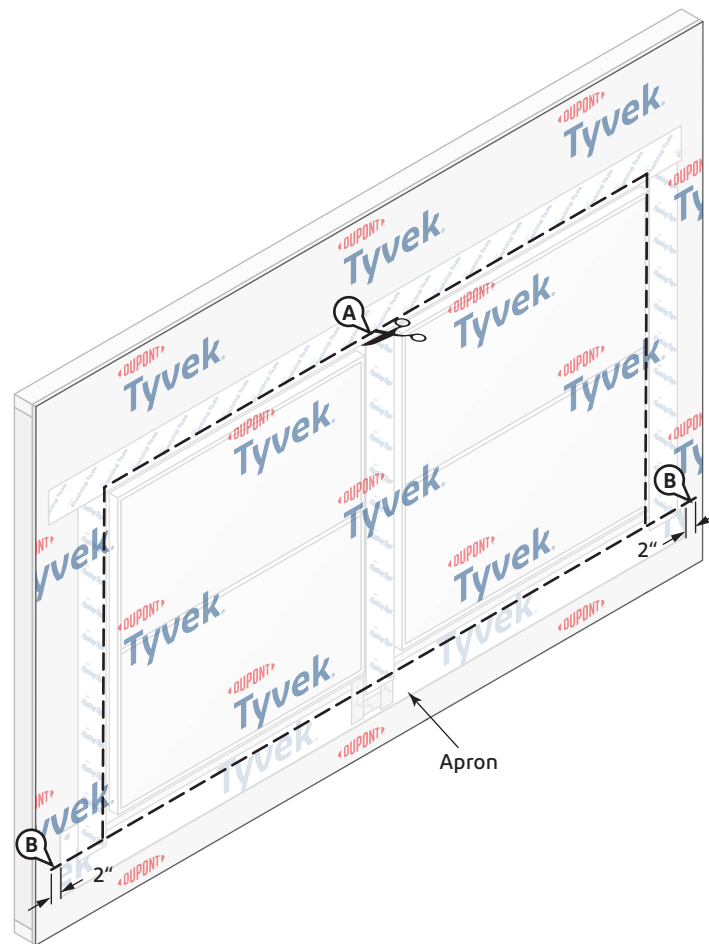
## STEP 7

A. Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the window frames at outside jambs and heads and within 12" of the window frames at sills or location of apron.

B. Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough openings a minimum of 1" from the outside jambs and heads of the window frames, and 6" below the sill of the window frames.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

### Option 1 – When Using DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows



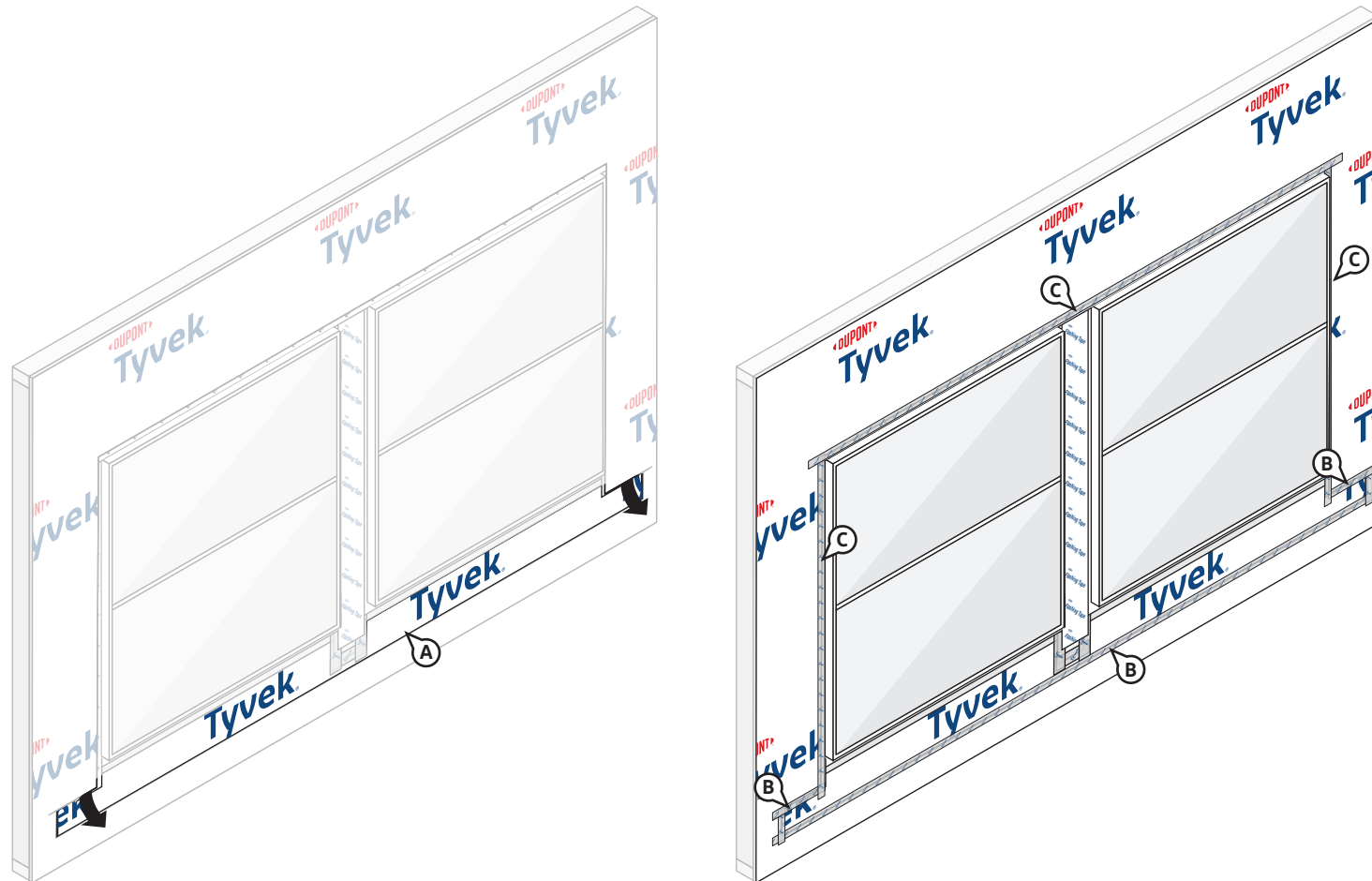
### STEP 8

- A. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose windows. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.
- B. Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend 1"– 2" **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.

**ALTERNATE STEP A:** If apron extends far enough below the sill rough openings to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap apron.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

### Option 1 – When Using DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows



## STEP 9

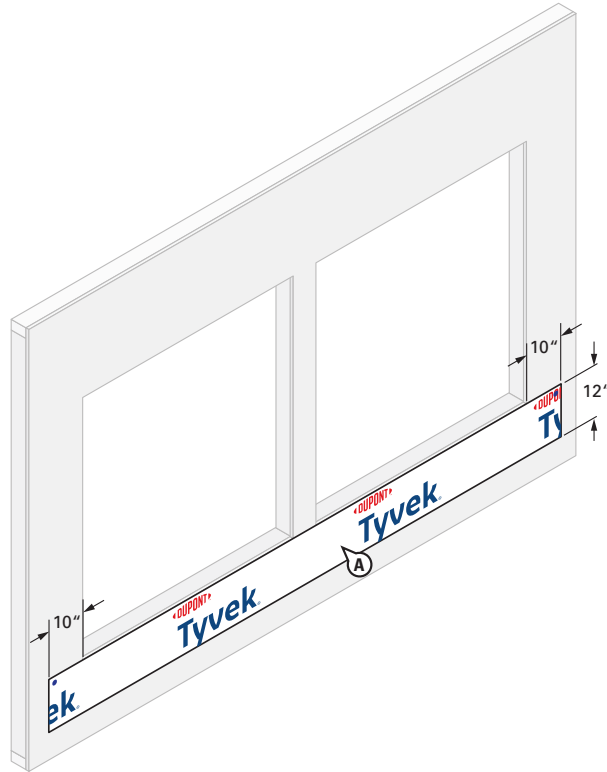
### Final Step

- Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
  - Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
  - Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jambs and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around windows. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used.
- OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap **AFTER** the **Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed around perimeter of windows, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 3](#).

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed **BEFORE** the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

Option 2 – When Using DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows

This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, and DuPont™ FlexWrap™



### STEP 1

#### Prepare Tyvek® WRB Apron

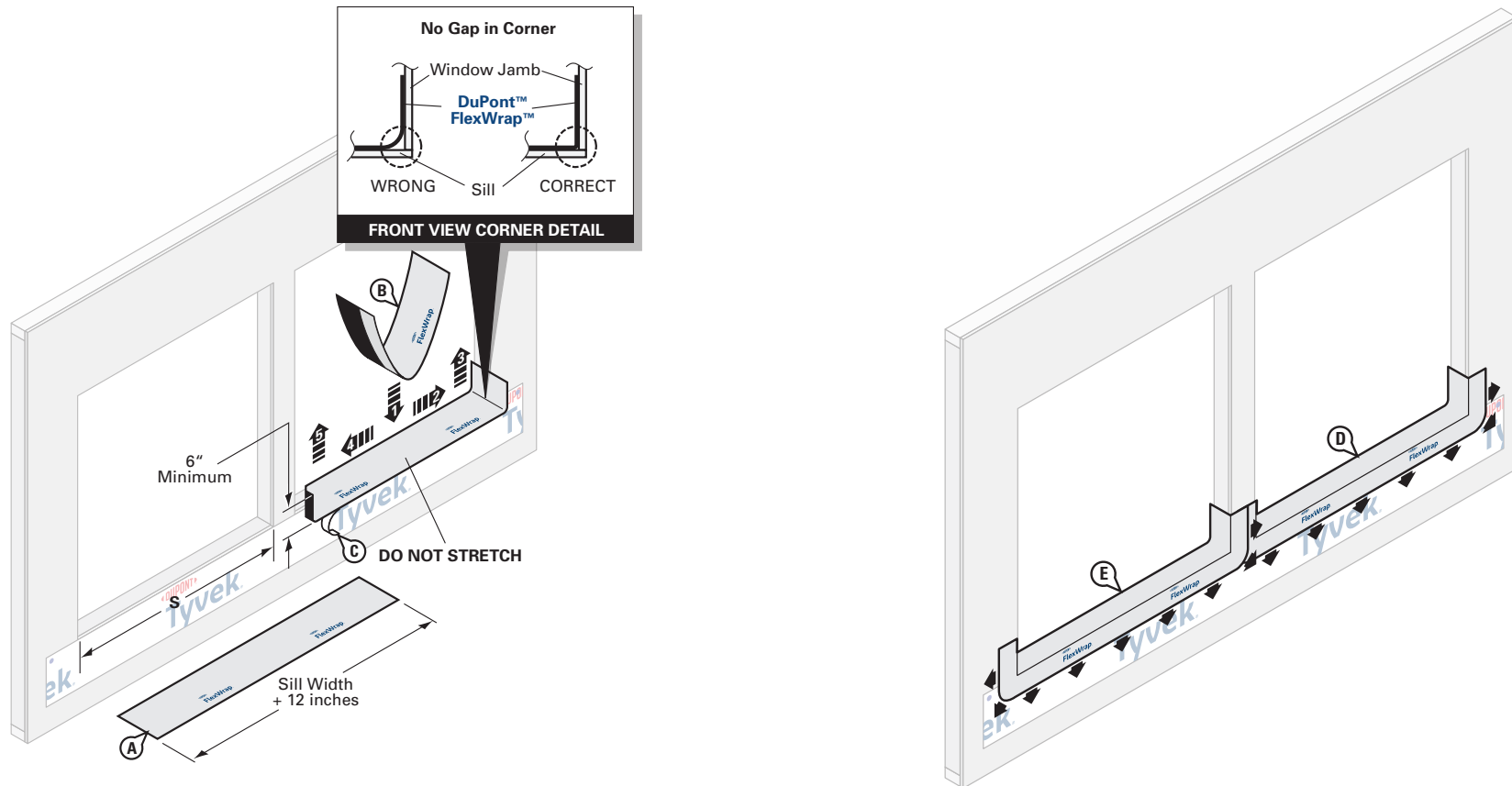
**OPTIONAL:** Refer to the [Alternative Installation Considerations](#) section for guidance for using **DuPont™ Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™** in lieu of a **Tyvek® WRB** apron if desired.

- A. Cut a single apron made of **Tyvek® WRB** for attachment under both sills of rough opening. Apron should extend at least 10" **BEYOND** the left and right sides of each rough opening jamb (or to first stud in open stud construction) and at least 12" below sill of rough opening, or extend far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below.

The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall and the bottom of the apron should be left unsecured so it can overlap the **Tyvek® WRB** which will be installed after the windows. Avoid placing **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners** where **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** will be installed.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

### Option 2 – When Using DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows

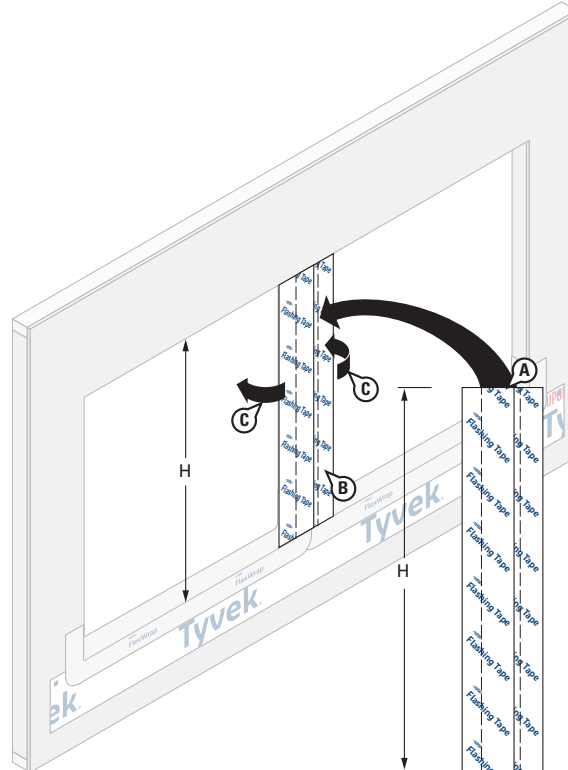


## STEP 2

- Cut 2 pieces of **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening sill (S). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- Remove wide piece of release paper from the first piece of **FlexWrap™**. Position on horizontal sill by aligning the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2"– 3" of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6" up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening.
- Remove narrow release paper from the **FlexWrap™**.
- Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at bottom corners onto face of wall and framing/sheathing between windows. Coverage of **FlexWrap™** should be 2" to 3" onto the face of the wall.
- Repeat Steps B-D for second window. **NOTE:** The **FlexWrap™** installed in the second window may overlap the **FlexWrap™** installed in the first window at the vertical exposed sheathing/framing separating the windows.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed **BEFORE** the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

### Option 2 – When Using DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows

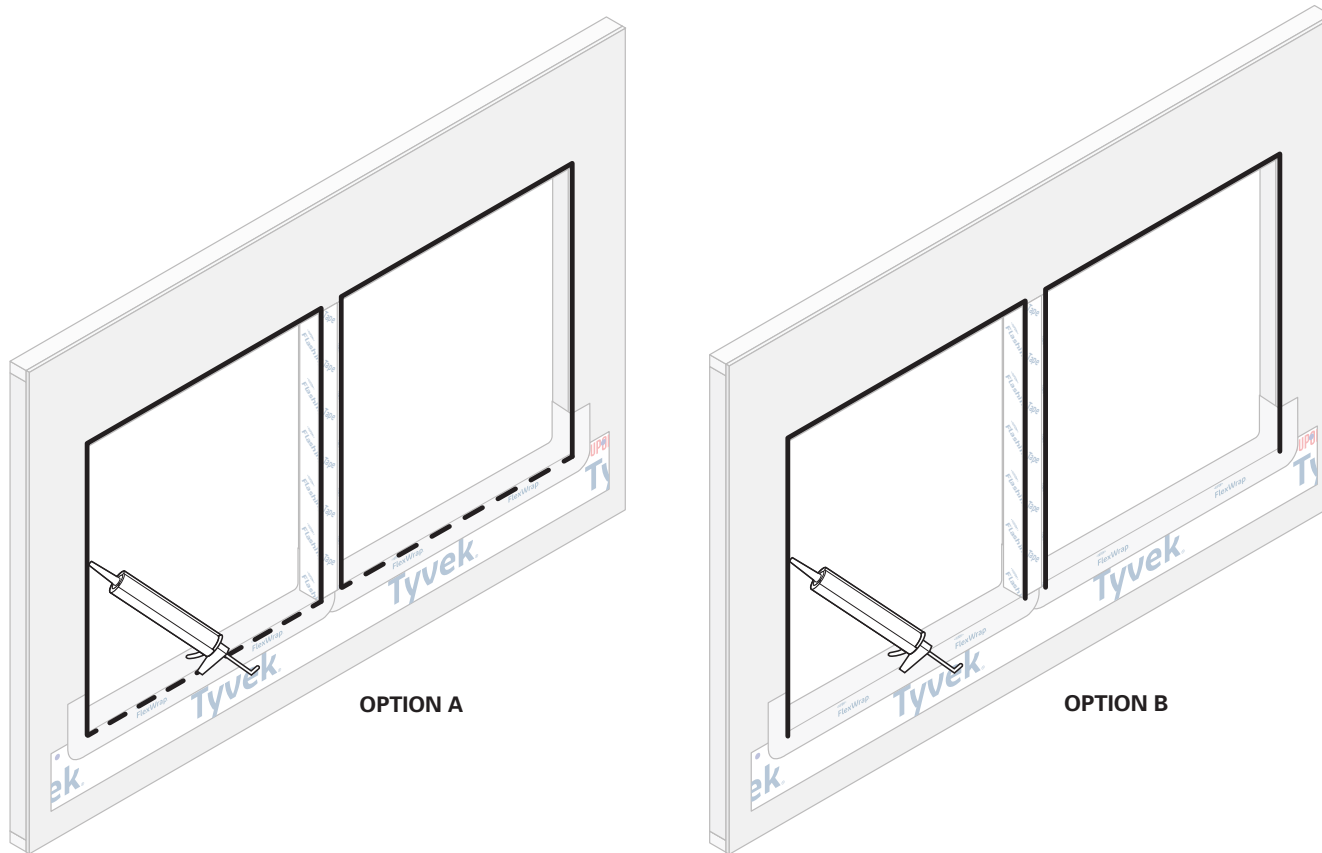


### STEP 3

- Cut a piece of 9" wide **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** the height (H) of the rough opening.
- NOTE:** For adjacent windows separated by a wider shared sheathing/framing, two overlapping pieces of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** may be required. When the flashing is folded into the opening per Step C. It should extend minimum 1" **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located.
- Remove release paper and center the **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** onto the face of the vertical exposed framing/sheathing with the bottom edge aligned with the sill rough opening. Adhere the exposed butyl onto the face of the vertical exposed framing sheathing.
- Fold the resulting **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** flaps into the rough opening and adhere.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

Option 2 – When Using DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows



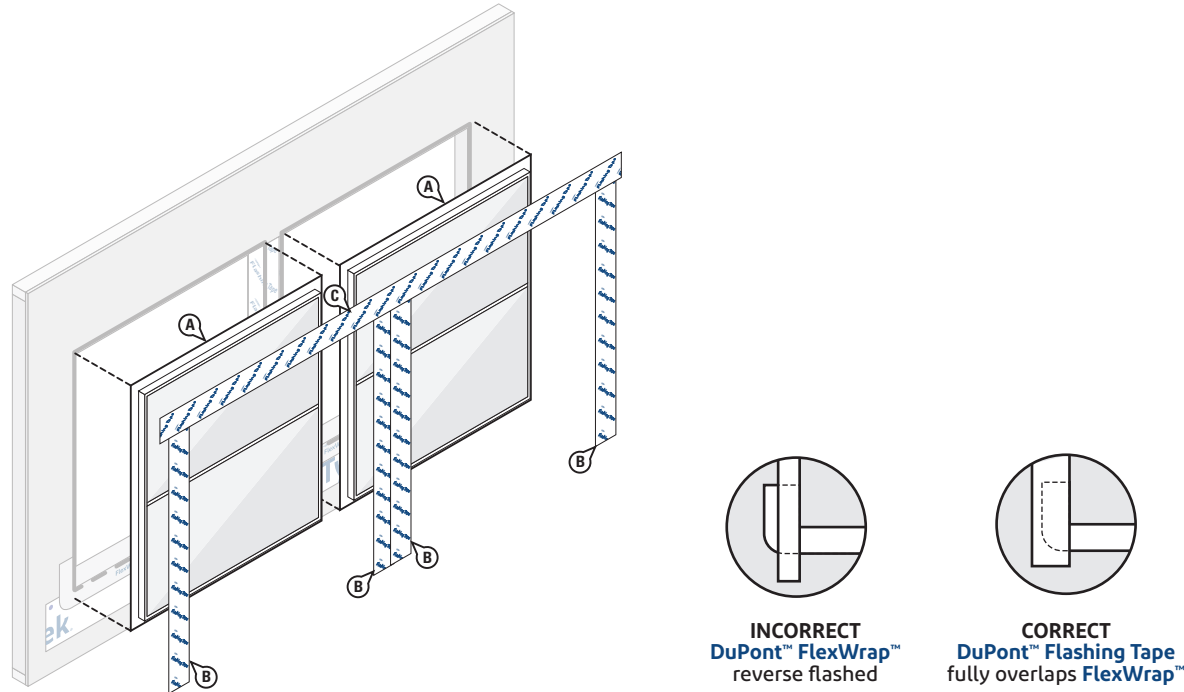
### STEP 4

**OPTION A:** Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) at window head and jambs to wall or back side of window mounting flange. **To allow for drainage, do not apply continuous sealant bead along sill.** Ensure a minimum 2" wide drainage gap in the sealant bead within 4" from **each corner** of the jamb-sill interface. Continue applying sealant along the sill with additional 2" wide (min.) drainage gaps for every 6"– 12" (on center) of sill width.

**OPTION B:** Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) at window head and jambs to wall or back side of window mounting flange. **To allow for drainage, do not apply sealant bead along sill.**

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

### Option 2 – When Using DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows



#### STEP 5

A. Install windows according to manufacturer's instructions.

B. Cut four pieces of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** for jamb flashing extending 1" above window head flanges and below bottom edge of sill flashing. Remove release paper and press tightly along sides of window frame.

**NOTE:** The **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** for the inside jamb flashing of one window may overlap the **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** on the inside jamb of the other window.

**NOTE:** If the inside jamb flanges of the two windows are sufficiently close, it is acceptable to use a single piece of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** to cover both inside jamb flanges. Select roll width wide enough to fully cover both jamb flanges.

**OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the window installation before the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing** membrane at the window head flange, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 1](#). The vertical leg of the drip cap must not be taller than the window head flange when installing drip cap according to [Option 1](#).

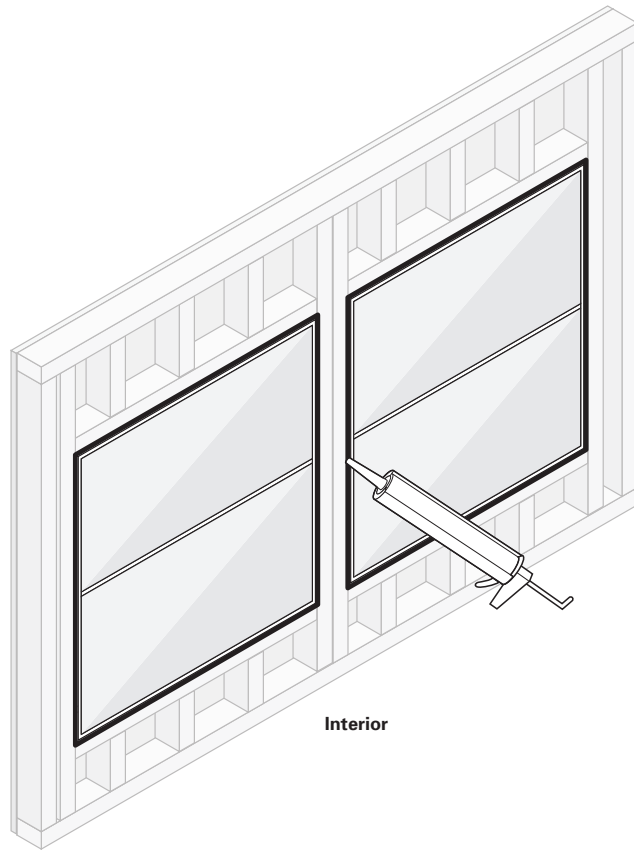
C. Cut a piece of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** for head flashing long enough to extend **BEYOND** the edges of flashing at outer jambs. Remove release paper and adhere to head flanges, extending onto sheathing. The **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing** membrane over the window must extend **BEYOND** the top edge of the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing** membrane previously installed between windows.

**NOTE:** Ensure proper shingling. **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** at jambs must overlap the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** at the sill and adhere to the **Tyvek® WRB** apron below the sill.

**OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the window installation, but after the window head flashing, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 2](#).

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

Option 2 – When Using DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows

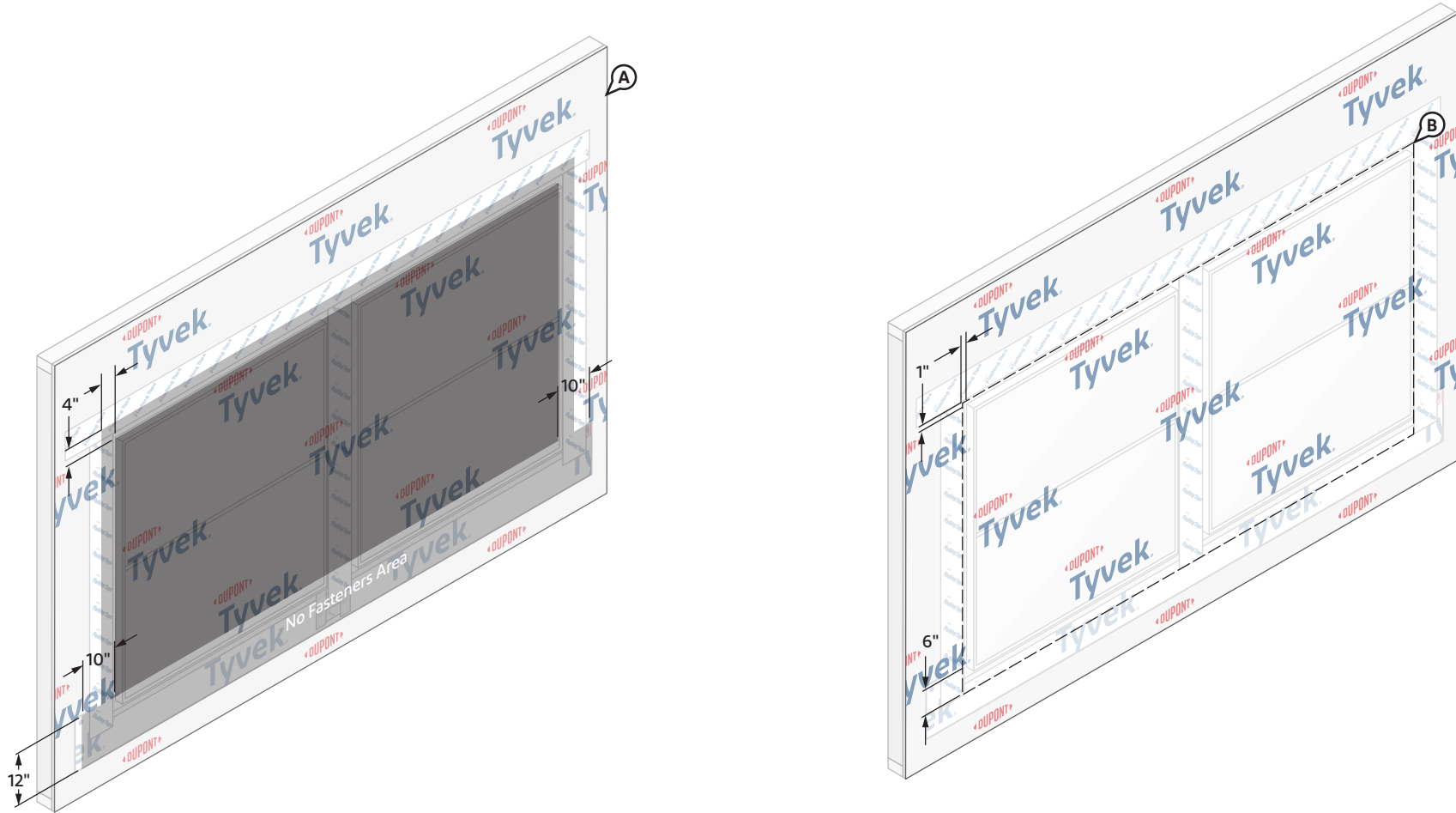


### STEP 6

Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the window opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

Option 2 – When Using DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows



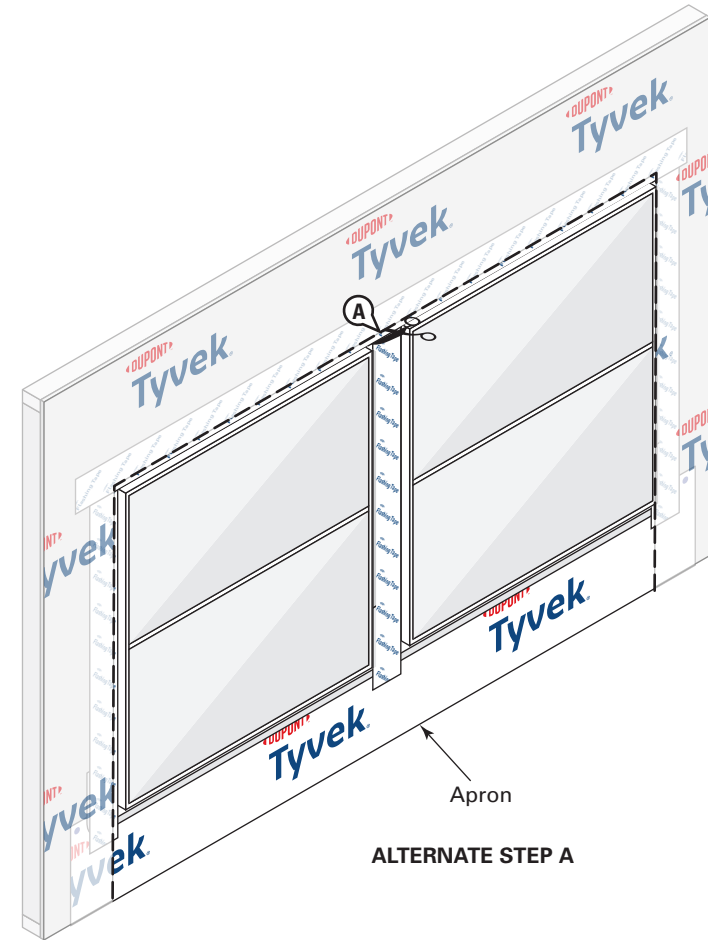
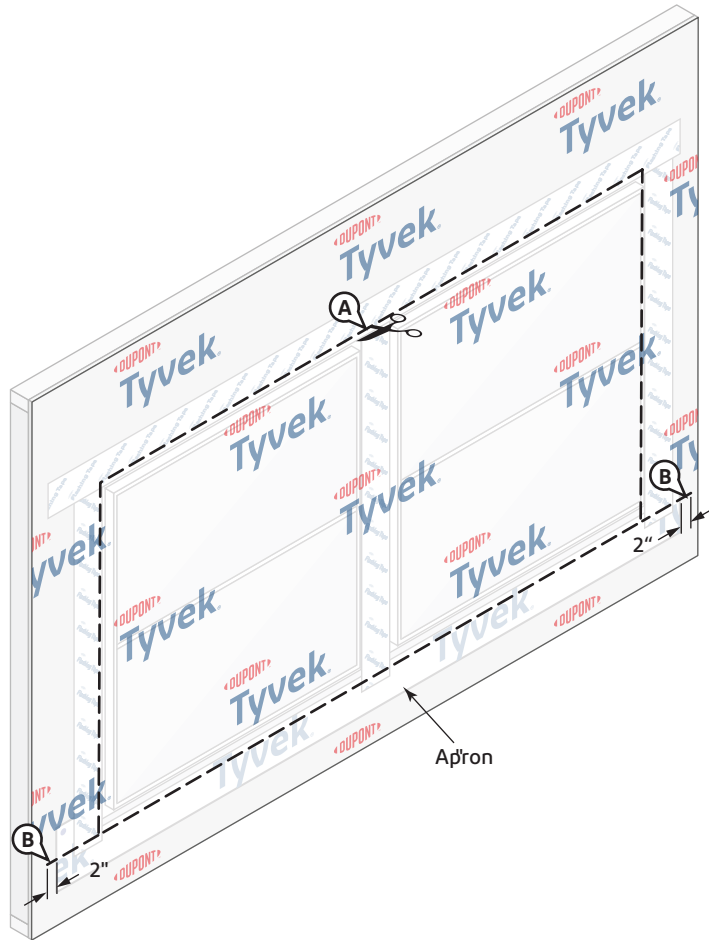
### STEP 7

A. Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the window frames at outside jambs and heads and within 12" of the window frames at sills or location of apron.

B. Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough openings a minimum of 1" from the outside jambs and heads of the window frames, and 6" below the sill of the window frames.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

Option 2 – When Using DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows



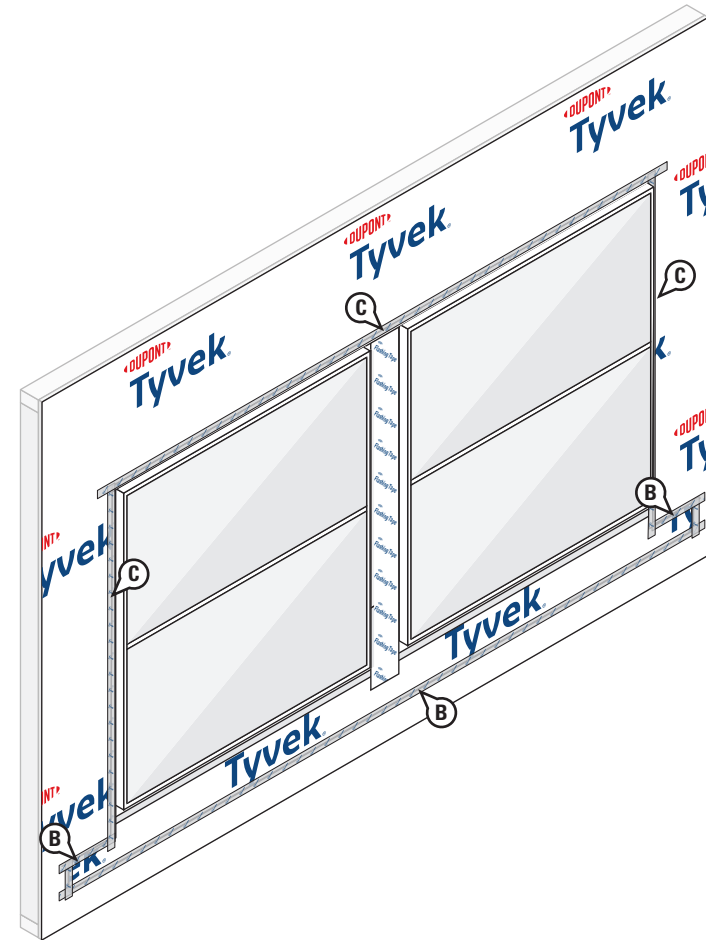
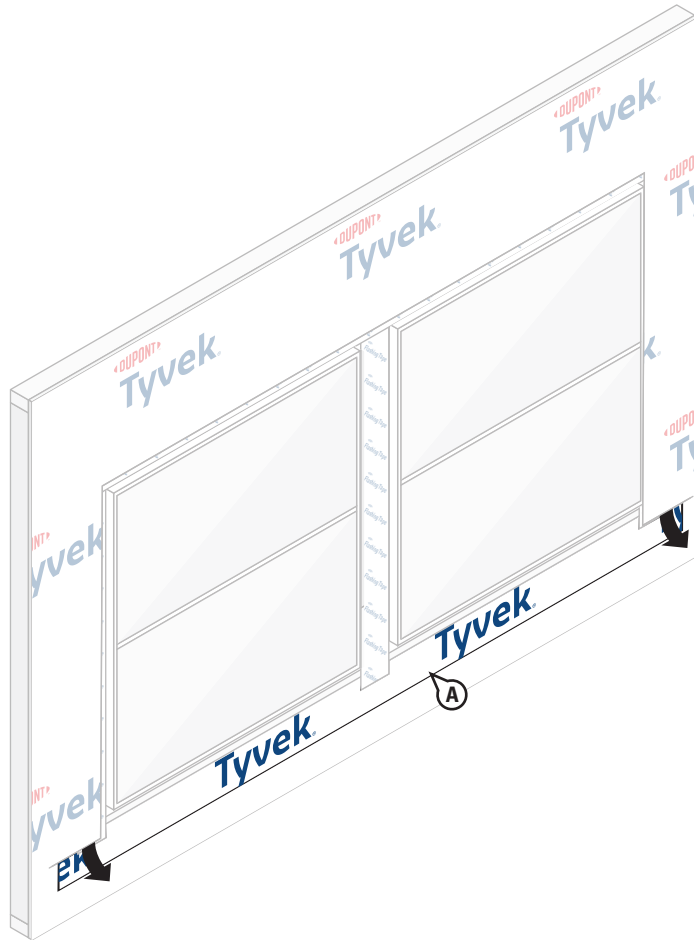
### STEP 8

- A. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose windows. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.
- B. Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend 1"– 2" **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.

**ALTERNATE STEP A:** If apron extends far enough below the sill rough openings to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap apron.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Adjacent Windows (with Less Than 6" of Sheathing/Framing Between Windows)

Option 2 – When Using DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product at Sheathing/Framing Separating Adjacent Windows



### STEP 9

#### Final Step

- A. Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- B. Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
- C. Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jambs and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around windows. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used.

**OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap **AFTER** the **Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed around perimeter of windows, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 3](#).

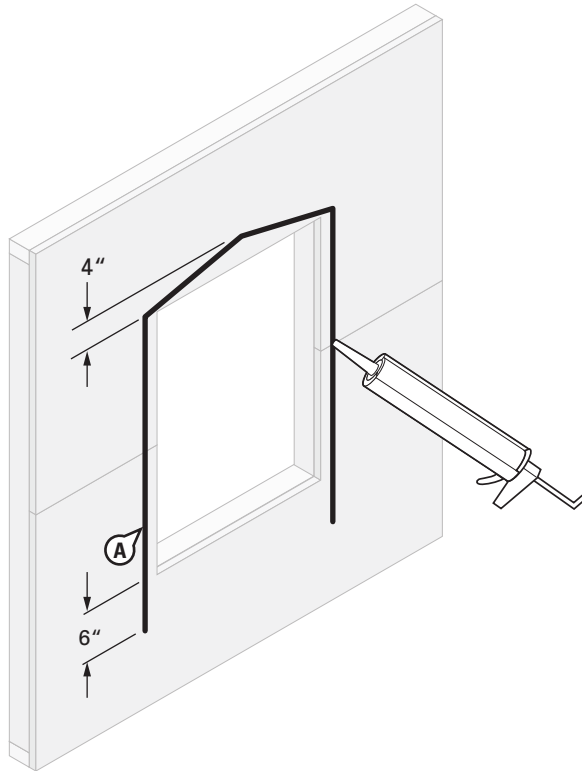
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

This section shows alternative methods used for additional rough opening air barrier continuity.

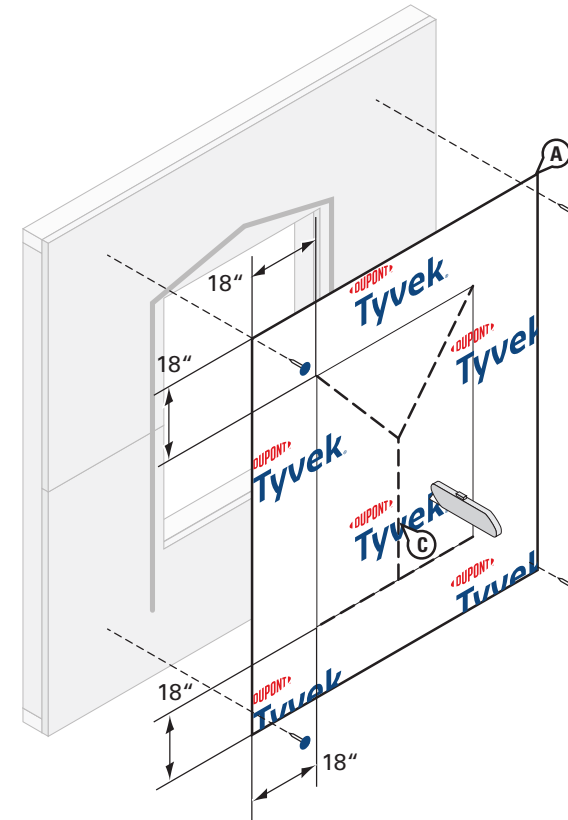
#### Method 1 – Rough Opening Treatment With Single Piece of Tyvek® WRB

This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ FlexWrap™ and DuPont™ StraightFlash™



#### STEP 1

- A. Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) around jambs and head, and angle the sealant to create a 4" peak. Sealant applied along each jamb should extend below sill by a maximum of 6".

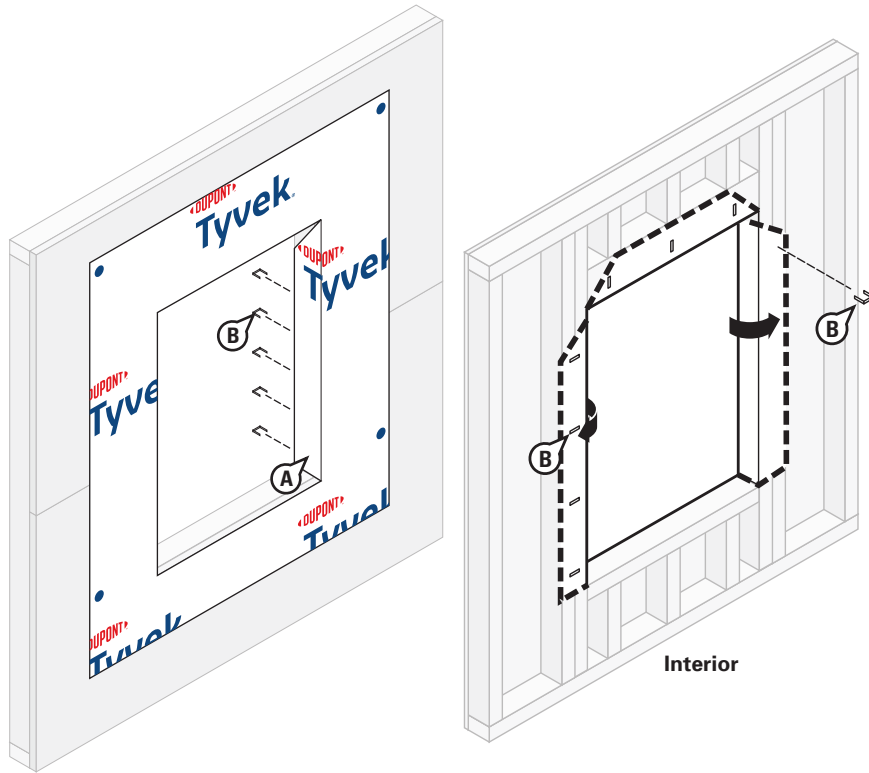


#### STEP 2

- A. Cut a piece of **Tyvek® WRB** that is 36" wider and 36" taller than the window rough opening to allow an 18" width around all sides.
- B. Center the piece of **Tyvek® WRB** over the rough opening and press into the sealant. Fasten along the sides and across the top using **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Caps** or recommended fastening system. Fasteners should not be installed within 10" of the edge of the rough opening, and no fasteners should be installed within 12" of the bottom edge of the **Tyvek® WRB**. Avoid placing fasteners where **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** will be installed.
- C. Cut opening as shown.

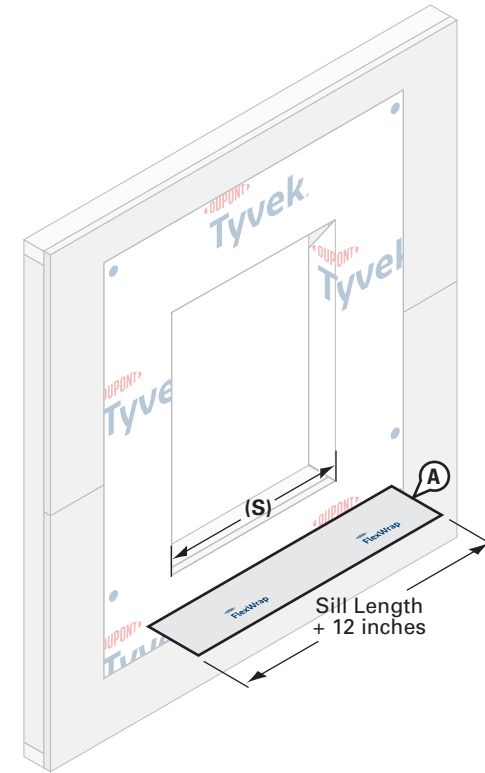
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 1 – Rough Opening Treatment With Single Piece of Tyvek® WRB



#### STEP 3

- A. Fold head and jamb flaps into rough opening.
- B. Secure flaps to inside wall framing using staples. Cut off excess flaps if desired.

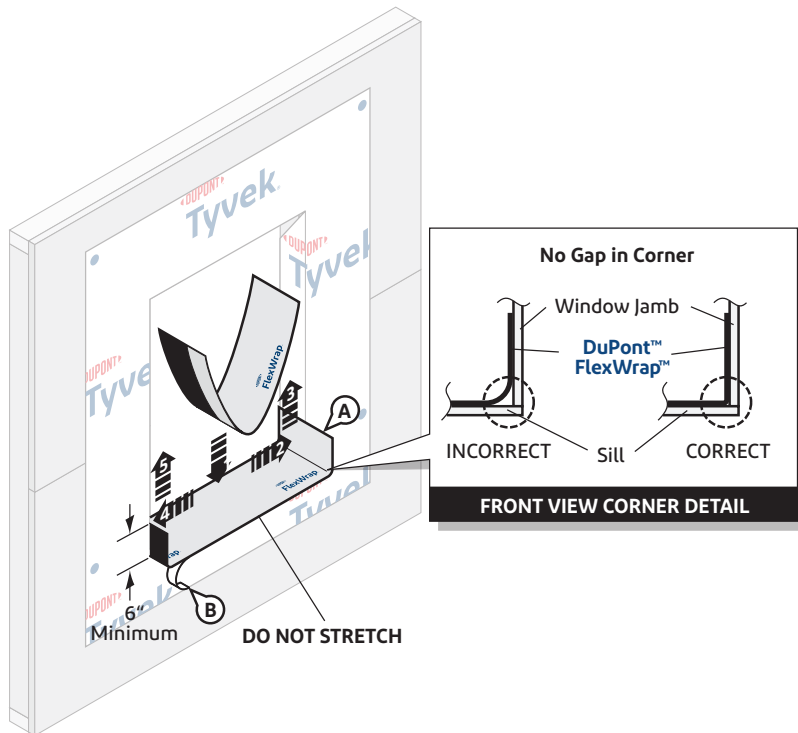


#### STEP 4

- A. Cut **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening sill (S). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2" – 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall. Remove wide piece of release paper.

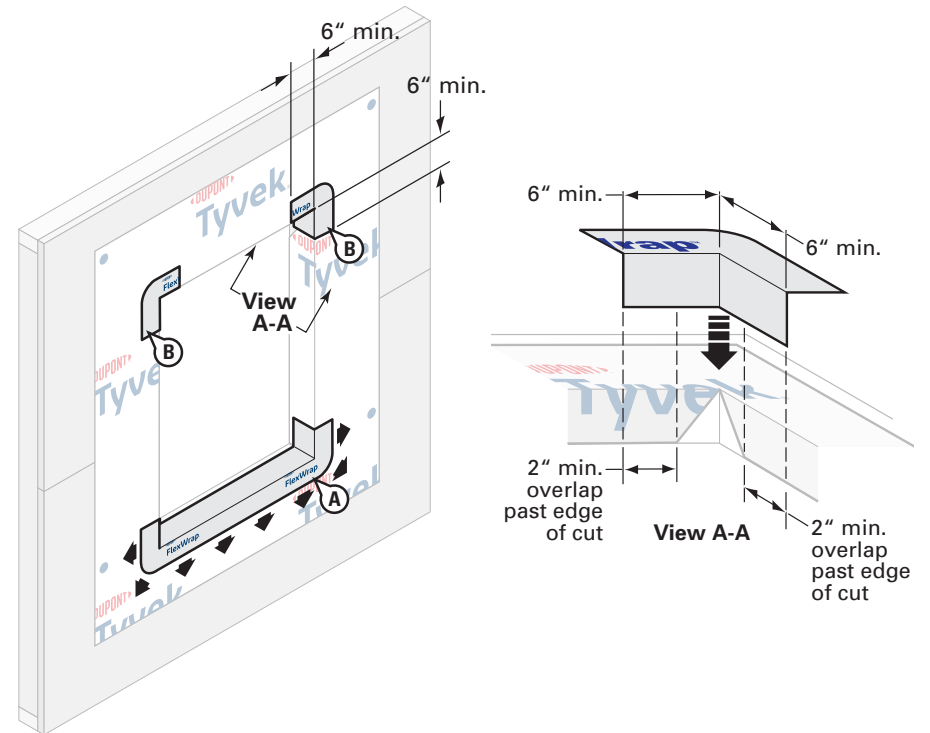
# Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

## Method 1 – Rough Opening Treatment With Single Piece of Tyvek® WRB



### STEP 5

- A. Position on horizontal sill by aligning the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2”– 3” of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6” up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening.
- B. Remove narrow release paper.



### STEP 6

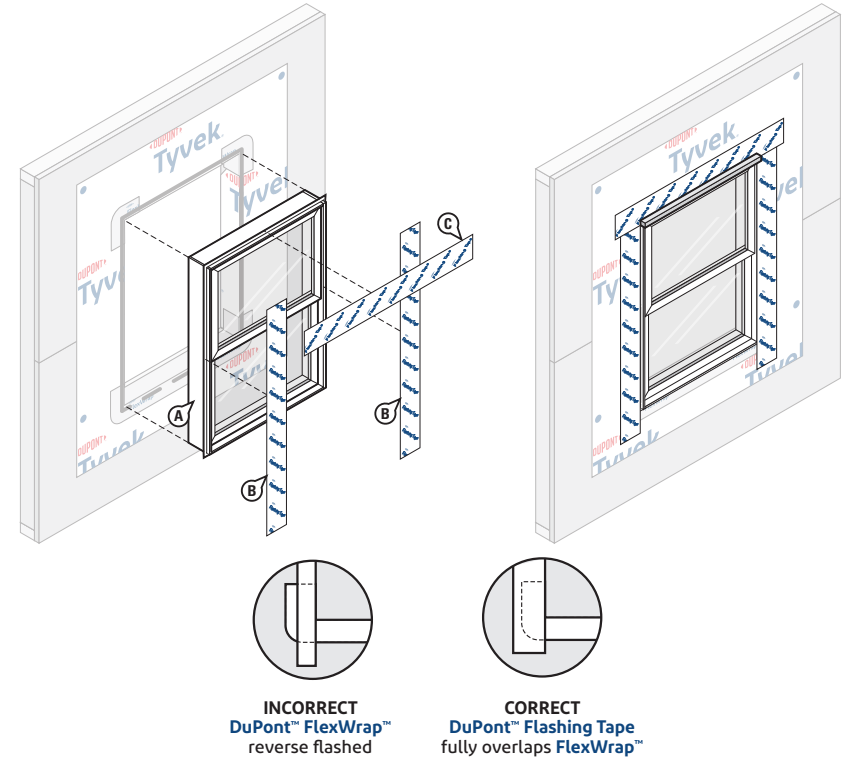
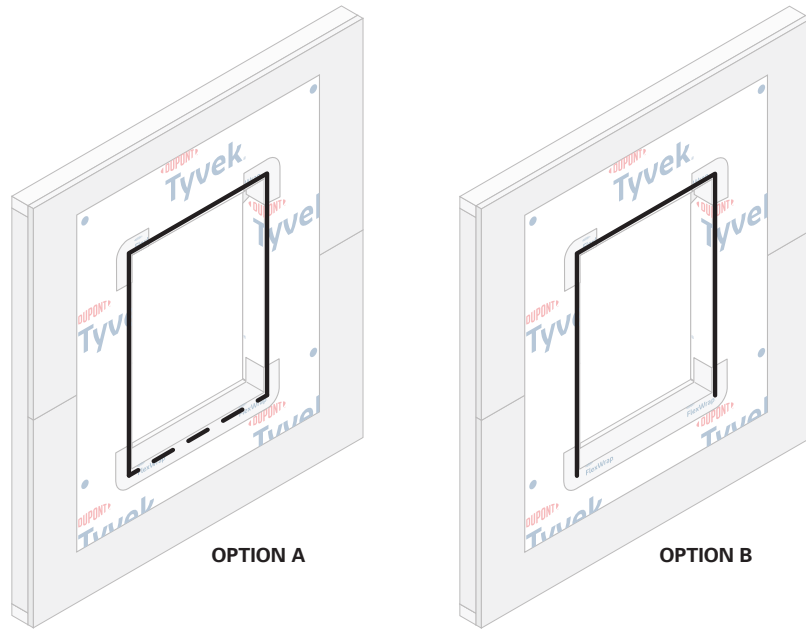
- A. Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill. Coverage of **FlexWrap™** should be 2”– 3” onto the face of the wall.
- B. Install a minimum of 12” length of **FlexWrap™** at each corner of the head to extend a minimum of 6” down the jamb and at least 6” on the head as shown.

**NOTE:** A longer piece of **FlexWrap™** may be required to properly cover the exposed areas of the opening to establish a 2” minimum overlap past edge of cut. See detail View A-A.

# Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

## Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 1 – Rough Opening Treatment With Single Piece of Tyvek® WRB



#### STEP 7

**OPTION A:** Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) at window head and jambs to wall or back side of window mounting flange. **To allow for drainage, do not apply continuous sealant bead along sill.** Ensure a minimum 2” wide drainage gap in the sealant bead within 4” from each corner of the jamb-sill interface. Continue applying sealant along the sill with additional 2” wide (min.) drainage gaps for every 6”– 12” (on center) of sill width.

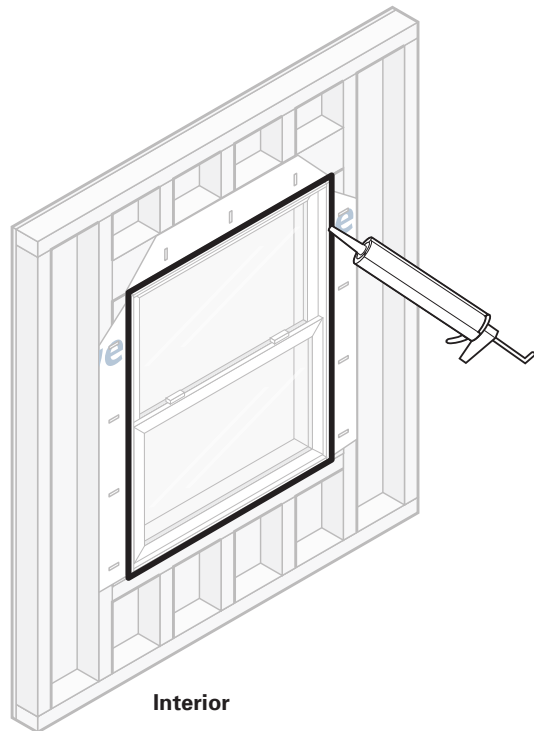
**OPTION B:** Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) at window head and jambs to wall or back side of window mounting flange. **To allow for drainage, do not apply sealant bead along sill.**

#### STEP 8

- A. Install window according to manufacturer’s instructions.
- B. Cut two pieces of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** for jamb flashing extending 1” above window head flange and below bottom edge of sill flashing. Remove release paper and press tightly along sides of window frame. **Ensure proper shingling. DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** must overlap **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** and adhere to the piece of **Tyvek® WRB**. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the window installation before the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing** membrane at the window head flange, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 1](#). **NOTE:** The vertical leg of the drip cap must not be taller than the window head flange when installing drip cap according to [Option 1](#).
- C. Cut a piece of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** for head flashing, which should extend **BEYOND** the outer edges of the jamb flashings. Remove release paper and install to completely cover flange while also adhering to the face of the wall. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the window installation, but after the window head flashing, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 2](#).

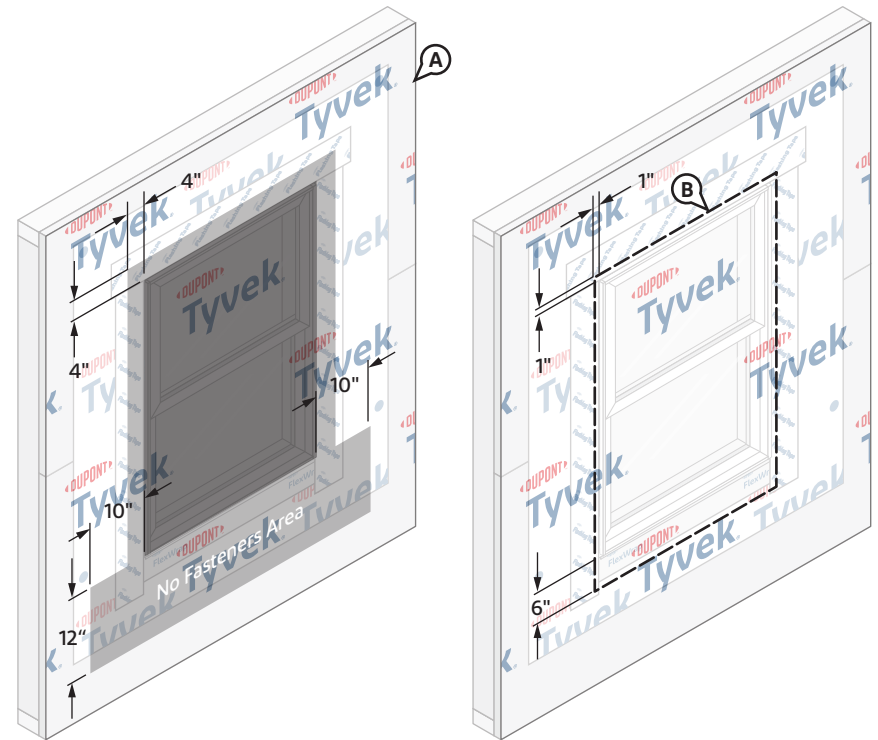
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 1 – Rough Opening Treatment With Single Piece of Tyvek® WRB



#### STEP 9

Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the window opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

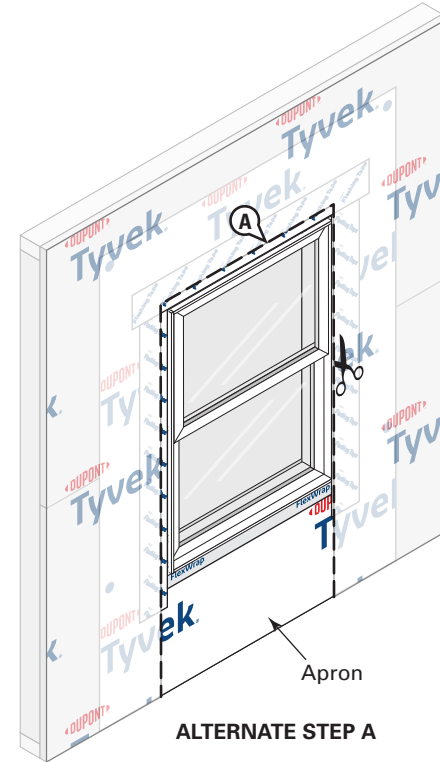
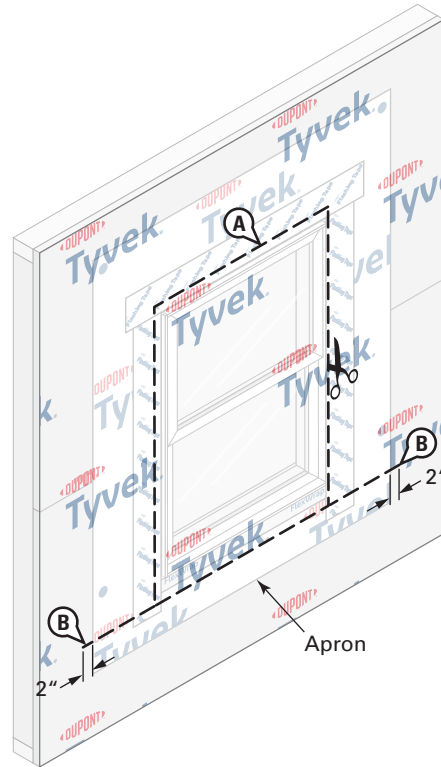


#### STEP 10

- Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the window frame at jambs and head and within 18" of the window frame at sill or location of **Tyvek® WRB** piece below sill of window.
- Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough opening a minimum of 1" from the jambs and head of the window frame, and 6" below the sill of the window frame.

# Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

## Method 1 – Rough Opening Treatment With Single Piece of Tyvek® WRB



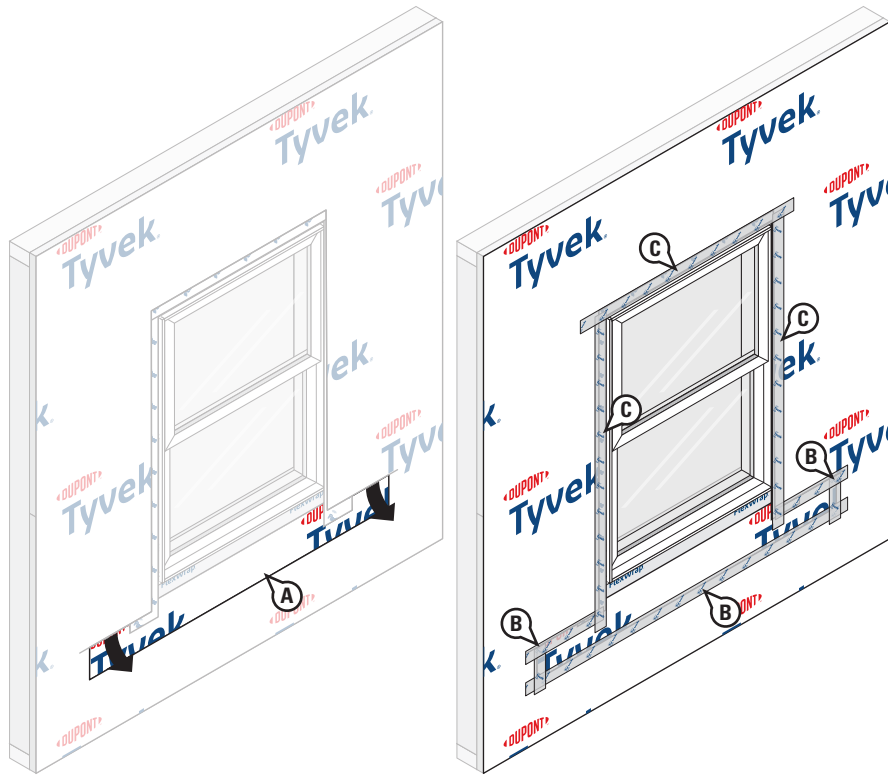
### STEP 11

- A. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or the piece of **Tyvek® WRB** underneath.
- B. Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend 1”– 2” **BEYOND** the piece of **Tyvek® WRB** underneath.

**ALTERNATE STEP A:** If piece of **Tyvek® WRB** extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap the piece of **Tyvek® WRB** underneath.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 1 – Rough Opening Treatment With Single Piece of Tyvek® WRB



## STEP 12

### Final Step

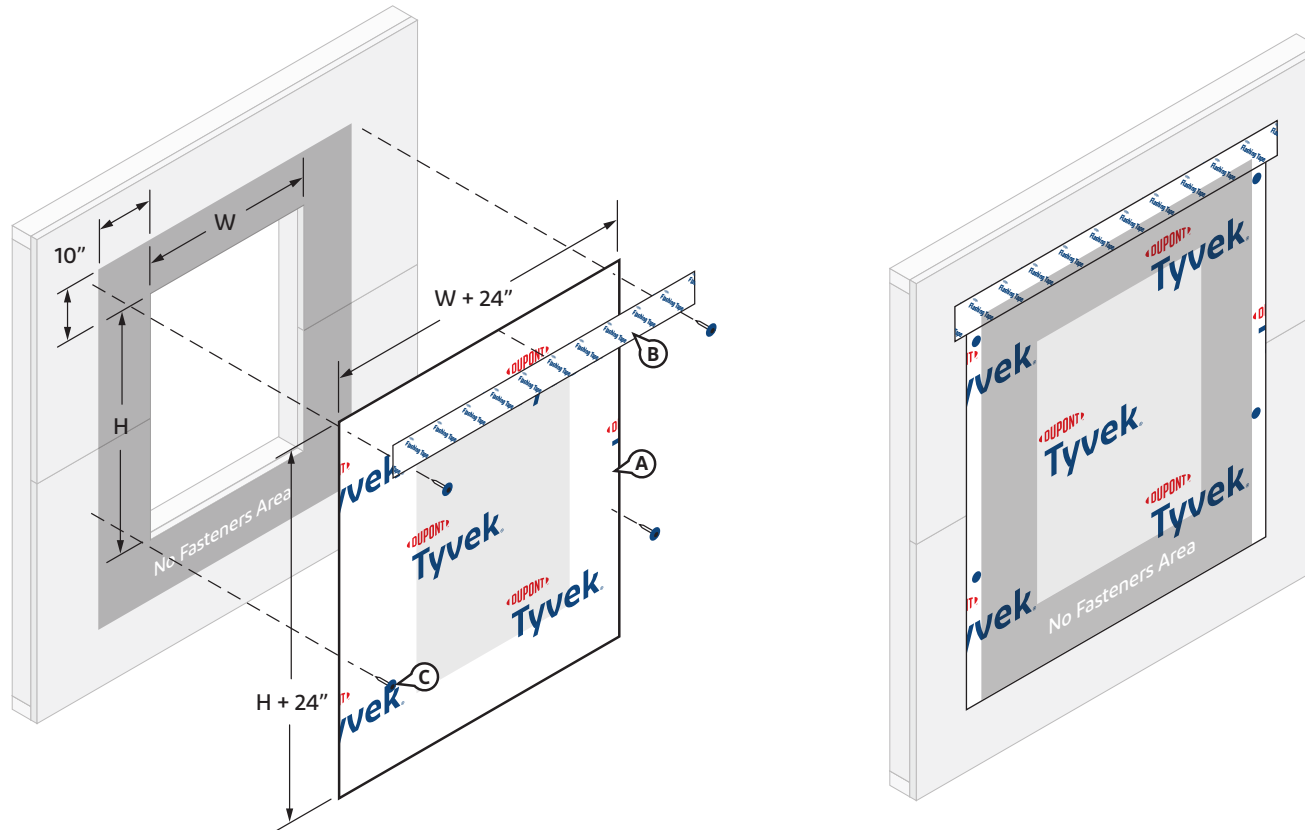
- A. Bring the bottom portion of the piece of **Tyvek® WRB** underneath through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- B. Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** piece below sill.
- C. Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jambs and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around window. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap **AFTER** the **Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 3](#).

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

This section shows alternative methods used for additional rough opening air barrier continuity.

### Method 2 – Rough Opening Treatment With Single Piece of Tyvek® WRB

This method applies to DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ FlexWrap™, and DuPont™ StraightFlash™



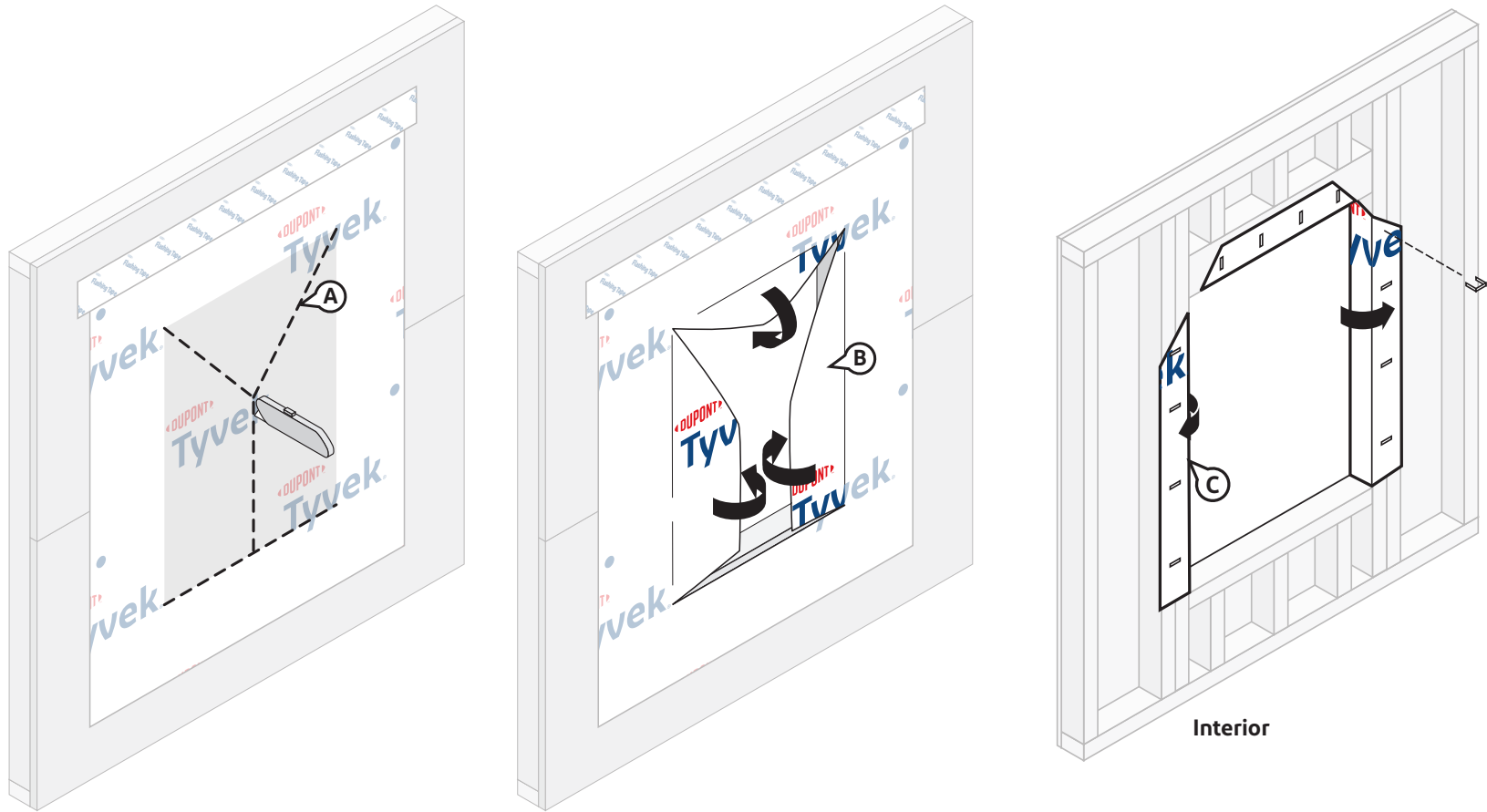
### STEP 1

- Cut a piece of **Tyvek® WRB** that is 24" wider and taller than the window rough opening.
- Center the piece of **Tyvek® WRB** over the rough opening to allow a 12" width around all sides. Secure to sheathing along top edge using **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™**.

- Install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Caps** or recommended fastening system. Fasteners should not be installed within 10" of the edge of the rough opening along jambs and head, and no fasteners should be installed below the sill rough opening. Avoid placing fasteners where **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** will be installed.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 2 – Rough Opening Treatment With Single Piece of Tyvek® WRB



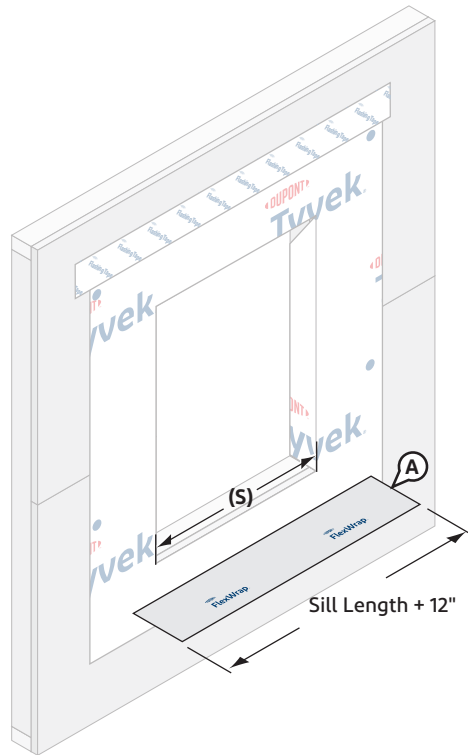
#### STEP 2

- Cut opening as shown.
- Fold head and jamb flaps into rough opening.
- Secure flaps to inside wall framing using staples. Cut off excess flaps if desired.

# Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

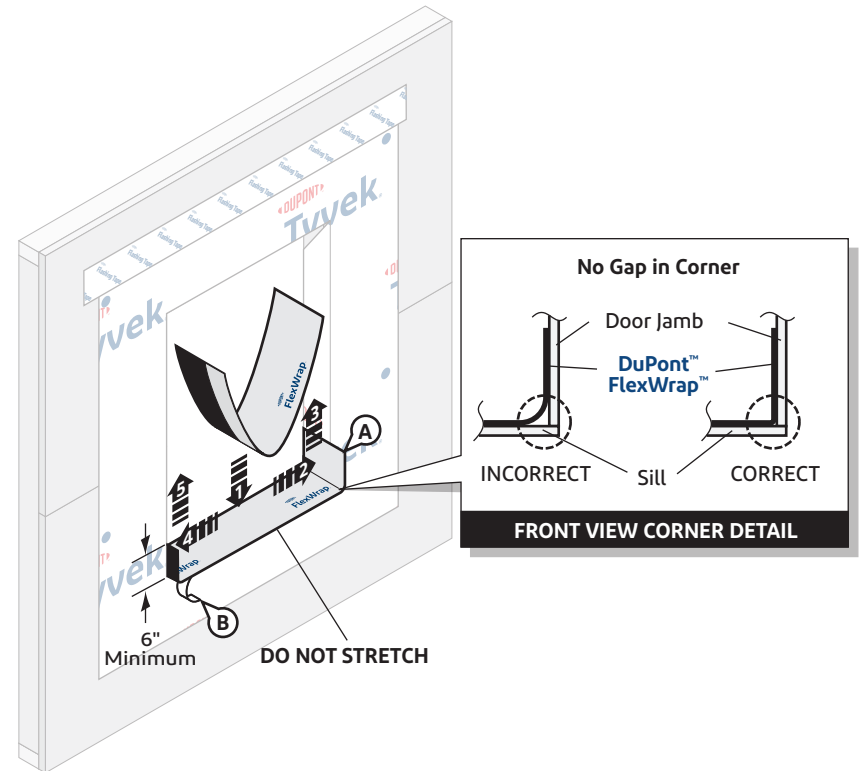
## Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 2 – Rough Opening Treatment With Single Piece of Tyvek® WRB



#### STEP 3

- A. Cut **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening (S). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.

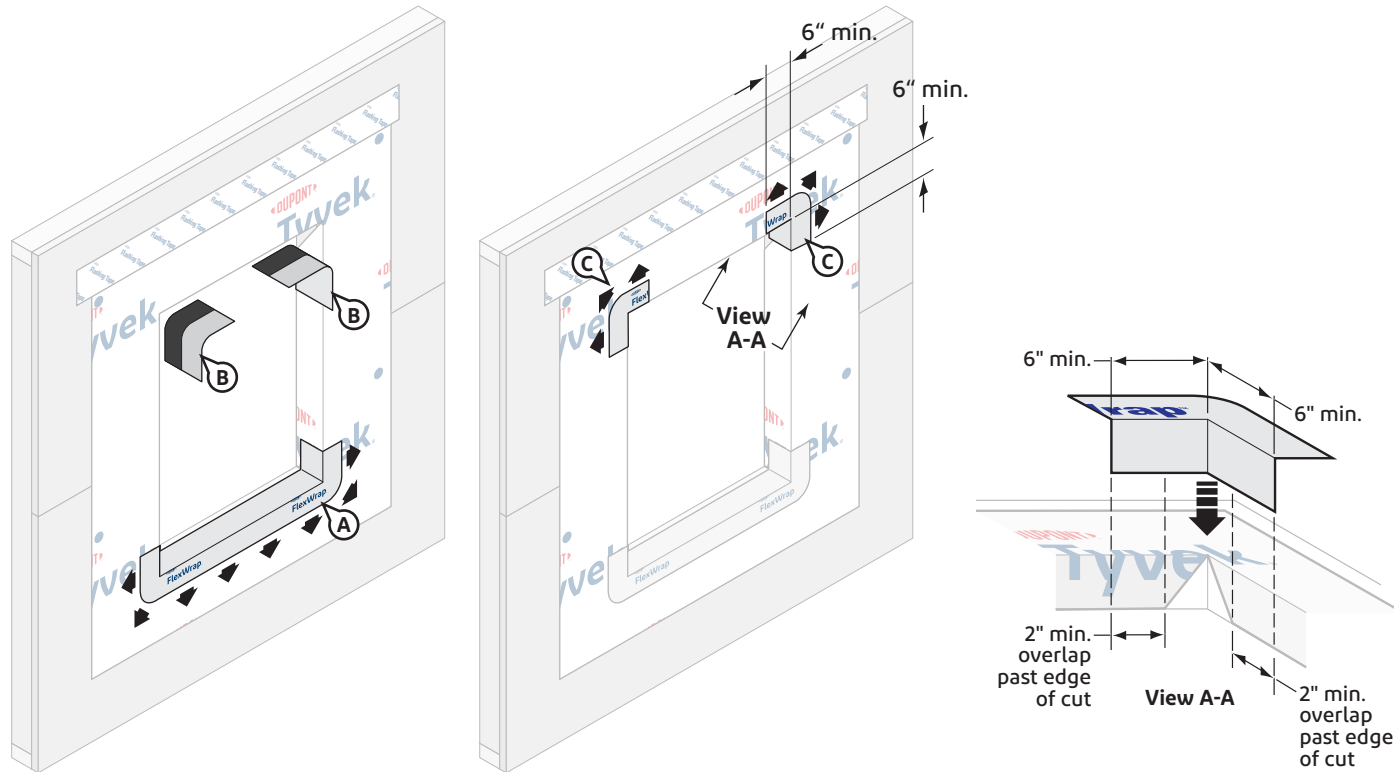


#### STEP 4

- A. Remove wide piece of release paper. Position **FlexWrap™** on horizontal sill by aligning the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2"– 3" of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6" up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening.
- B. Remove narrow release paper.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 2 – Rough Opening Treatment With Single Piece of Tyvek® WRB



#### STEP 5

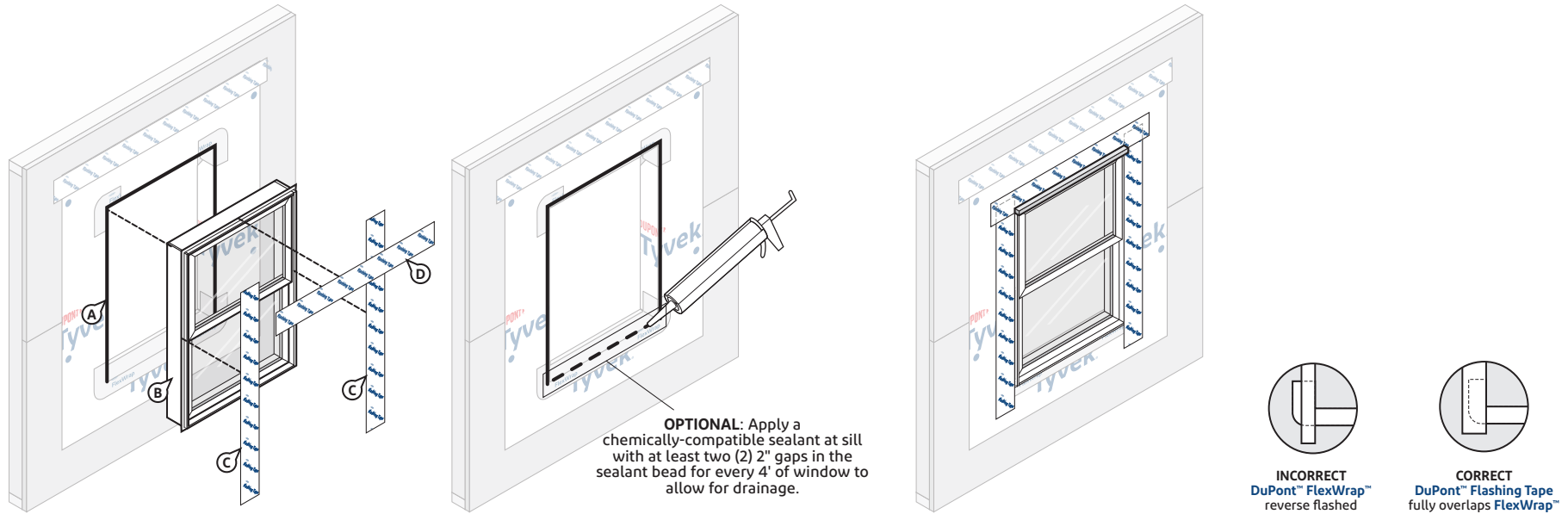
- Fan out **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill. Coverage of **FlexWrap™** should be 2"– 3" onto the face of the wall.
- Cut two (2) 12" long pieces of **FlexWrap™** for top corners of rough opening. Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall. Remove wide pieces of release paper. Install the cut pieces of **FlexWrap™** into the rough opening at the top corners of the jamb and head so that the narrow release paper is aligned with the outer edges of the rough opening. Each piece should be folded tight into the corner and extend 6" onto the head and 6" down the jambs as shown.

- Remove the remaining release paper and fan each **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** corner pieces out onto the face of the wall.

**NOTE:** Longer pieces of **FlexWrap™** may be required to properly cover the exposed areas of the opening to establish a 2" minimum overlap past edge of cut. See detail View A-A.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 2 – Rough Opening Treatment With Single Piece of Tyvek® WRB

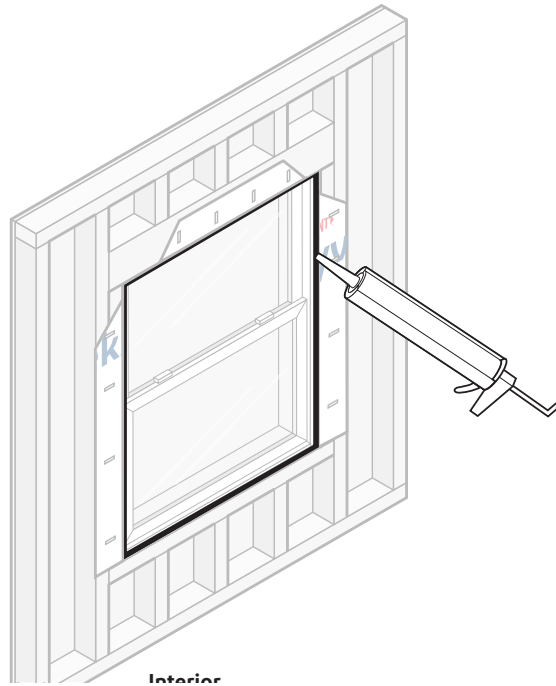


### STEP 6

- Apply a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) on three sides (jambs and head) as shown above.
- Install window according to manufacturer's instructions.
- Cut two pieces of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** for jamb flashing extending 1" above window head flange and below bottom edge of sill flashing. Remove release paper and press tightly along sides of window frame.  
**OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the window installation before the DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing at the window head flange, see [Drip Cap Installation](#) section and refer to [Option 1](#).  
**NOTE:** The vertical leg of the drip cap must not be taller than the window head flange when installing drip cap according to [Option 1](#).
- Cut a piece of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** for head flashing, which should extend **BEYOND** the outer edges of the jamb flashings. Remove release paper and install to completely cover flange while also adhering to the face of the wall.  
**OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the window installation, but after the window head flashing, see [Drip Cap Installation](#) section and refer to [Option 2](#).

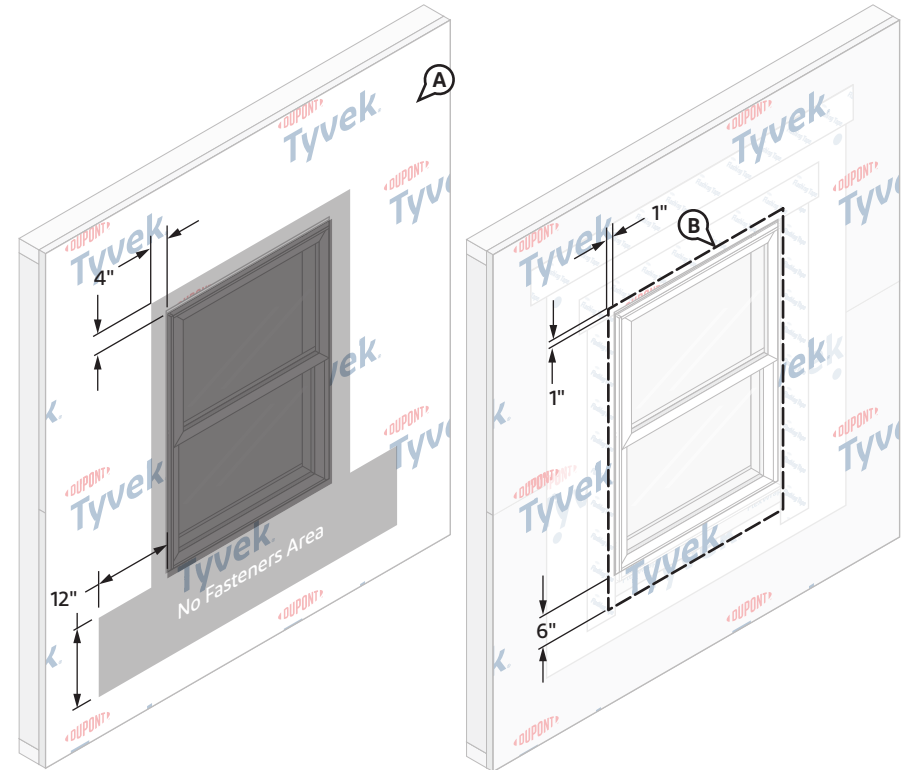
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 2 – Rough Opening Treatment With Single Piece of Tyvek® WRB



#### STEP 7

Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the window opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

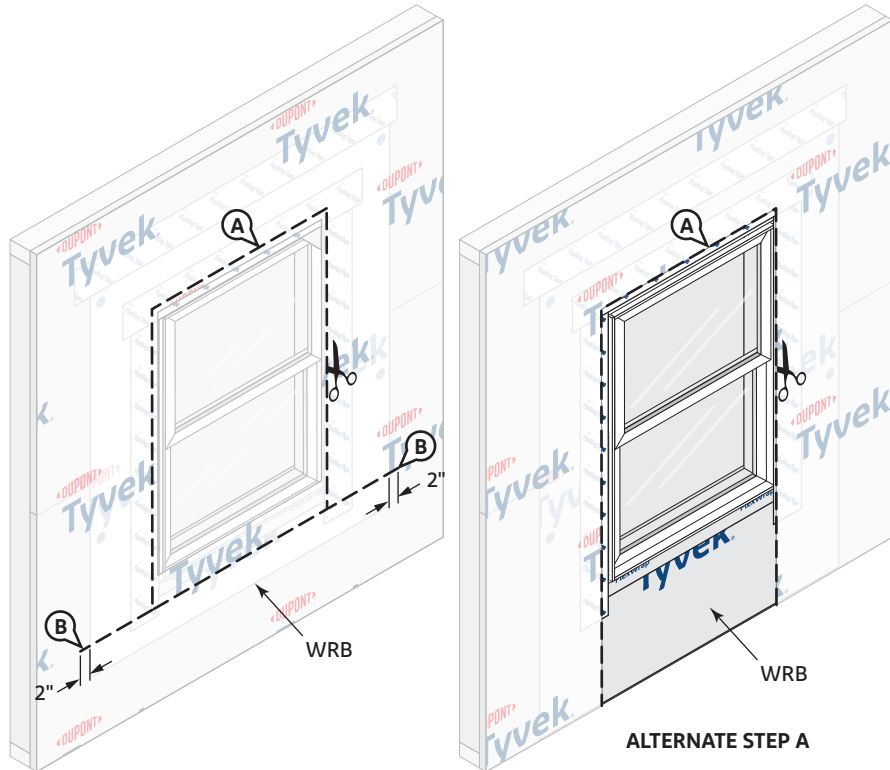


#### STEP 8

- Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the window frame at jambs and head and within 12" of the window frame at sill or location of apron.
- Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough opening a minimum of 1" from the jambs and head of the window frame, and 6" below the sill of the window frame.

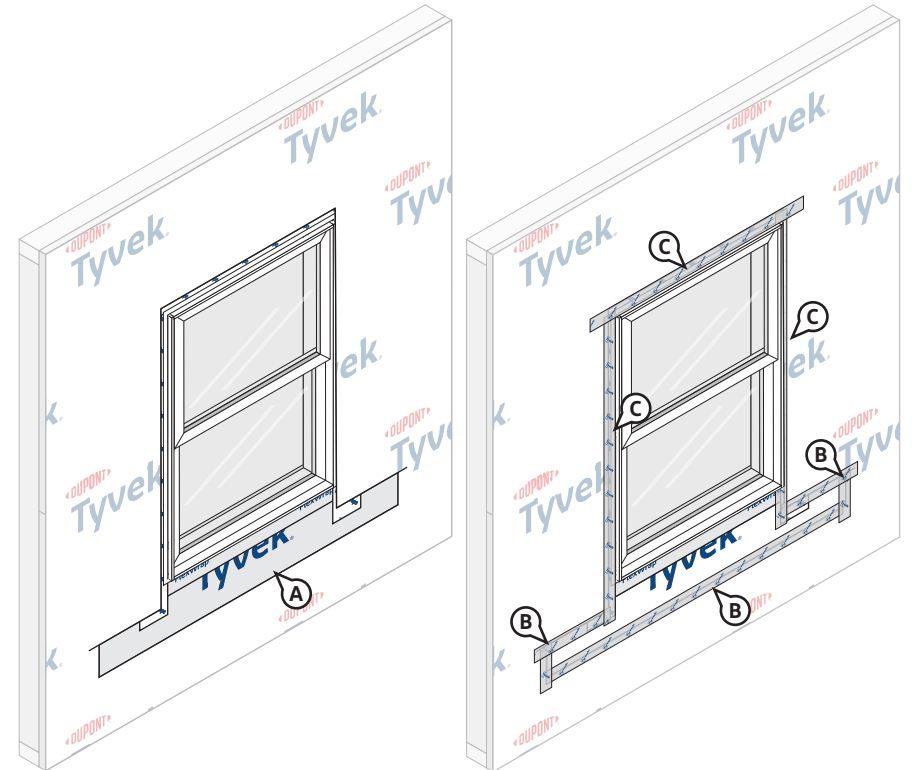
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 2 – Rough Opening Treatment With Single Piece of Tyvek® WRB



#### STEP 9

- Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or the piece of **Tyvek® WRB** underneath.
- ALTERNATE STEP A:** If piece of **Tyvek® WRB** extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jamb and head only to overlap the piece of **Tyvek® WRB** underneath.
- Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend a minimum of 2” **BEYOND** the piece of **Tyvek® WRB** underneath.



#### STEP 10

##### Final Step

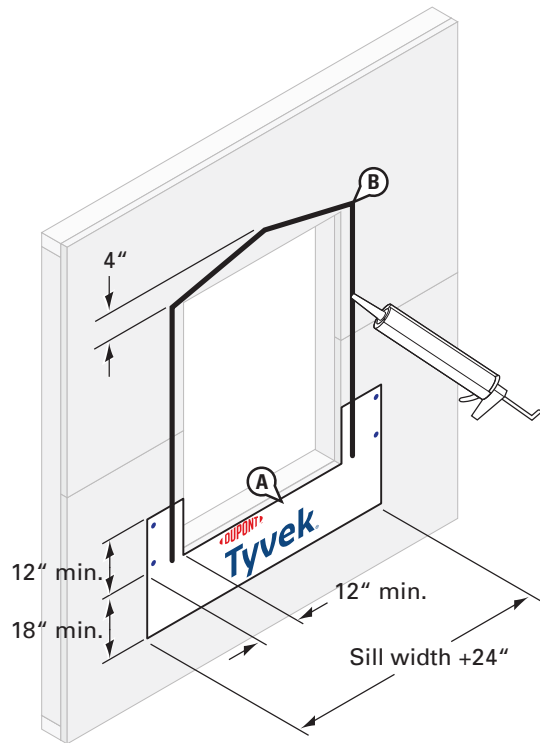
- Bring the bottom portion of the piece of **Tyvek® WRB** underneath through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of **Tyvek® WRB** piece below sill.
- Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jamb and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around window.  
**OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap **AFTER** the **Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed, see Drip Cap Installation section and refer to Option 3.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

This section shows alternative methods used for additional rough opening air barrier continuity.

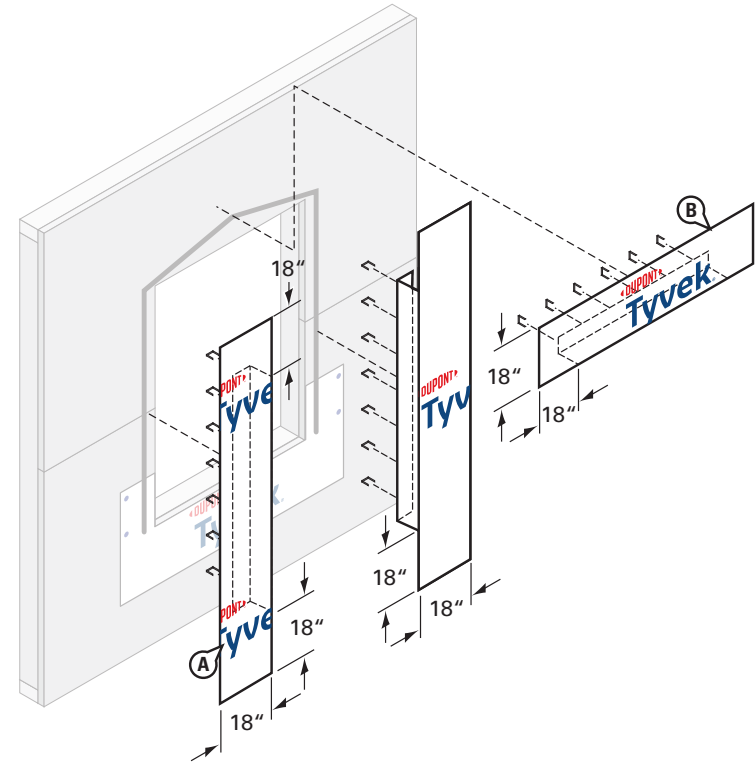
### Method 3 – Rough Opening Treatment Using Strips of Tyvek® WRB

This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ FlexWrap™, and DuPont™ StraightFlash™



#### STEP 1

- A. Cut an apron made of **Tyvek® WRB** for attachment at sill of rough opening. Apron should extend at least 12" up sides and 12" **BEYOND** the sides of rough opening jambs and at least 18" below sill of rough opening, or extend far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below. Fasten along the sides and across the top using **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Caps** or recommended fastening system. Fasteners should not be installed within 10" of the edge of the rough opening, and no fasteners should be installed within 6" of the bottom edge of the **Tyvek® WRB**. Avoid placing fasteners where **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** will be installed.
- B. Install continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) around jambs and head. Angle the sealant to create a 4" peak.

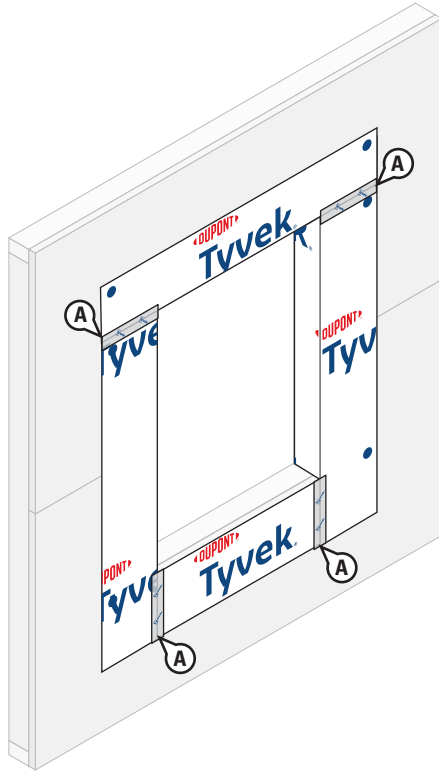


#### STEP 2

- A. Cut 2 pieces of **Tyvek® WRB** for jambs long enough to extend 18" above and below rough opening, and wide enough to extend 18" onto face of wall and wrap into rough opening and onto interior framing. Trim each piece to create flaps as shown. Press the pieces of **Tyvek® WRB** into the sealant and wrap in and around the studs at the jambs. Staple to inside framing to secure.
- B. Cut 1 piece of **Tyvek® WRB** for head long enough to extend 18" **BEYOND** the sides of rough opening, and wide enough to extend 18" onto face of wall and wrap into rough opening and onto interior framing. Trim each piece to create flap as shown. Press the piece of **Tyvek® WRB** into the sealant and wrap in and around the studs at the head. Staple to inside framing to secure.

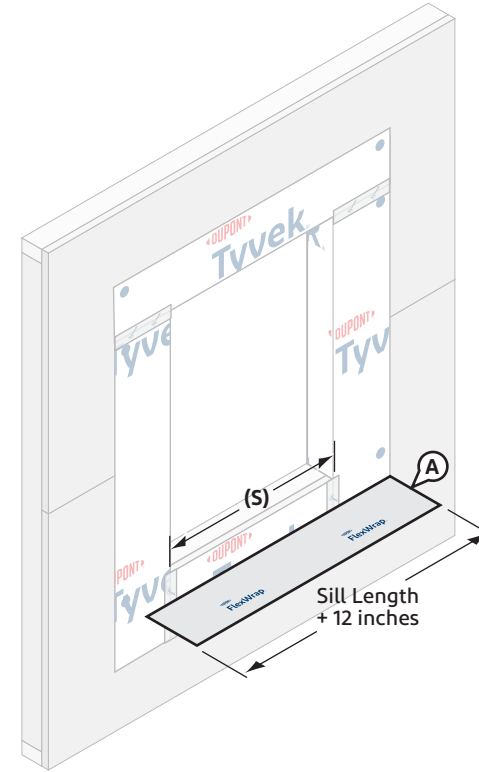
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 3 – Rough Opening Treatment Using Strips of Tyvek® WRB



#### STEP 3

A. Seal the vertical and horizontal Tyvek® WRB seams using DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape.

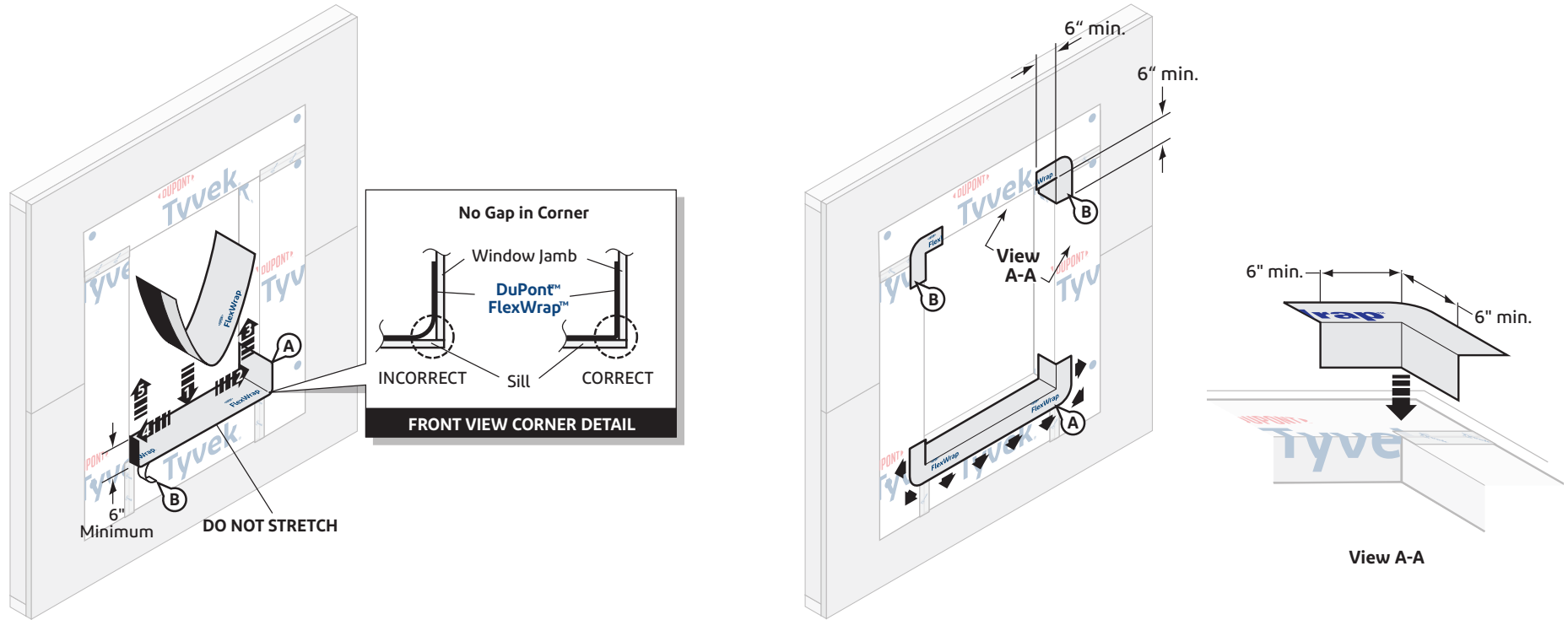


#### STEP 4

A. Cut DuPont™ FlexWrap™ at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening (S). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall. Remove wide piece of release paper.

# Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

## Method 3 – Rough Opening Treatment Using Strips of Tyvek® WRB



### STEP 5

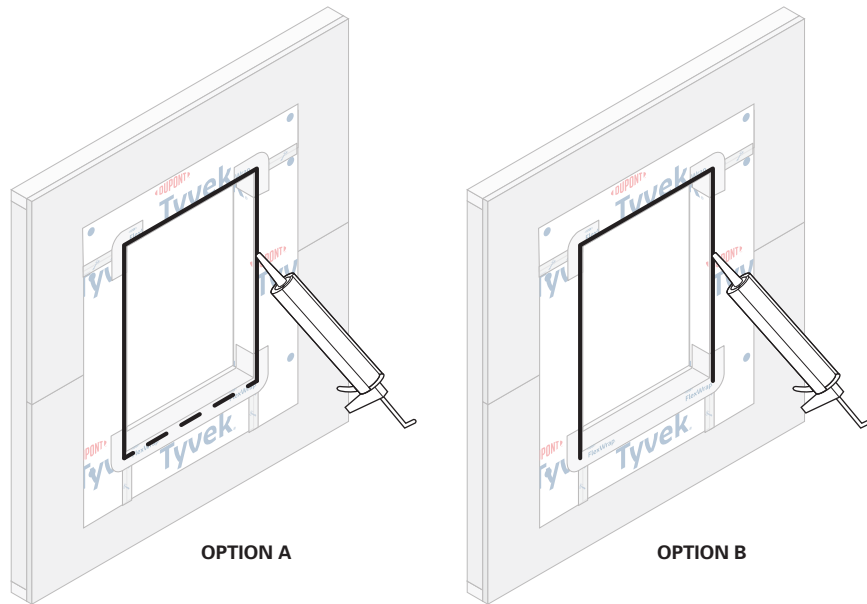
- A. Position on horizontal sill by aligning the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2”– 3” of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6” up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening.
- B. Remove narrow release paper.

### STEP 6

- A. Fan out **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill. Coverage of **FlexWrap™** should be 2”– 3” onto the face of the wall.
- B. Install a minimum of 12” length of **FlexWrap™** at each corner of the head to extend a minimum of 6” down the jamb and at least 6” on the head as shown.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

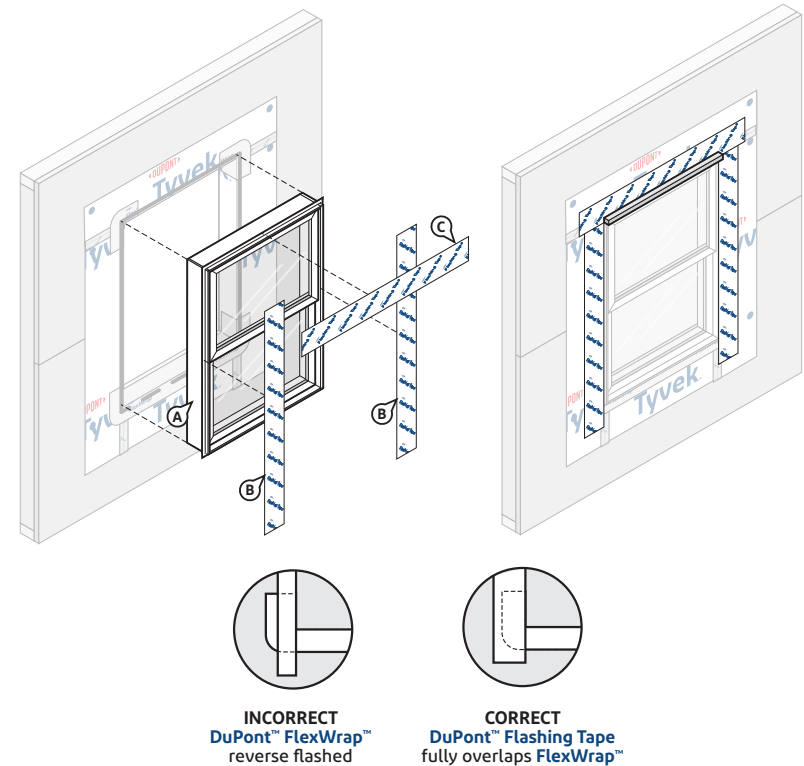
### Method 3 – Rough Opening Treatment Using Strips of Tyvek® WRB



#### STEP 7

**OPTION A:** Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) at window head and jambs to wall or back side of window mounting flange. **To allow for drainage, do not apply continuous sealant bead along sill.** Ensure a minimum 2” wide drainage gap in the sealant bead within 4” from each corner of the jamb-sill interface. Continue applying sealant along the sill with additional 2” wide (min.) drainage gaps for every 6”– 12” (on center) of sill width.

**OPTION B:** Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) at window head and jambs to wall or back side of window mounting flange. **To allow for drainage, do not apply sealant bead along sill.**



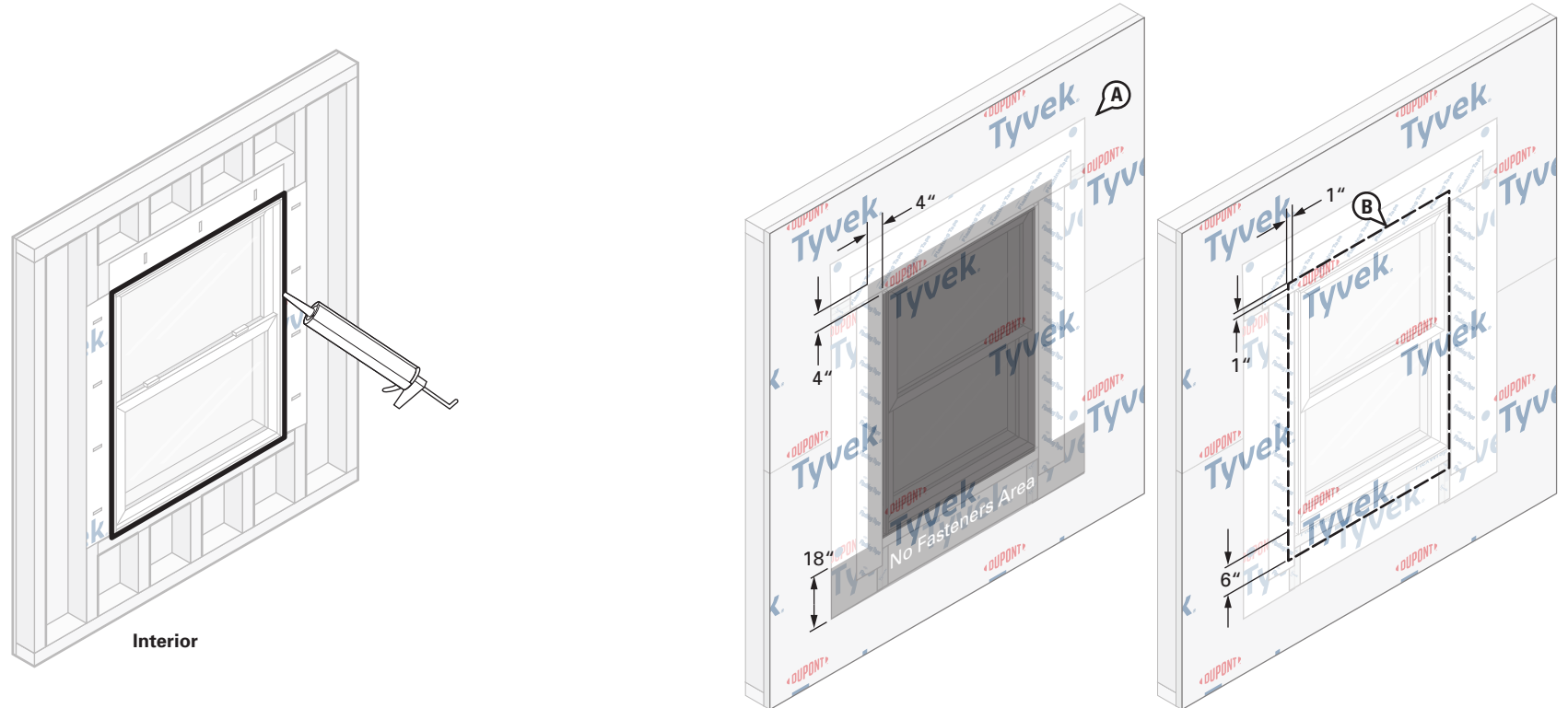
#### STEP 8

- Install window according to manufacturer’s instructions.
- Cut two pieces of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** for jamb flashing extending 1” above window head flange and below bottom edge of sill flashing. Remove release paper and press tightly along sides of window frame. Ensure proper shingling. **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** must overlap **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** and adhere to the piece of **Tyvek® WRB**. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the window installation before the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing** at the window head flange, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 1](#). **NOTE:** The vertical leg of the drip cap must not be taller than the window head flange when installing drip cap according to [Option 1](#).
- Cut a piece of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** for head flashing long enough to extend **BEYOND** the outer edges of jamb flashings. Remove release paper and install completely covering mounting flange and adhering to the **Tyvek® WRB** pieces.

**OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the window installation, but after the window head flashing, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 2](#).

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 3– Rough Opening Treatment Using Strips of Tyvek® WRB



#### STEP 9

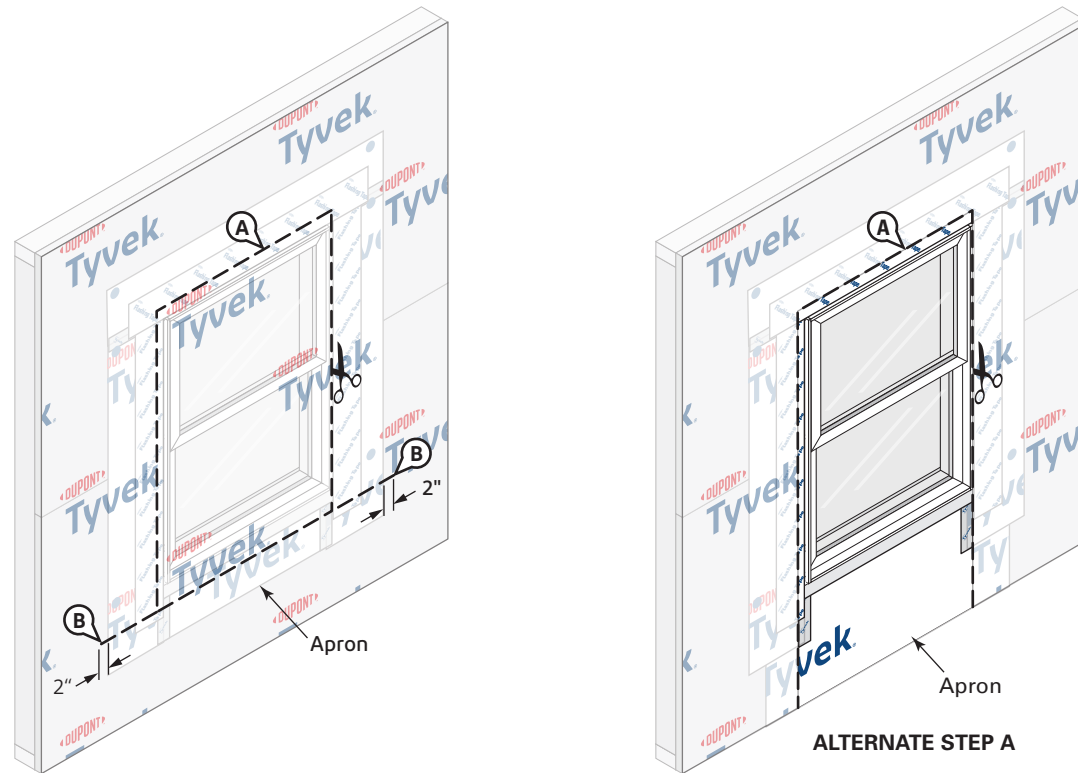
Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the window opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

#### STEP 10

- Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the window frame at jambs and head and within 18" of the window frame at sill or location of **Tyvek® WRB** piece below sill of window.
- Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough opening a minimum of 1" from the jambs and head of the window frame, and 6" below the sill of the window frame.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 3 – Rough Opening Treatment Using Strips of Tyvek® WRB



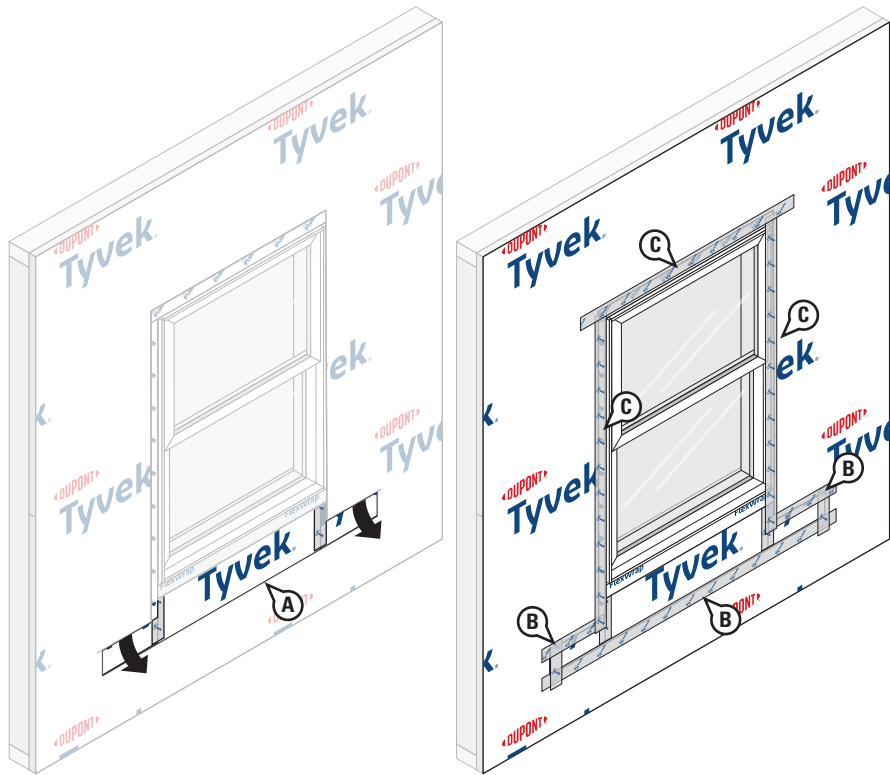
#### STEP 11

- A. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.
- B. Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend 1”– 2” **BEYOND** the pieces of **Tyvek® WRB** underneath.

**ALTERNATE STEP A:** If pieces of **Tyvek® WRB** extend far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap pieces of **Tyvek® WRB** underneath.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 3 – Rough Opening Treatment Using Strips of Tyvek® WRB



#### STEP 12

##### Final Step

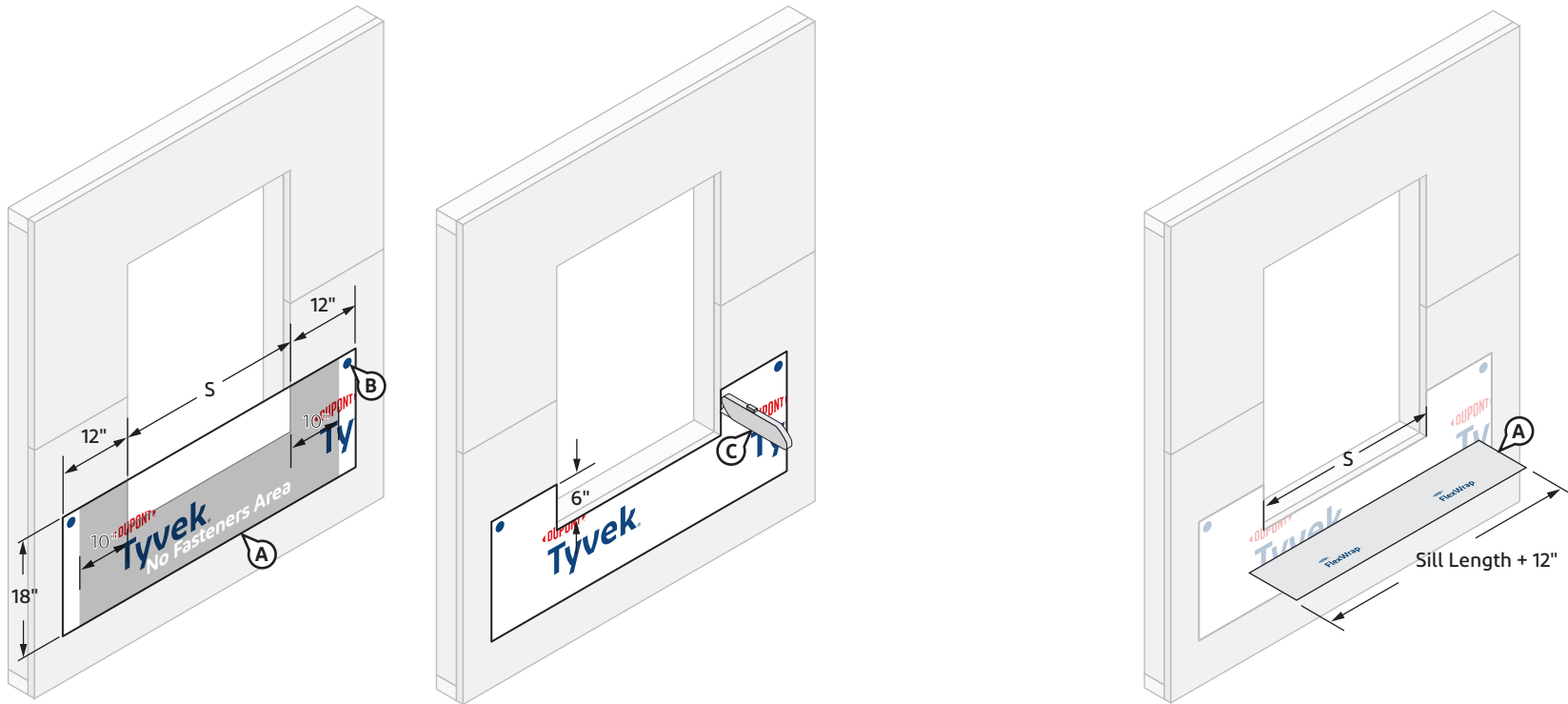
- A. Bring the bottom portion of the pieces of **Tyvek® WRB** through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits to lap over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- B. Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** pieces below sill.
- C. Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jambs and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around window. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap **AFTER** the **Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 3](#)

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

This section shows alternative methods used for additional rough opening air barrier continuity.

### Method 4 - Rough Opening Treatment with Strips of Tyvek® WRB

This method applies to DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ FlexWrap™, and DuPont™ StraightFlash™



### STEP 1

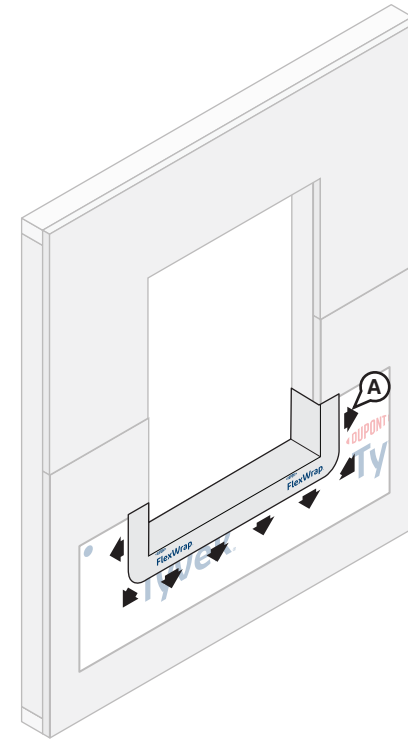
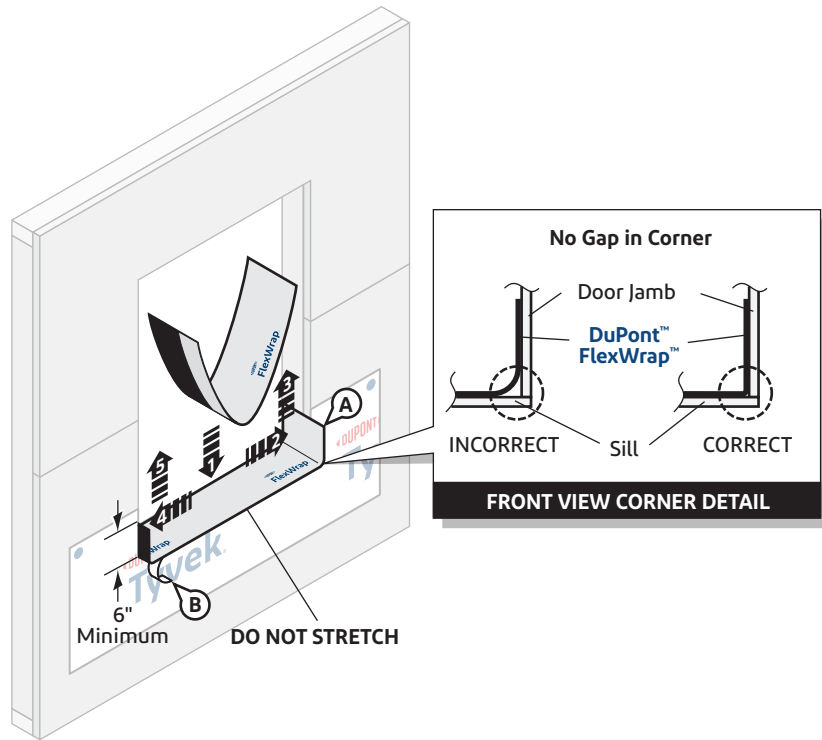
- Cut an apron made of **Tyvek® WRB** that is 24" **LONGER** than sill rough opening (S) and a minimum of 18" wide, or extend far enough below the sill to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below.
- Position apron over rough opening to extend 12" **BEYOND** rough opening jambs and 6" above rough opening sill. The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall using **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners** or recommended fasteners. Fasteners should not be installed within 10" of the edge of the rough opening along jambs, and no fasteners should be installed below the sill rough opening. Avoid placing **Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners** where **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** will be installed.
- Cut apron along jamb and sill edges of rough opening as shown.

### STEP 2

- Cut **FlexWrap™** at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening sill (S). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 4 - Rough Opening Treatment with Strips of Tyvek® WRB



#### STEP 3

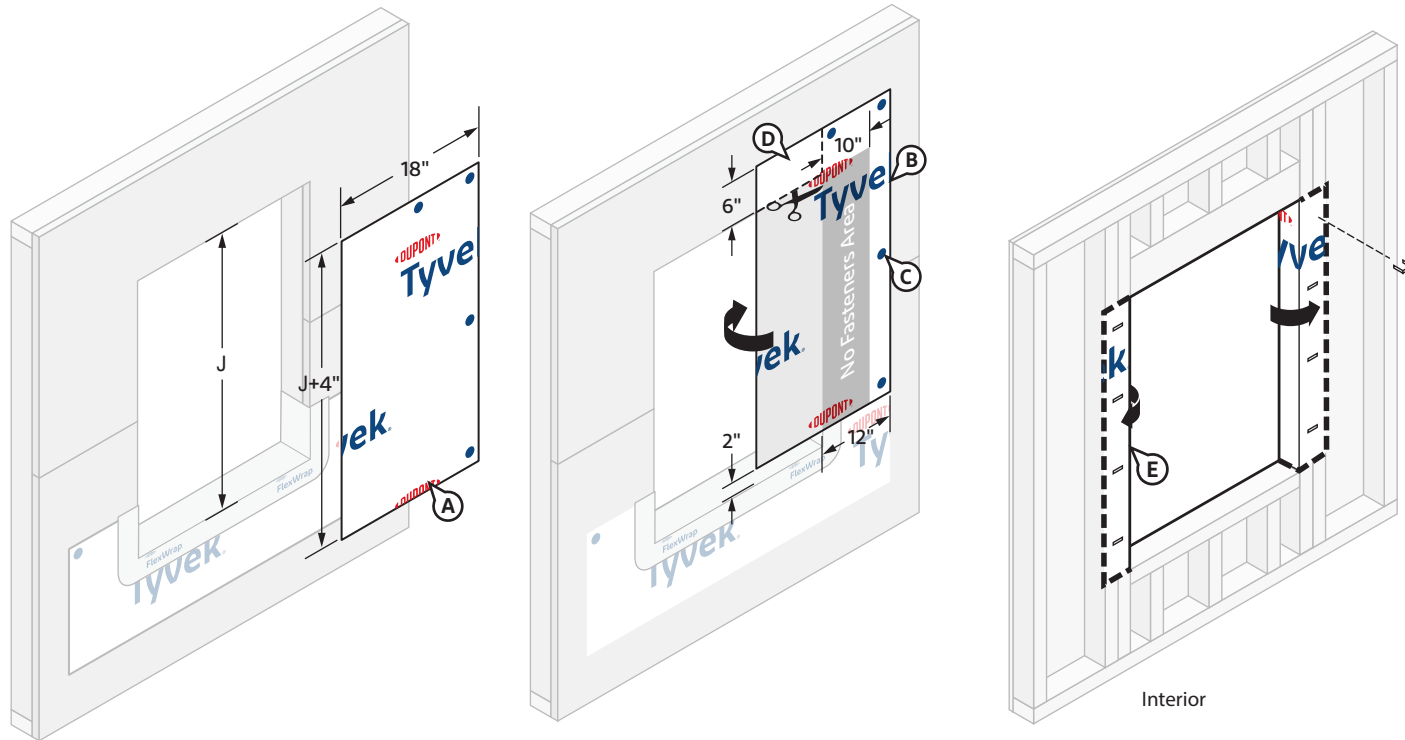
- Remove wide piece of release paper. Position **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** on horizontal sill by aligning the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2”– 3” of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6” up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening.
- Remove narrow release paper.

#### STEP 4

- Fan out **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill. Coverage of **FlexWrap™** should be 2”– 3” onto the face of the wall.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 4 - Rough Opening Treatment with Strips of Tyvek® WRB

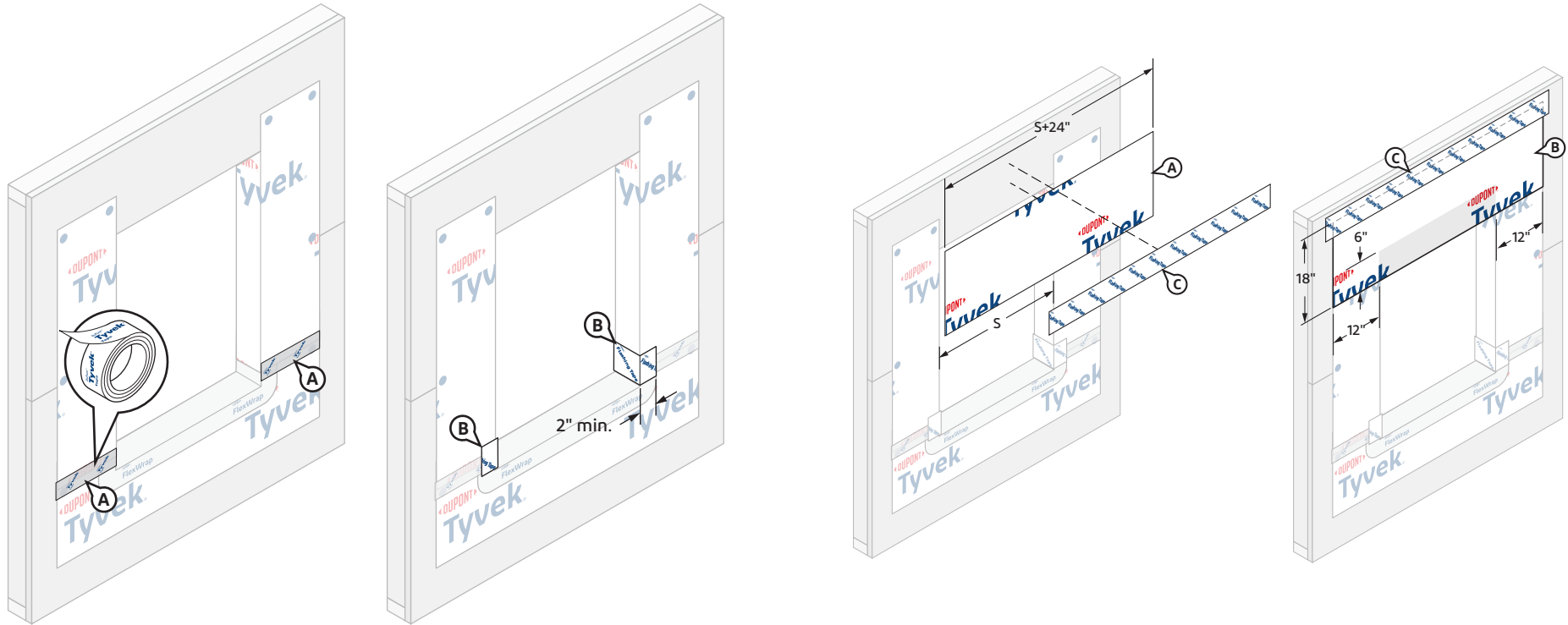


#### STEP 5

- A. Cut a piece of **Tyvek® WRB** that is 18" wide and 4" **LONGER** than jamb rough opening (J) to create jamb piece.
- B. Position piece to extend 12" **BEYOND** the jamb rough opening and 2" above sill rough opening to overlap the apron and **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** at sill. The cut piece of piece of **Tyvek® WRB** will extend 6" above rough opening.
- C. Secure to wall using **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners** or recommended fasteners. Fasteners should not be installed within 10" of the edge of the rough opening along jambs. Avoid placing **Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners** where **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** will be installed.
- D. Cut along the edge of head rough opening and fold resulting flap into the rough opening.
- E. Secure to inside wall and cut off excess flap if desired.
- F. **OPTIONAL:** Remove piece of **Tyvek® WRB** at head by making a vertical cut at corner of the rough opening.
- G. Repeat Steps A thru E for opposite jamb.

# Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

## Method 4 - Rough Opening Treatment with Strips of Tyvek® WRB



### STEP 6

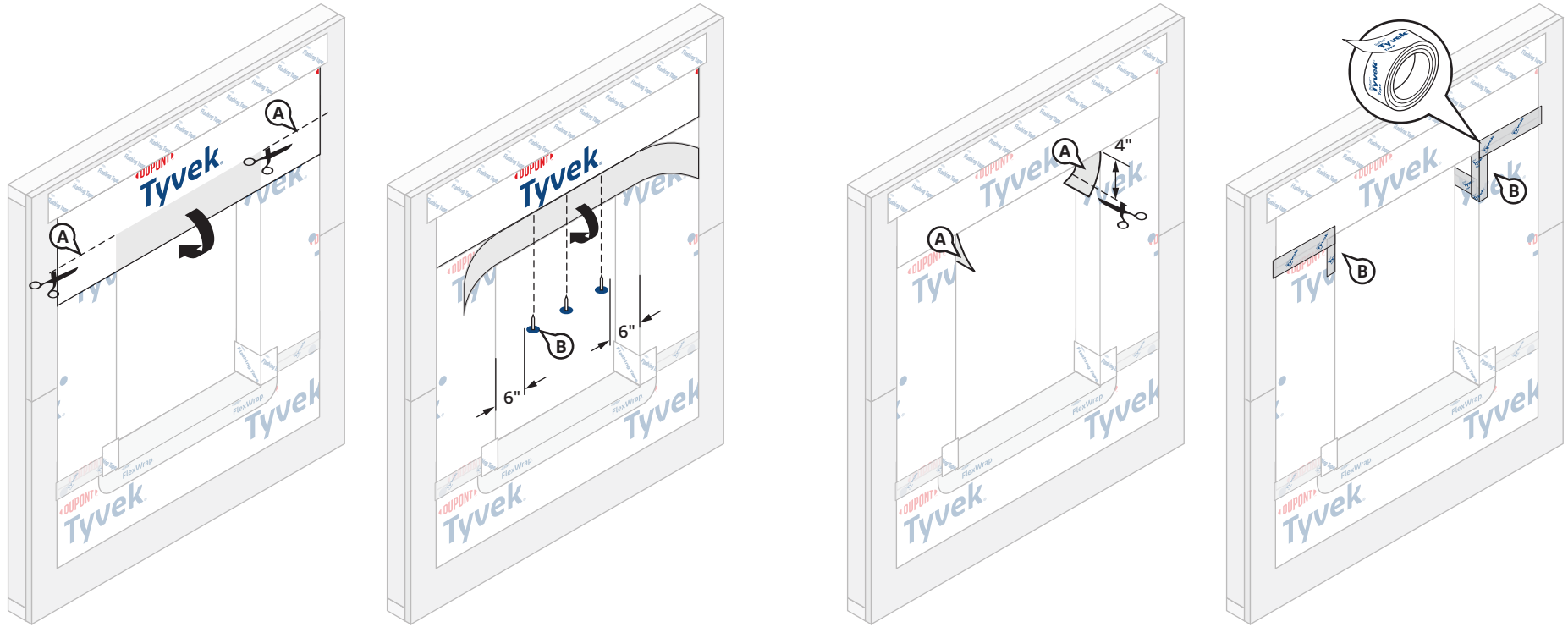
- A. Tape bottom edges of jamb liner seam along face of wall using **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.
- B. Install 4" wide **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** along bottom edge of jamb liner in rough opening, extending onto the face of the wall by 2".

### STEP 7

- A. Cut a piece of **Tyvek® WRB** that is 24" **LONGER** than the rough opening and 18" wide to create the head piece.
- B. Center over rough opening with the bottom edge extending below the rough opening head by 6".
- C. Secure to sheathing along top edge using **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™**.

# Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

## Method 4 - Rough Opening Treatment with Strips of Tyvek® WRB



### STEP 8

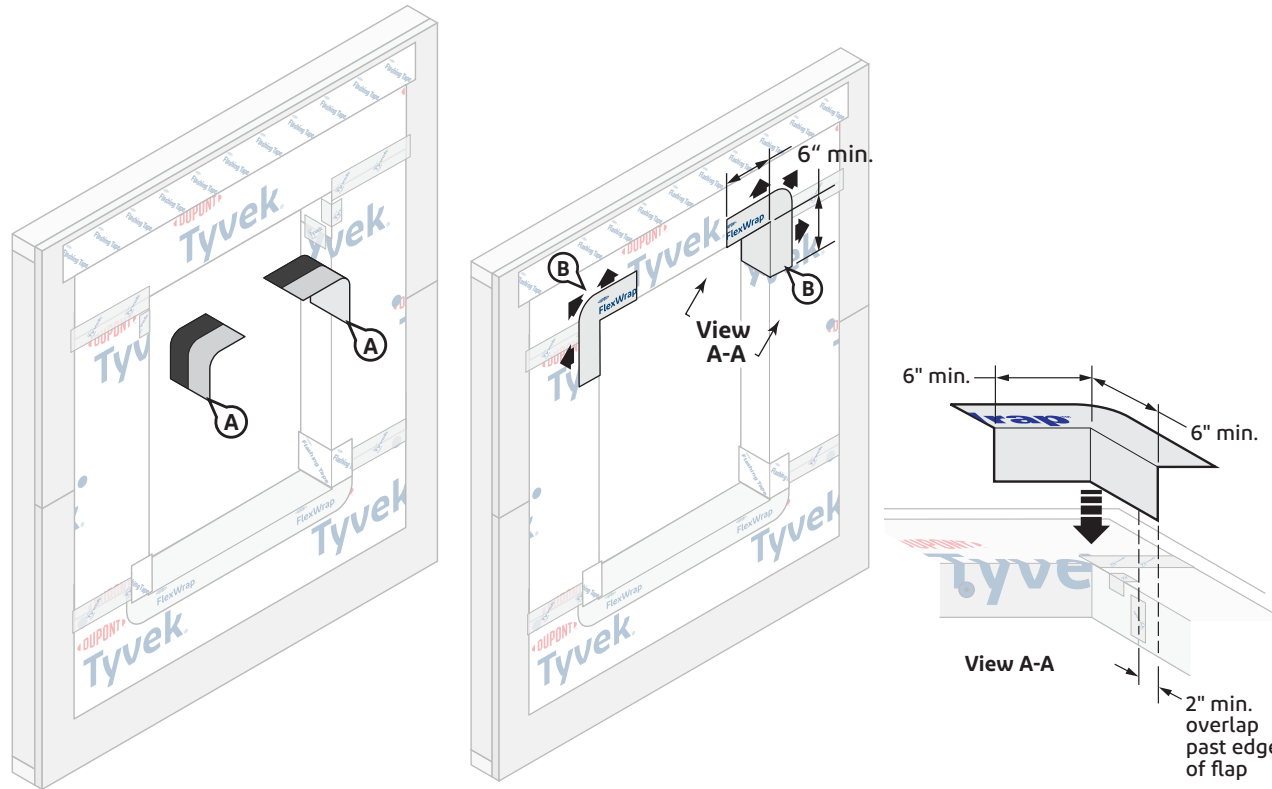
- A. Make horizontal cuts that allow resulting flaps to be folded into rough opening. Cuts should be made carefully to avoid damaging the jamb pieces underneath, and should extend from each corner of the rough opening to the outside edges of head piece.
- B. Secure flap to head framing with **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Caps** or recommended fastener system. Do not install fasteners within 6" of corners.

### STEP 9

- A. Trim resulting flaps at each jamb to a length of 4" and temporarily secure with **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to help facilitate installation of corner flashing in Step 10.
- B. Tape horizontal seams along face of wall using **Tyvek® Tape**.

# Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

## Method 4 - Rough Opening Treatment with Strips of Tyvek® WRB

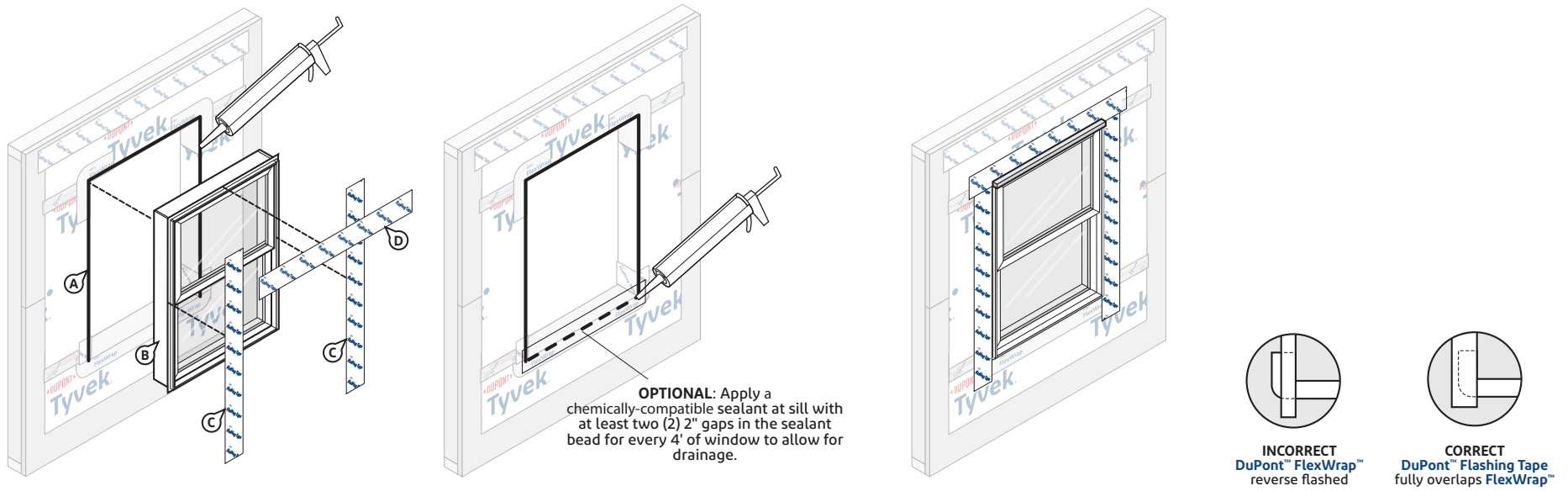


### STEP 10

- A. Cut two (2) 12" long pieces of **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** for top corners of rough opening. Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall. Remove wide pieces of release paper. Install the cut pieces of **FlexWrap™** into the rough opening at the top corners of the jamb and head so that the narrow release paper is aligned with the outer edges of the rough opening. Each piece should be folded tight into the corner and extend 6" onto the head and 6" down the jambs as shown. **NOTE:** Ensure a 2" min. overlap of **Tyvek® WRB** flap at jamb (see diagram below).
- B. Remove the remaining release paper and fan each **FlexWrap™** corner piece out onto the face of the wall.

# Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

## Method 4 - Rough Opening Treatment with Strips of Tyvek® WRB

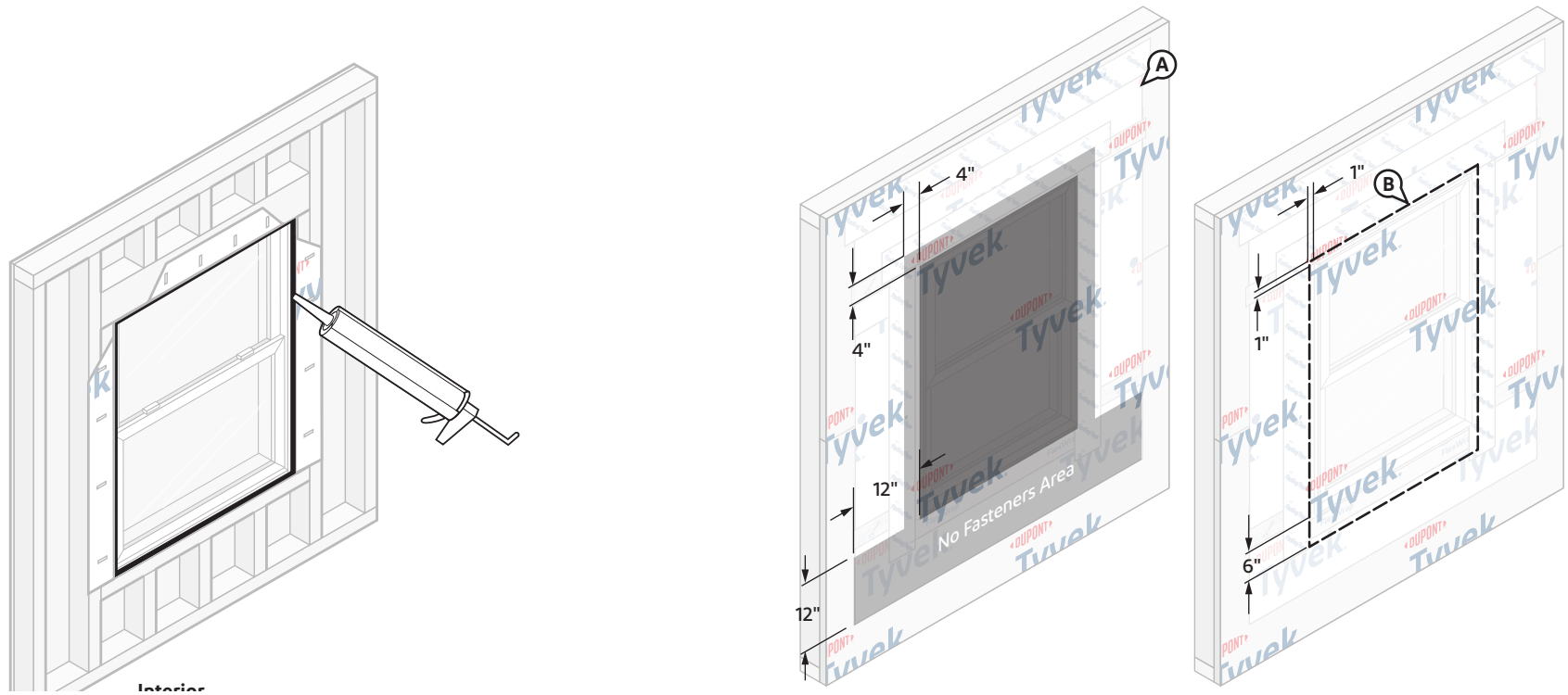


### STEP 11

- A. Apply a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) on three sides (jamb and head) as shown below.
- B. Install window according to manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Cut two (2) pieces of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** for jamb flashing extending 1" above window head flange and below bottom edge of sill flashing. Remove release paper and press tightly along sides of window frame. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the window installation before the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product** at the window head flange, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 1](#). **NOTE:** The vertical leg of the drip cap must not be taller than the window head flange when installing drip cap according to [Option 1](#).
- D. Cut a piece of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** for head flashing, which should extend **BEYOND** the outer edges of the jamb flashings. Remove release paper and install to completely cover flange while also adhering to the face of the wall. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the window installation, but after the window head flashing, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 2](#).

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 4 - Rough Opening Treatment with Strips of Tyvek® WRB



#### STEP 12

Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the window opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

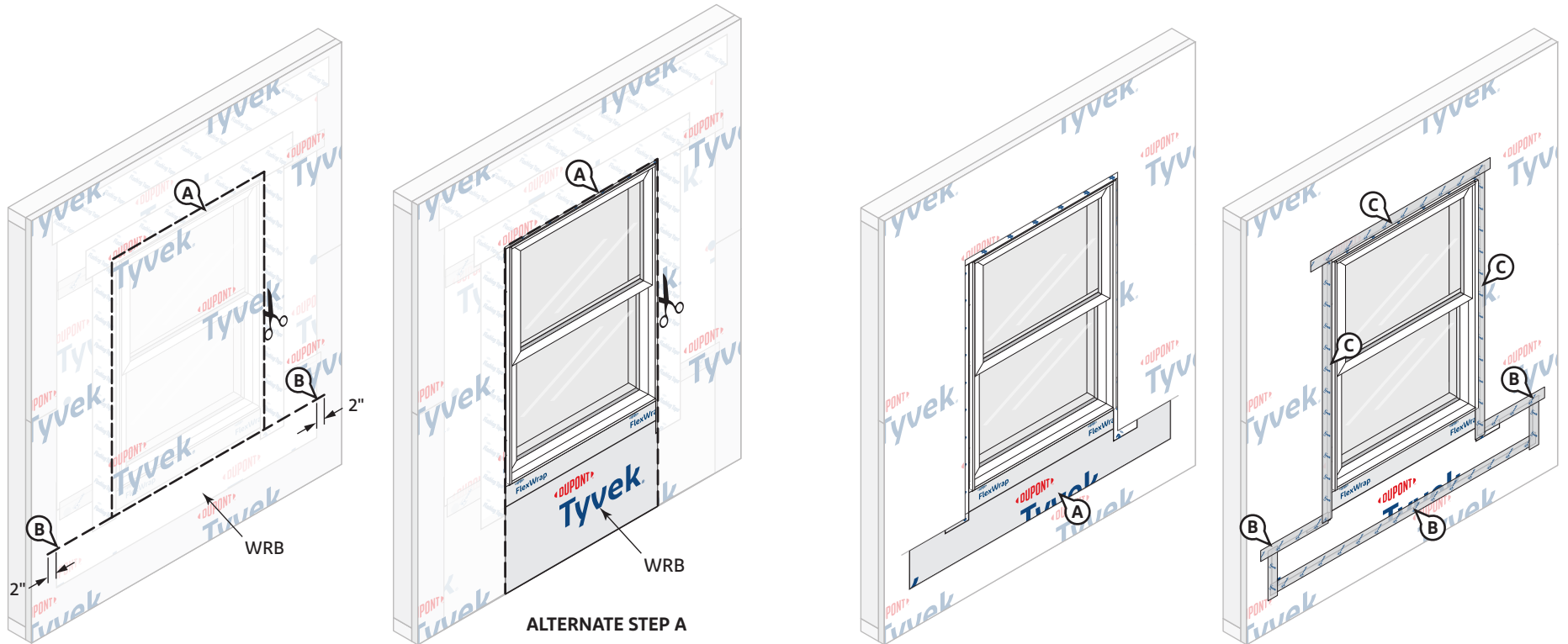
#### STEP 13

- Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the window frame at jambs and head and within 12" of the window frame at sill or location of apron.
- Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough opening a minimum of 1" from the jambs and head of the window frame, and 6" below the sill of the window frame.

# Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

## Integral Flanged Window – “Pre-Strip” Methods

### Method 4 - Rough Opening Treatment with Strips of Tyvek® WRB



#### STEP 14

Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or the piece of **Tyvek® WRB** underneath.

ALTERNATE STEP A: If piece of **Tyvek® WRB** extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap the piece of **Tyvek® WRB** underneath.

Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend a minimum of 2" **BEYOND** the piece of **Tyvek® WRB** underneath.

#### STEP 15

##### Final Step

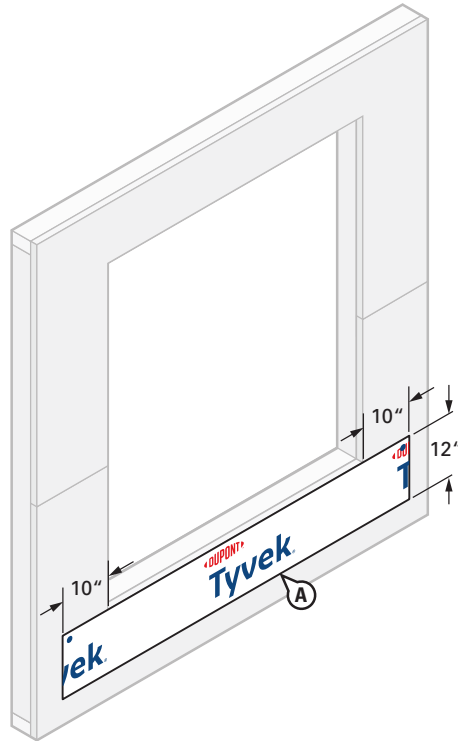
- Bring the bottom portion of the piece of **Tyvek® WRB** underneath through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of **Tyvek® WRB** piece below sill.
- Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jambs and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around window. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap **AFTER** the **Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 3](#).

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Integral Flanged Door

This installation guideline is intended for doors installed above grade and/or with wood floor construction.

This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ FlexWrap™ and DuPont™ StraightFlash™

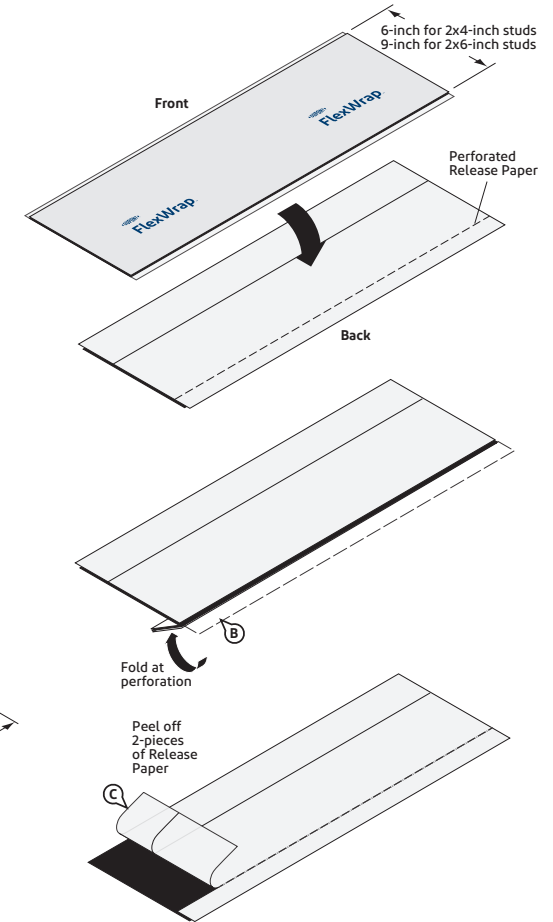


#### STEP 1

##### Prepare Tyvek® WRB Apron

**OPTIONAL:** Refer to the [Alternative Installation Considerations](#) section for guidance for using DuPont™ Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™ in lieu of a Tyvek® WRB apron if desired.

- Cut an apron made of Tyvek® WRB for attachment under sill of rough opening. Apron should extend at least 10" BEYOND the sides of rough opening jambs (or to first stud in open stud construction) and at least 12" below sill of rough opening, or extend far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the Tyvek® WRB below. The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall and the bottom of the apron should be left unsecured so it can overlap the Tyvek® WRB which will be installed after the door. Avoid placing DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners where DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products will be installed.

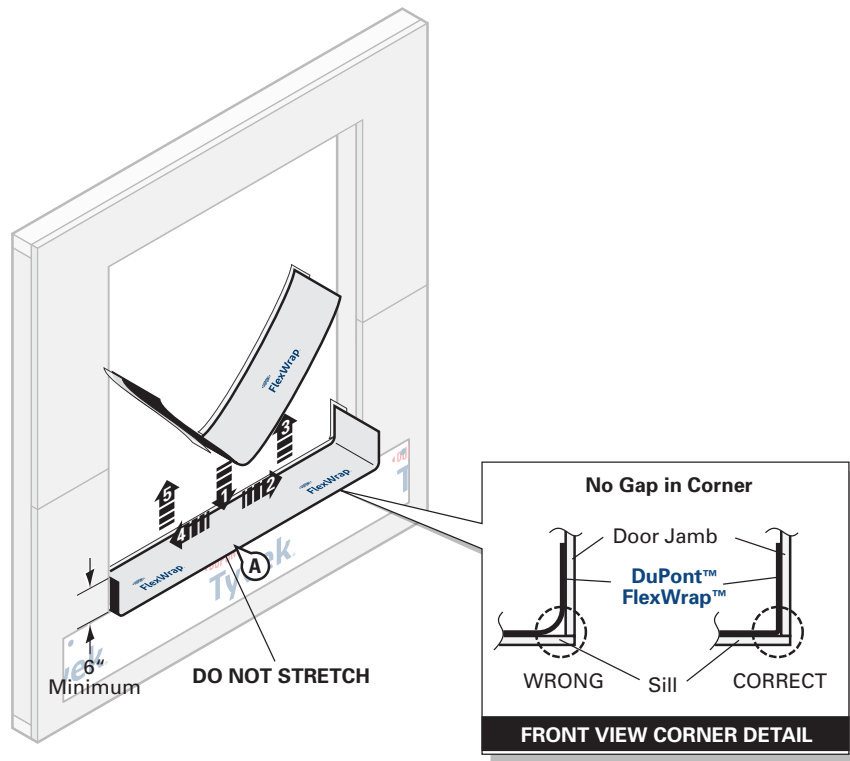


#### STEP 2

##### Preparation of Sill Flashing

- Cut a piece of 9" wide FlexWrap™ at least 12" LONGER than the width of the sill (S). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion BEYOND where the door frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- 9" FlexWrap™ has perforated release paper to help with the formation of a back dam. To ensure that the perforation tears cleanly, fold the perforation 180° and crease the flashing.
- Remove the two widest pieces of release paper leaving the narrowest release paper on the flashing. When the finished floor is applied, the remaining release paper can be removed and the back dam can be completed.

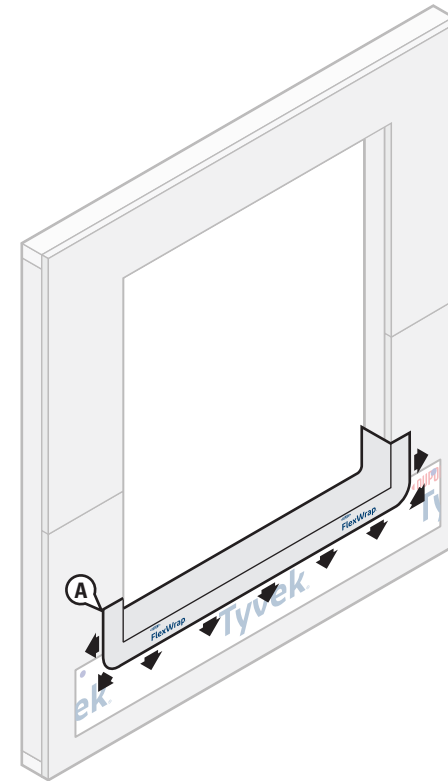
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Door



### STEP 3

A. Position the sill flashing as indicated so the section with the release paper still attached extends past the door threshold on the inside. Ensure that 2"– 3" of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6" up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening. When the narrow release paper is removed, the remaining section of **FlexWrap™** can be used to form a back dam.

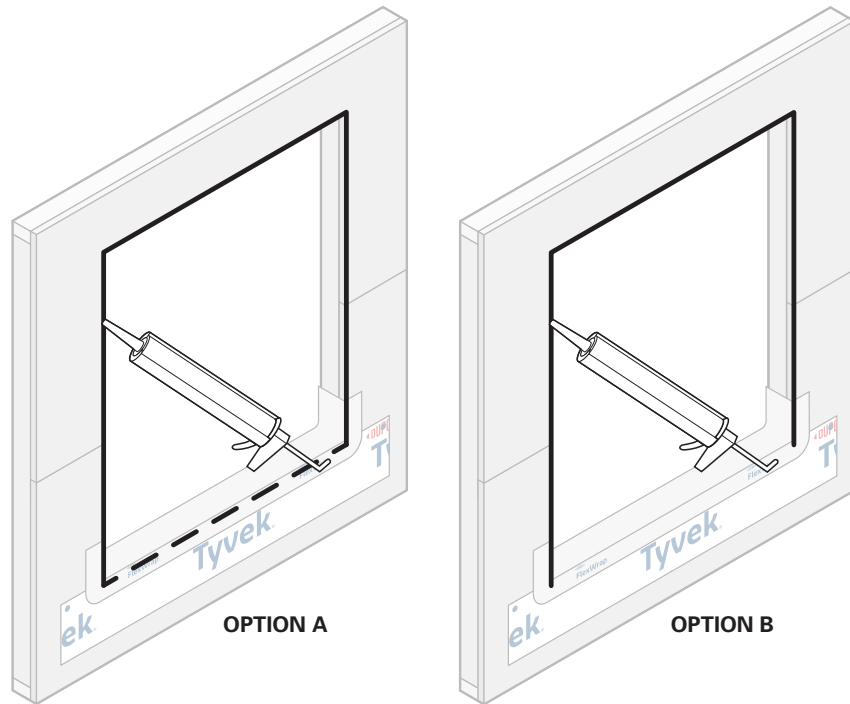
**OPTIONAL: Create back dam by folding back narrow section of FlexWrap™.** Some flooring cannot accommodate a back dam. In that case fold the back dam on top of **FlexWrap™** in the sill. The door will be installed on top of the fold to create a back dam (see Side View Detail above).



### STEP 4

A. Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill. Coverage of **FlexWrap™** should be 2"– 3" onto the face of the wall.

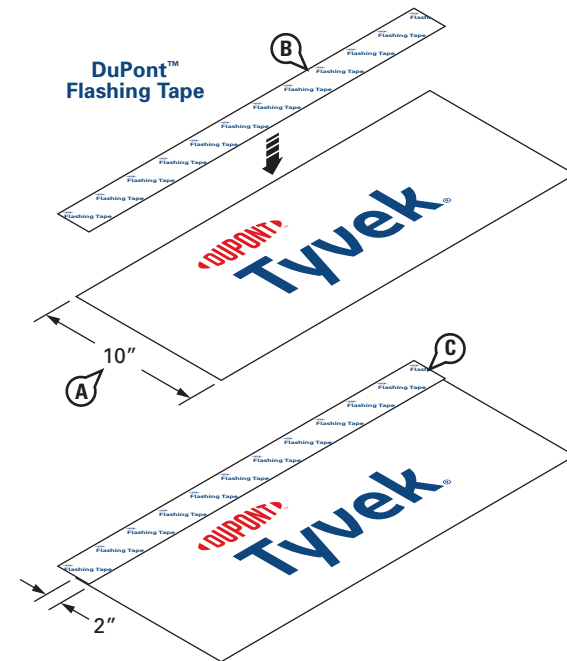
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Door



### STEP 5

**OPTION A:** Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) at window head and jambs to wall or back side of window mounting flange. **To allow for drainage, do not apply continuous sealant bead along sill.** Ensure a minimum 2" wide drainage gap in the sealant bead within 4" from **each corner** of the jamb-sill interface. Continue applying sealant along the sill with additional 2" wide (min.) drainage gaps for every 6"–12" (on center) of sill width.

**OPTION B:** Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) at window head and jambs to wall or back side of window mounting flange. **To allow for drainage, do not apply sealant bead along sill.**

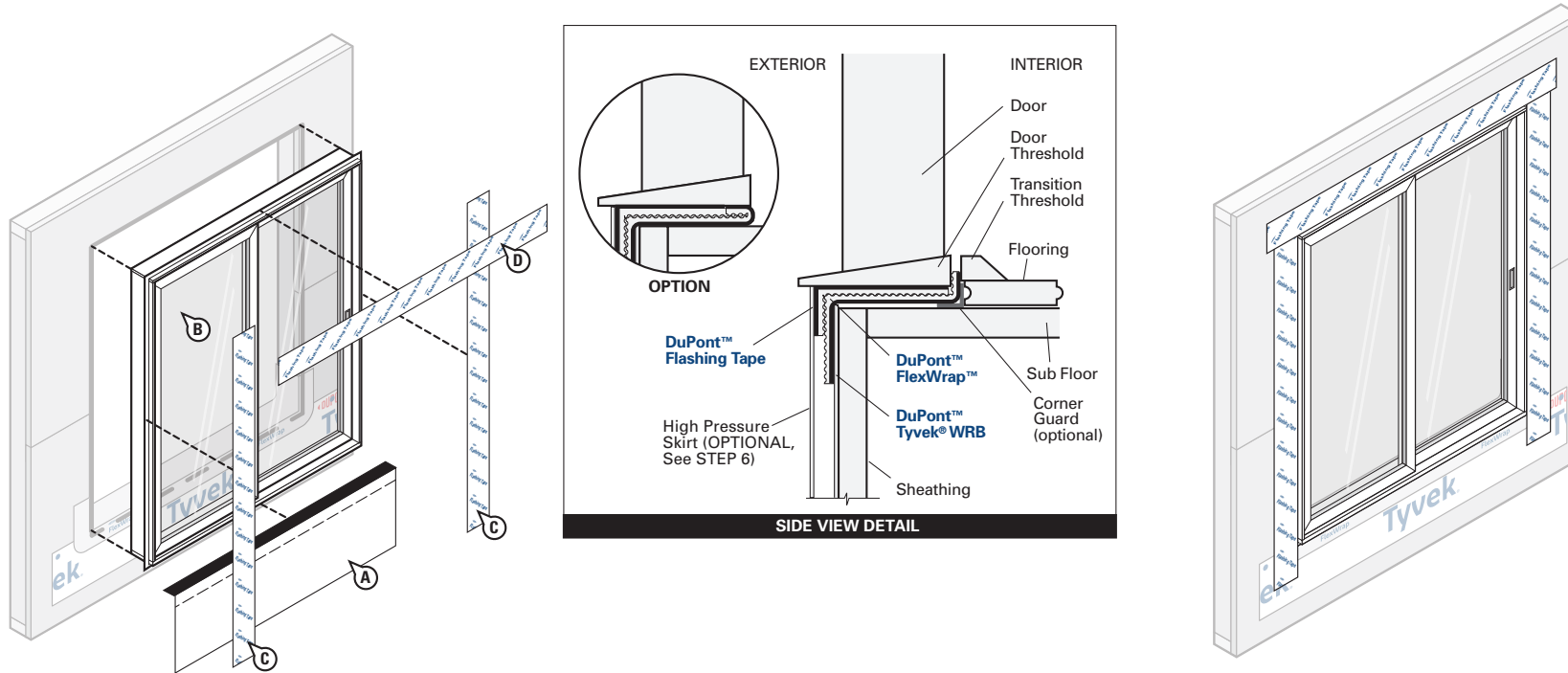


### STEP 6 (OPTIONAL - HIGH PRESSURE SKIRT)

For extreme weather conditions, installation of a high-pressure skirt is recommended to help prevent water intrusion at the sill or threshold.

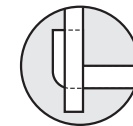
- Create the high pressure skirt by cutting a piece of **Tyvek® WRB** 1" **WIDER** than the width of door opening and approximately 10" in depth.
- Cut a piece of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** to the same width as the skirt.
- Remove release paper and adhere 2" of the exposed butyl to the **Tyvek® WRB**. The skirt may be made with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, or **StraightFlash™**, or **DuPont™ VersaFlange™**.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Door

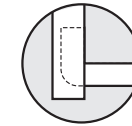


### STEP 7

- A. **OPTIONAL:** Adhere high pressure skirt to bottom of threshold of the door.
- B. Install door according to manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Cut two pieces of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** for jamb flashing extending 1" above door head flange and below bottom edge of high pressure skirt. Remove release paper and press tightly along sides of door frame. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the door installation before the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing** membrane at the door head flange, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 1](#). **NOTE:** The vertical leg of the drip cap must not be taller than the door head flange when installing drip cap according to [Option 1](#).
- D. Cut a piece of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** for head flashing long enough to extend **BEYOND** the outer edges of jamb flashings. Remove release paper and install completely covering mounting flange and adhering to exposed sheathing or framing members. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the door installation, but after the door head flashing, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 2](#).



**INCORRECT**  
DuPont™ FlexWrap™  
reverse flashed

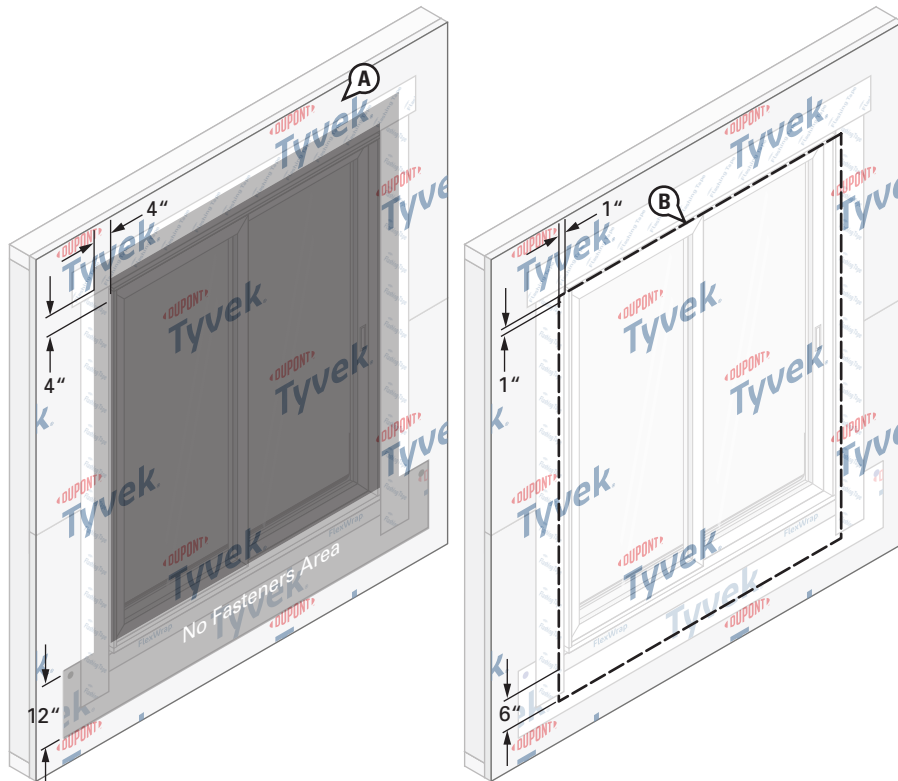


**CORRECT**  
DuPont™ Flashing Tape  
fully overlaps FlexWrap™

### NOTES:

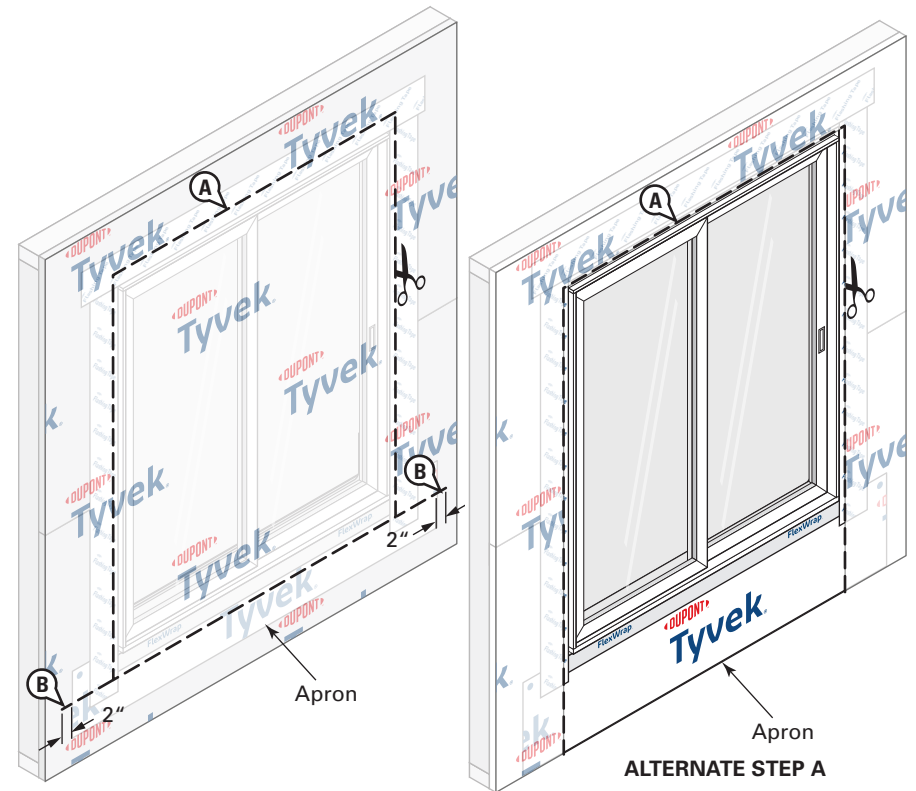
- Ensure proper shingling. **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** at jambs must overlap the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** at the sill and adhere to the **Tyvek® WRB** apron below the sill.
- A [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) is required when applying **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** to wood-based sheathing during adverse weather conditions and over concrete, masonry or gypsum sheathing.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Door



### STEP 8

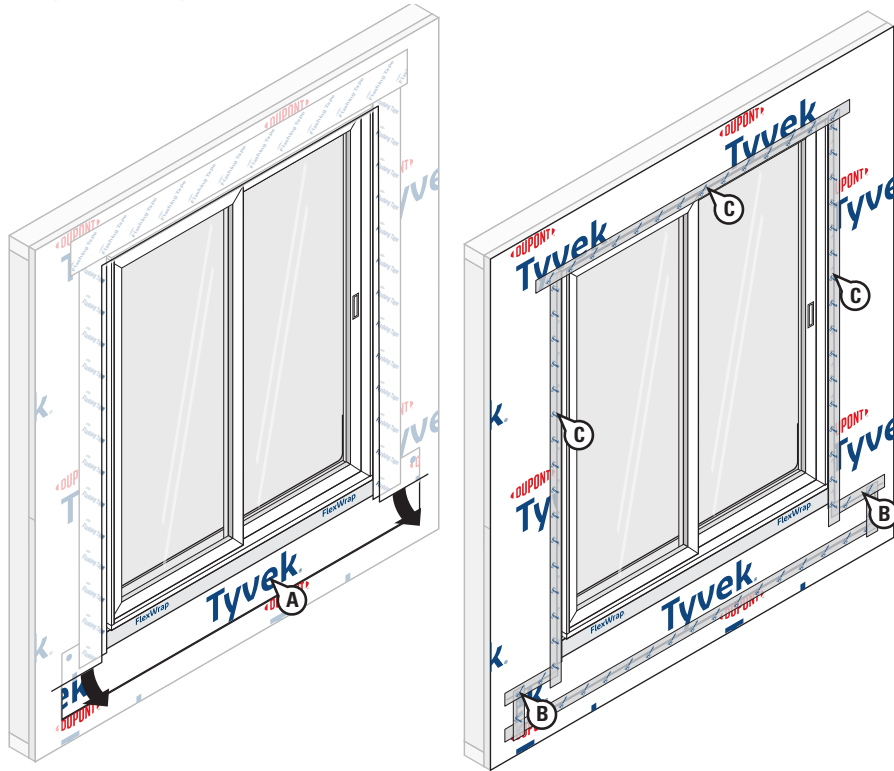
- A. Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the door frame at jambs and head and within 12" of the door frame at sill or location of apron.
- B. Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough opening a minimum of 1" from the jambs and head of the door frame, and 6" below the sill of the door frame.



### STEP 9

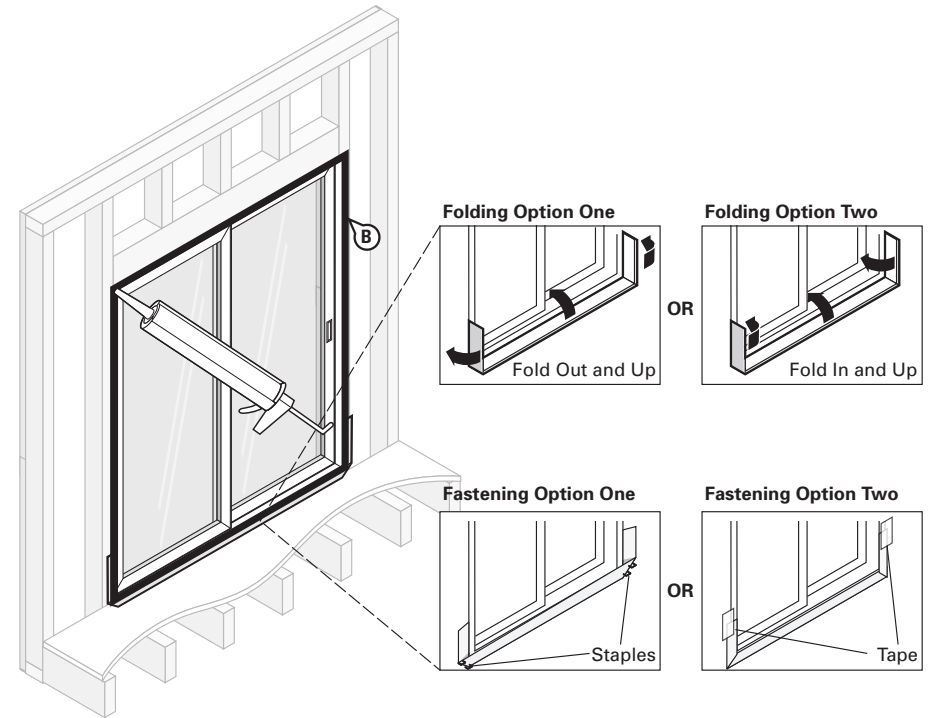
- A. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose door. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.  
**ALTERNATE STEP A:** If apron extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap apron.
- B. Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend 1"– 2" **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Integral Flanged Door



### STEP 10

- Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
- Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jambs and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around door. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used.



### STEP 11

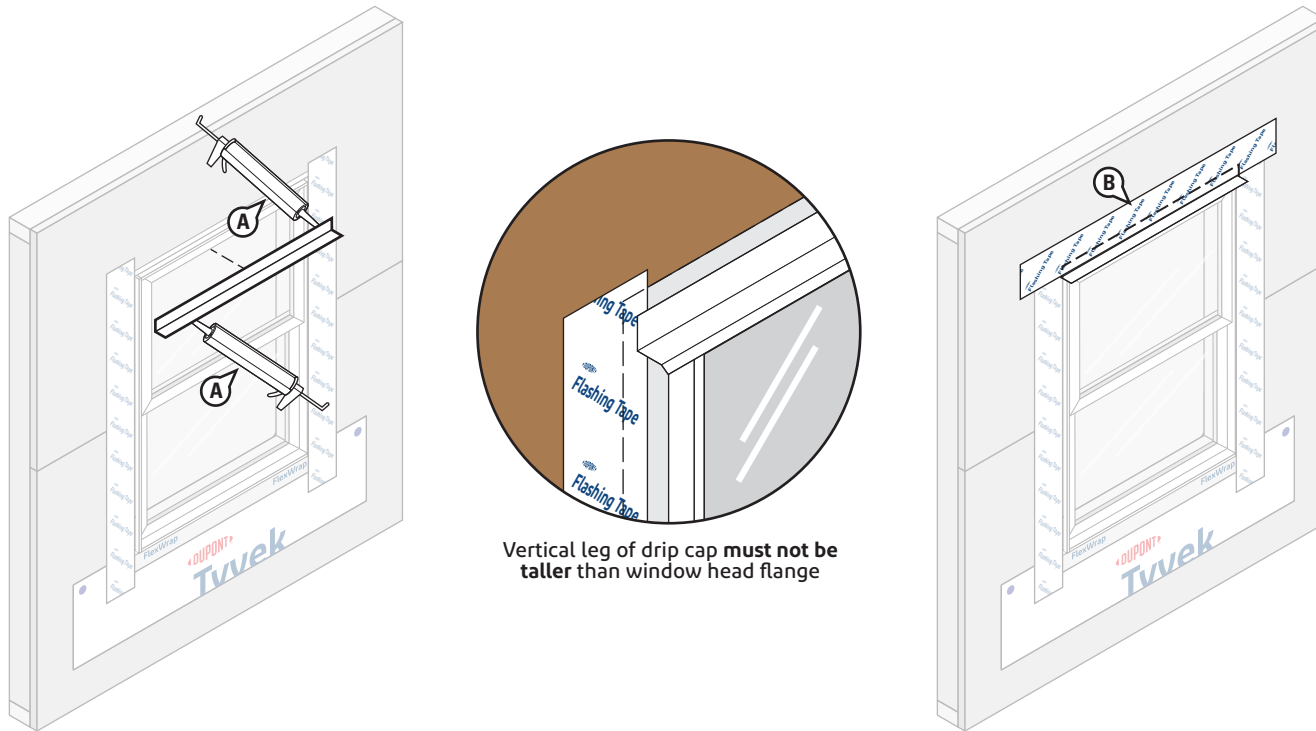
#### Final Step

- When the interior flooring is ready to install, remove release paper and use Folding Option One or Two (shown above) to form back dam.
- Apply a continuous bead of a *chemically-compatible sealant* (and backer rod as necessary) around the door opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Drip Cap Installation for Windows and Doors

**Option 1**  
This option applies to integral flanged windows and doors only. A drip cap with a short vertical leg can be installed at the window head flange so it is integrated with the DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing membrane installed at the head of the window BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB is installed and sealed. **NOTE:** When using this method, the vertical leg of the drip cap **must not be taller** than the window head flange when installed.



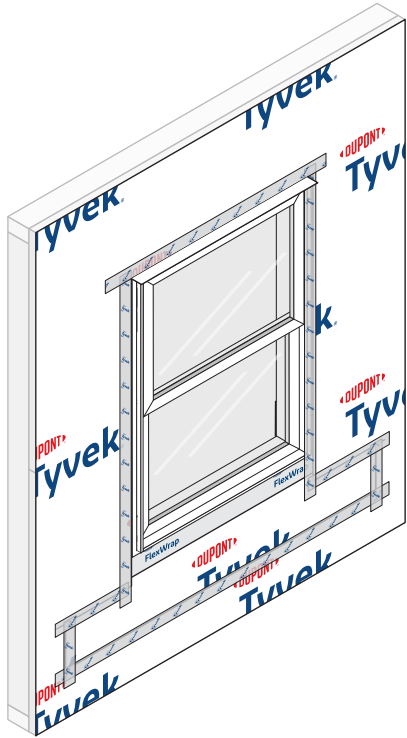
#### STEP 1

A. After the window is installed and jamb flashing applied, cut a piece of metal or vinyl drip cap slightly **LONGER** than the width of the window. Place a bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) on the rear side of the vertical leg **AND** a bead on the rear side of the bottom horizontal leg. Install the drip cap tight against the window head flange.

B. Cover the head flange and top edge of the drip cap with a piece of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**. The **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** should be long enough to extend **BEYOND** the jamb flashing and adhere a minimum of 2" onto the wall.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed **BEFORE** the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Drip Cap Installation for Windows and Doors

Option 1 (continued)



---

### STEP 2

Install the **DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB** according to the [Integral Flanged Window BEFORE DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB](#) section, Steps 6-8.

**NOTE:** The horizontal perimeter cut in the **Tyvek® WRB** at top of window will need to extend slightly **BEYOND** the window frame at jambs to accommodate the drip cap and be sealed onto the vertical leg with **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.

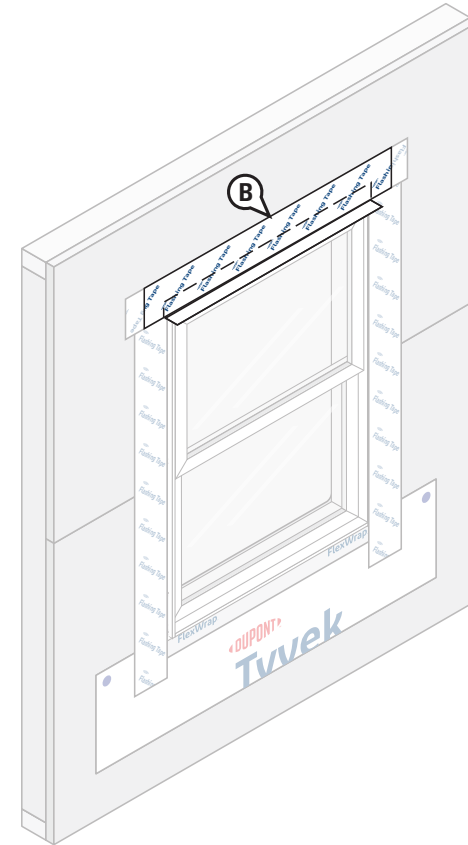
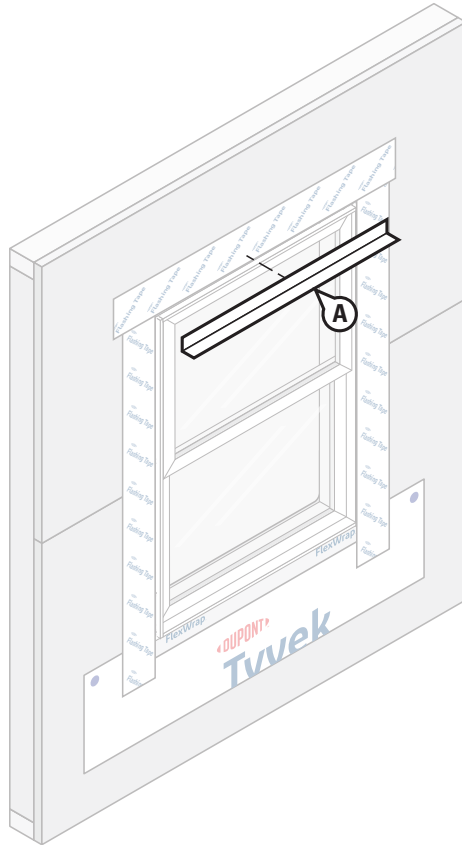
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Drip Cap Installation for Windows and Doors

#### Option 2

This option may be used for integral flanged, brick mold, field-applied flanged, and non-flanged windows and doors.

A drip cap can be installed over the head flashing above the window head BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB is installed and sealed.



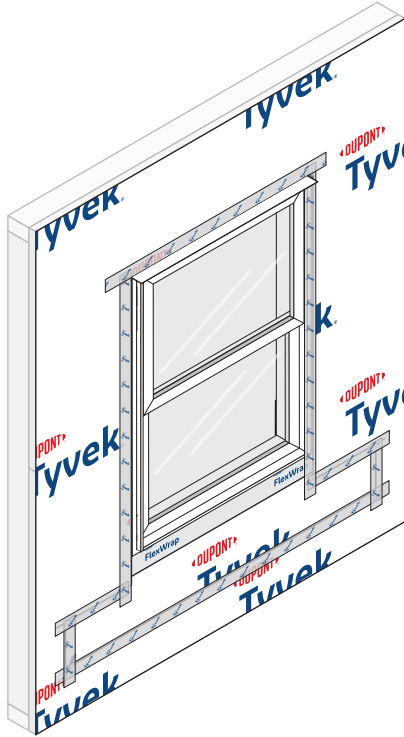
#### STEP 1

A. After the DuPont™ Flashing Tape or DuPont™ StraightFlash™ is installed over window head flange, cut metal or vinyl drip cap slightly **LONGER** than the width of the window.

B. Install the drip cap tight against the window head flashing and cover the top edge with DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape, DuPont™ Flashing Tape, or StraightFlash™ extending past the top and sides of the drip cap.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed **BEFORE** the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Drip Cap Installation for Windows and Doors

### Option 2 (continued)



---

### STEP 2

Install the **DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB** according to the [Integral Flanged Window BEFORE DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB](#) section, Steps 6-8.

**NOTE:** The horizontal perimeter cut in the **Tyvek® WRB** at top of window will need to extend slightly **BEYOND** the window frame at jambs to accommodate the drip cap and be sealed onto the vertical leg with **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.

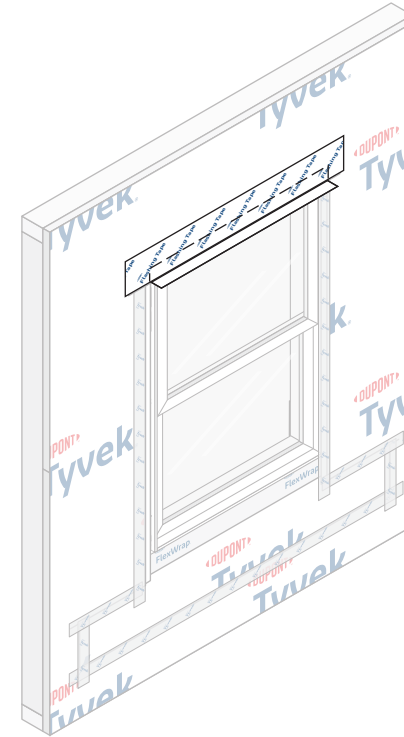
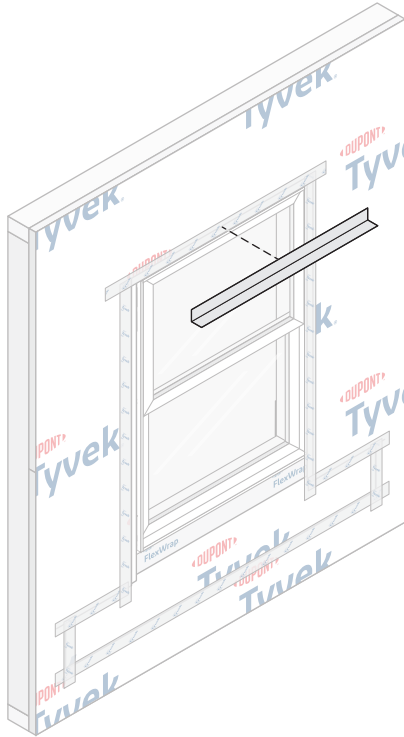
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Drip Cap Installation for Windows and Doors

#### Option 3

This option may be used for integral flanged, brick mold, field-applied flanged, and non-flanged windows and doors.

A drip cap can be installed over the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB above the window head AFTER the Tyvek® WRB is installed and sealed.



#### STEP 1

A. After Tyvek® WRB is installed and sealed, cut metal or vinyl drip cap slightly **LONGER** than the width of the window and install.

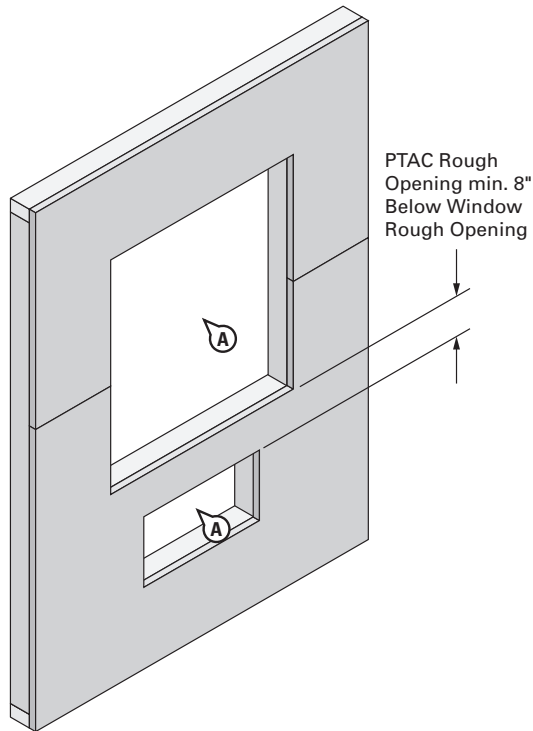
B. As a recommended best practice, cover the top edge of the drip cap with **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape, DuPont™ Flashing Tape, or DuPont™ StraightFlash™** extending past the top and sides of the drip cap and side edges of the window head flashing.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

This method can be used to flash Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit sleeves.

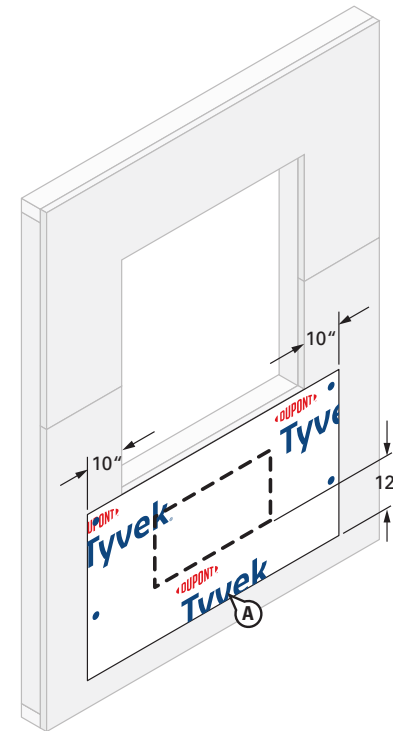
This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, and DuPont™ FlexWrap™

### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8” below Window Rough Opening



#### STEP 1

- A. Cut rough opening in sheathing for window and PTAC. Ensure that sheathing is cut flush with, or slightly below the sill framing to allow for positive drainage.



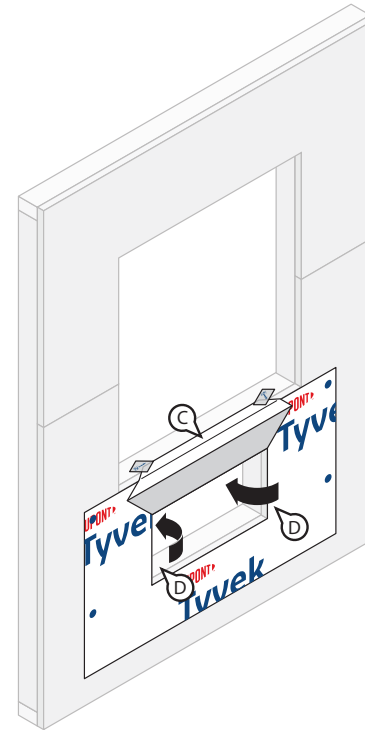
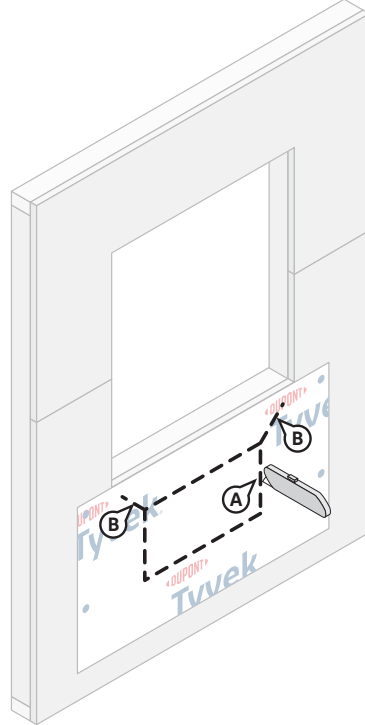
#### STEP 2

##### Prepare Tyvek® WRB Apron

- A. Cut a large apron made of Tyvek® WRB for attachment under sill of the window rough opening. Apron should extend at least 10" **BEYOND** the sides of window rough opening jambs (or to first stud in open stud construction) and at least 12" below sill of the PTAC rough opening, or extend far enough below the PTAC rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the Tyvek® WRB below. The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall and the bottom of the apron should be left unsecured so it can overlap the Tyvek® WRB which will be installed after the window. Avoid placing DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners, or recommended fasteners, where DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products will be installed.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8” below Window Rough Opening



## STEP 3

### Prepare the Tyvek® WRB Apron for Window and PTAC Installation

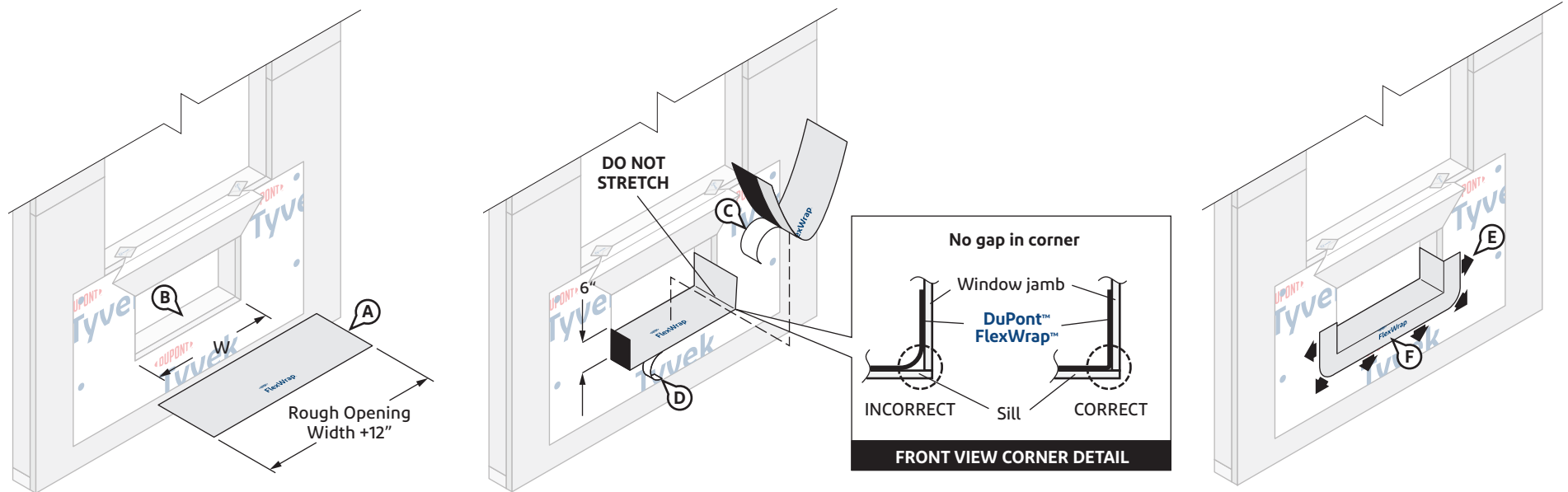
- A. Cut an opening in the Tyvek® WRB using a flush cut (“O-Cut”) along the perimeter of the rough opening for the PTAC Unit. Cuts should be made along the dashed indicated lines. (Ensure that the Tyvek® WRB is cut flush with the sheathing and is not wrapped into the rough opening.)
- B. Cut two 45 degree slits up and away from the PTAC rough opening, extending from the corner of the head to expose 8” of sheathing to allow for flashing the head of the PTAC Unit.

- C. Flip head flap up and temporarily secure with DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape.

**ALTERNATE METHOD TO SECURE HEAD FLAPS:** In lieu of temporarily taping, the head flap can be tucked under the Tyvek® WRB.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8” below Window Rough Opening

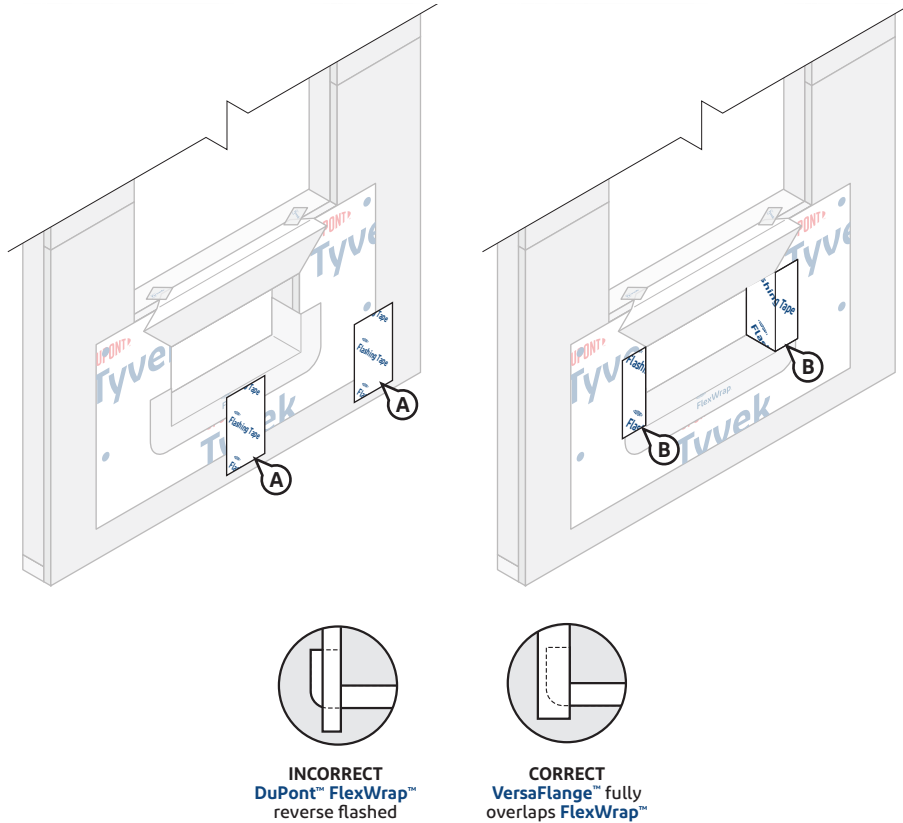


#### STEP 4

- Cut **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** at least 12” **LONGER** than width of rough opening (W). Use 6” **FlexWrap™** for 2” x 4” framing and 9” **FlexWrap™** for 2” x 6” framing. Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1” adhesion **BEYOND** where the door frame will be located, ensuring 2”– 3” adhesion onto the face of the wall
- Inspect installation surface to ensure surface is free of dirt or substances that could interfere with adhesion as well as any sharp protrusions.
- Remove wide piece of release paper. Position on horizontal sill by aligning the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2”– 3” of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6” up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening.
- Remove narrow release paper.
- Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill.
- Firmly press sill flashing to ensure full adhesion on all surfaces. Eliminate wrinkles and bubbles by smoothing surface and repositioning as necessary.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8” below Window Rough Opening

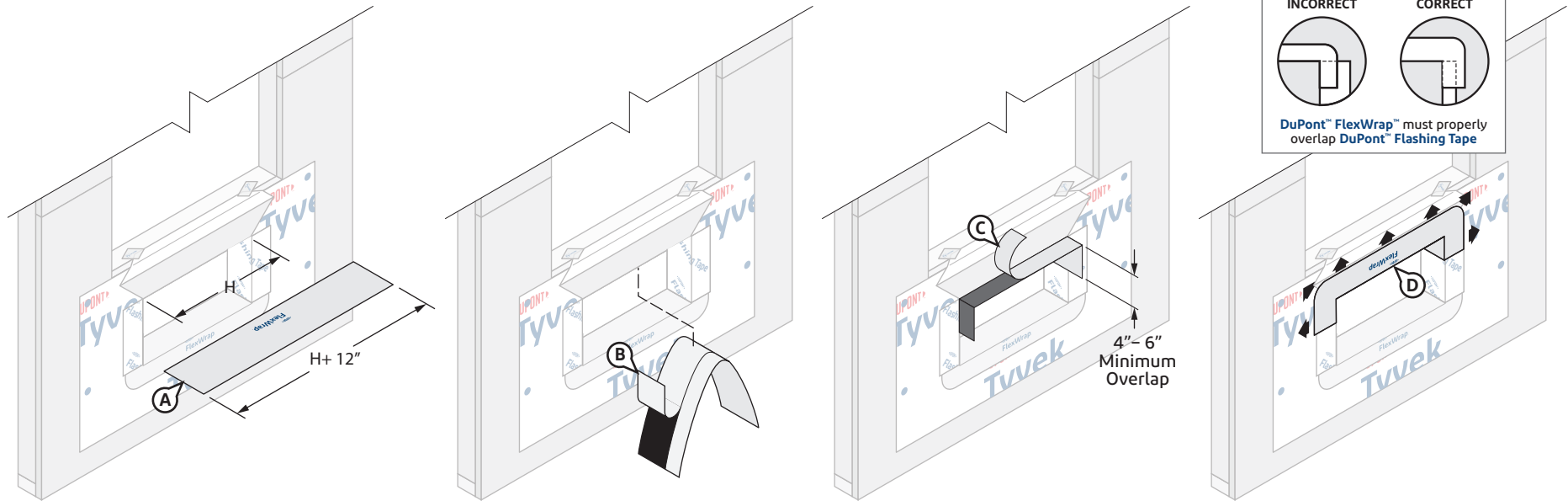


## STEP 5

- A. Cut two pieces of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** the height of the rough opening for the PTAC Unit. PTAC Unit Jamb flashing should be long enough to overlap the sill flashing by at least 2” and be overlapped by future head flashing by at least 2”. Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1” adhesion **BEYOND** where the window will be located, ensuring minimum 2”– 3” adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- B. Wrap the **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** into the rough opening at each jamb and onto wall face. The flashing should fully overlap the **FlexWrap™** on the wall and extend at least 1” **BEYOND** where the back of the PTAC sleeve will be located.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8” below Window Rough Opening



## STEP 6

### Install DuPont™ FlexWrap™ at the Head of PTAC Unit

- Cut **FlexWrap™** at least 8”– 12” **LONGER** than the width of rough opening head (H). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1” adhesion **BEYOND** where the back of the PTAC unit sleeve will be located, ensuring 2”– 3” adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- Fold the **FlexWrap™** in half lengthwise to create a slight crease at the center. Remove the wide piece of release paper on one side of the fold. Align the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2”– 3” of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall. Starting at the crease, adhere the **FlexWrap™** at the center of the horizontal portion of the head framing to ensure a minimum of 6” down each jamb. Adhere into rough opening at one corner and down the jamb. Remove the remaining release paper and repeat at opposite corner.

C. Remove narrow release paper.

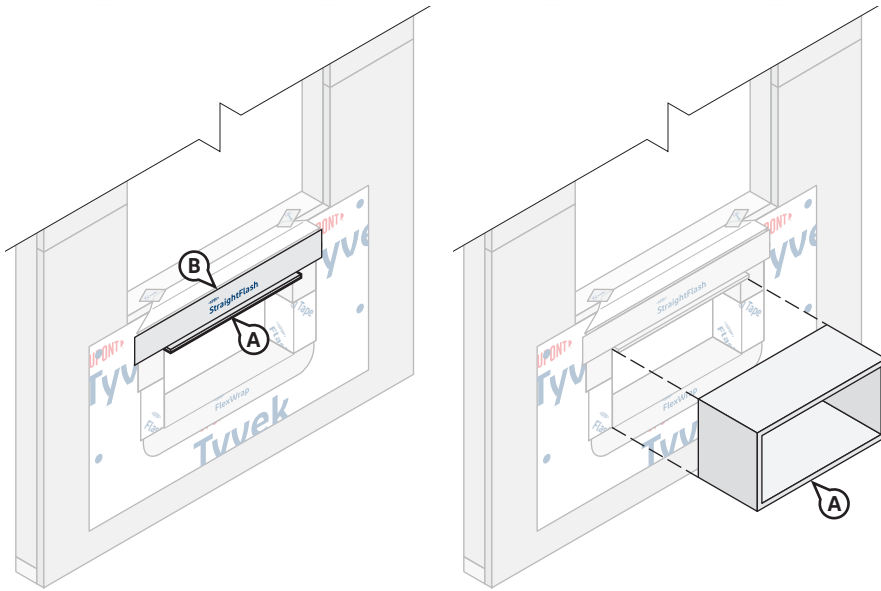
D. Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along the head.

**NOTE:** For exterior gypsum sheathing, apply a [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) to the exposed sheathing. An adhesive/primer is not required for wood-based sheathing, except when applying flashing during adverse weather conditions.

**NOTE:** DuPont™ Tyvek® Commercial Certified Installers may install a 3-piece head (and sill) detail for PTAC unit and window openings less than 6 ft. wide. Installers who **are not** DuPont™ Tyvek® Commercial Certified Installers should refer to the [Special Considerations](#) section for more information regarding the 3-piece head/sill detail. Contact your local DuPont Building Envelope Specialist for more information about the Certified Installer program.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

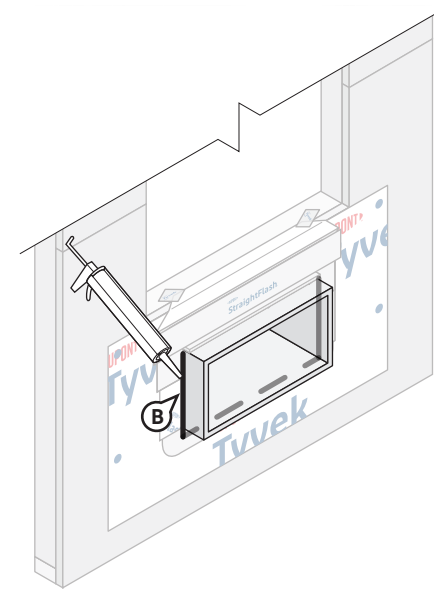
### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8” below Window Rough Opening



#### STEP 7

##### Install PTAC Unit

- A. Install PTAC Unit sleeve per manufacturer’s installation instructions.
- B. Apply an exterior perimeter seal using backer rod and a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) along the jambs and head of the PTAC opening.

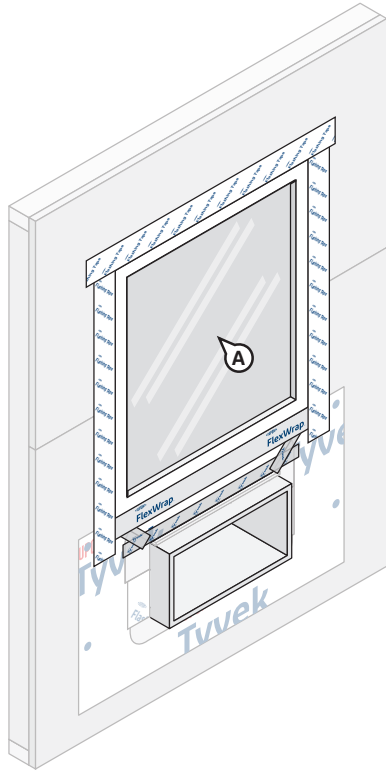


#### STEP 8 – OPTIONAL

- A. As a best practice for high exposure areas, install metal drip cap above the head joint when specified.
- B. Apply a strip of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** over the drip cap.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

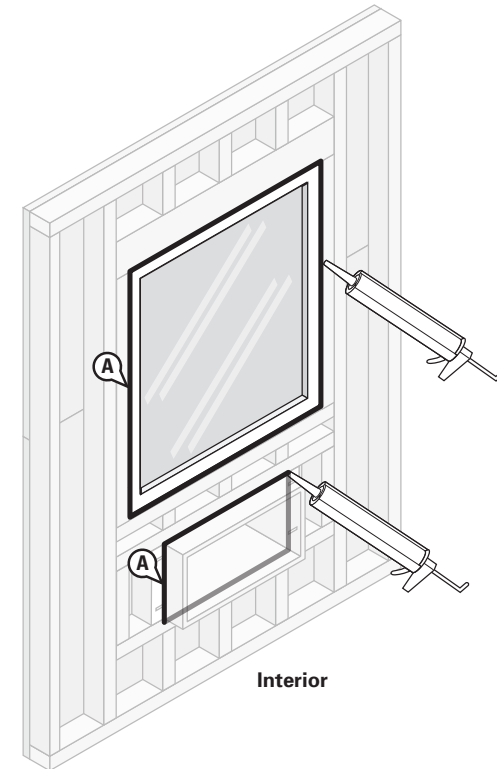
### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8” below Window Rough Opening



#### STEP 9

A. Prepare window rough opening, install window according to manufacturer’s instructions, and flash per the [Integral Flanged Window](#) details section in this guide.

**NOTE:** An integral flanged window is shown. If a non-flanged window is installed above the PTAC unit, follow the applicable section within this guide.

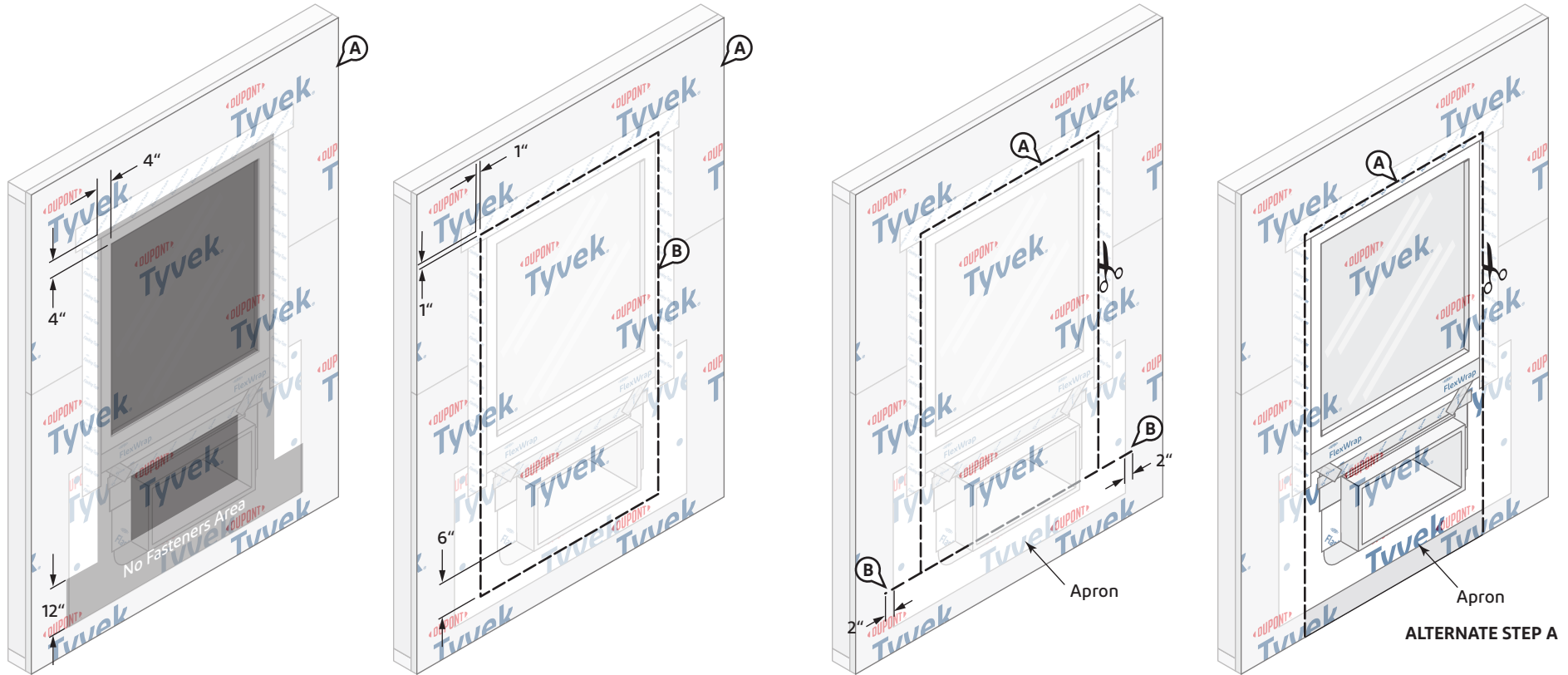


#### STEP 10

A. After window and PTAC unit are installed, apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around both the window and PTAC openings at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2”, apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8” below Window Rough Opening



#### STEP 11

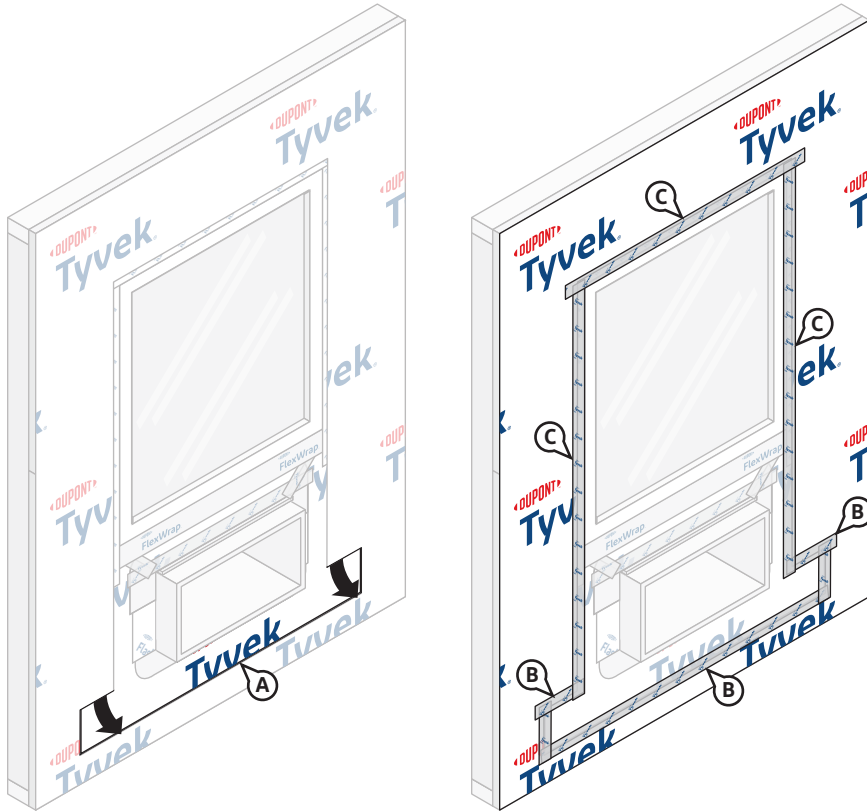
- Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4” of the window frame at jambs and head and within 12” of the PTAC frame at sill or location of apron.
- Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the window rough opening a 1”– 2” from the jambs and head of the window frame. The vertical lines marked at the jambs of the window should continue to 6” below the sill of the PTAC frame as shown above.

#### STEP 12

- Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window and PTAC. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.
- ALTERNATE STEP A:** If apron extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jamb and head only to overlap apron.
- Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend a 1”– 2” **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8” below Window Rough Opening



## STEP 13

### Final Step

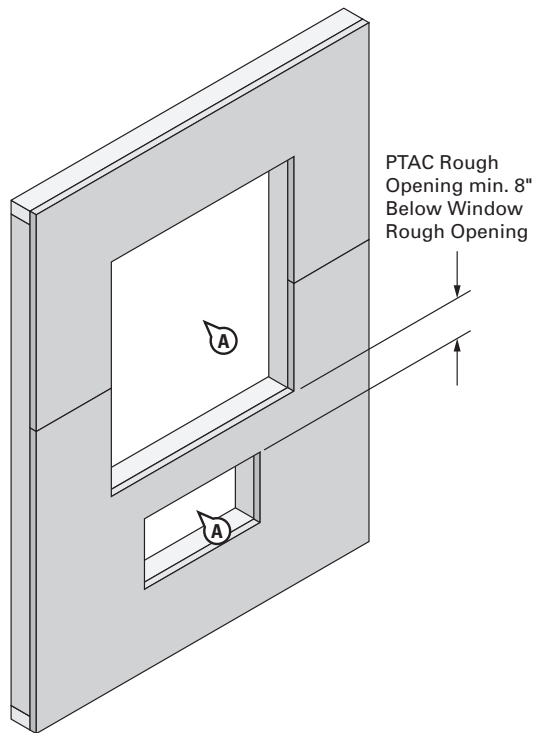
- A. Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the bottom of the perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- B. Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
- C. Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jambs and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around window and PTAC. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

This method can be used to flash Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit sleeves.

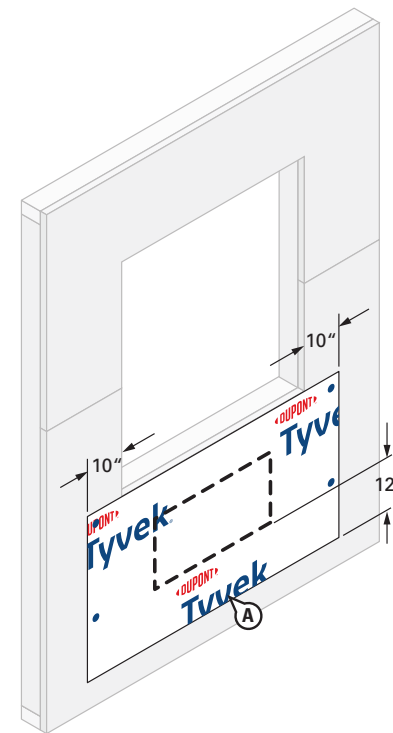
This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, and DuPont™ FlexWrap™

### Option 2 – PTAC Rough Opening Less than 8” below Window Rough Opening



#### STEP 1

- A. Cut rough opening in sheathing for window and PTAC. Ensure that sheathing is cut flush with, or slightly below the sill framing to allow for positive drainage.



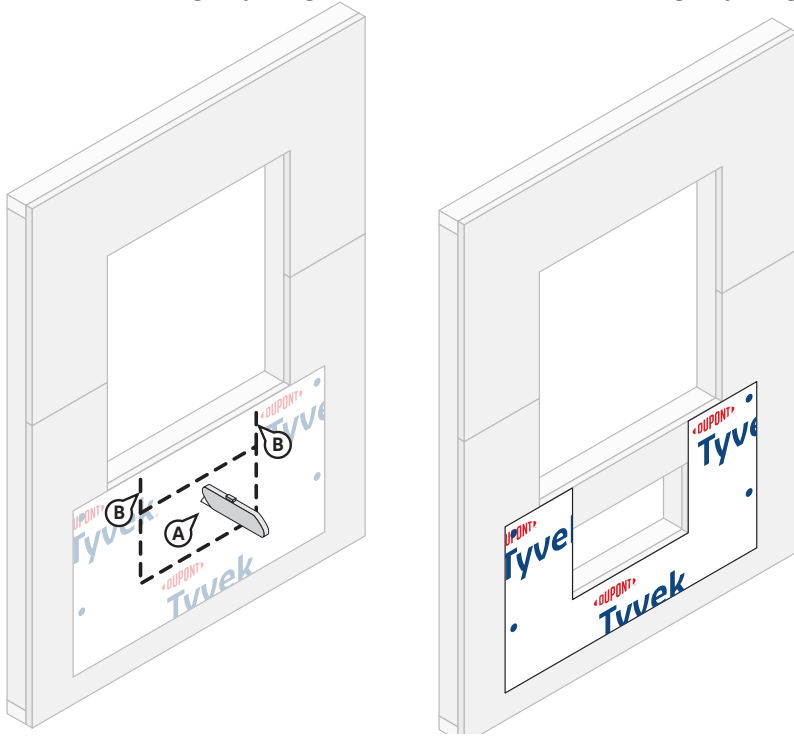
#### STEP 2

##### Prepare Tyvek® WRB Apron

- A. Cut a large apron made of **Tyvek® WRB** for attachment under sill of the *window rough opening*. Apron should extend at least 10" **BEYOND** the sides of *window rough opening* jamb(s) (or to first stud in open stud construction) and at least 12" below sill of the *PTAC rough opening*, or extend far enough below the *PTAC rough opening* to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below. The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall and the bottom of the apron should be left unsecured so it can overlap the **Tyvek® WRB** which will be installed after the window. Avoid placing **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners**, or recommended fasteners, where **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** will be installed.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

### Option 2 – PTAC Rough Opening Less than 8” below Window Rough Opening



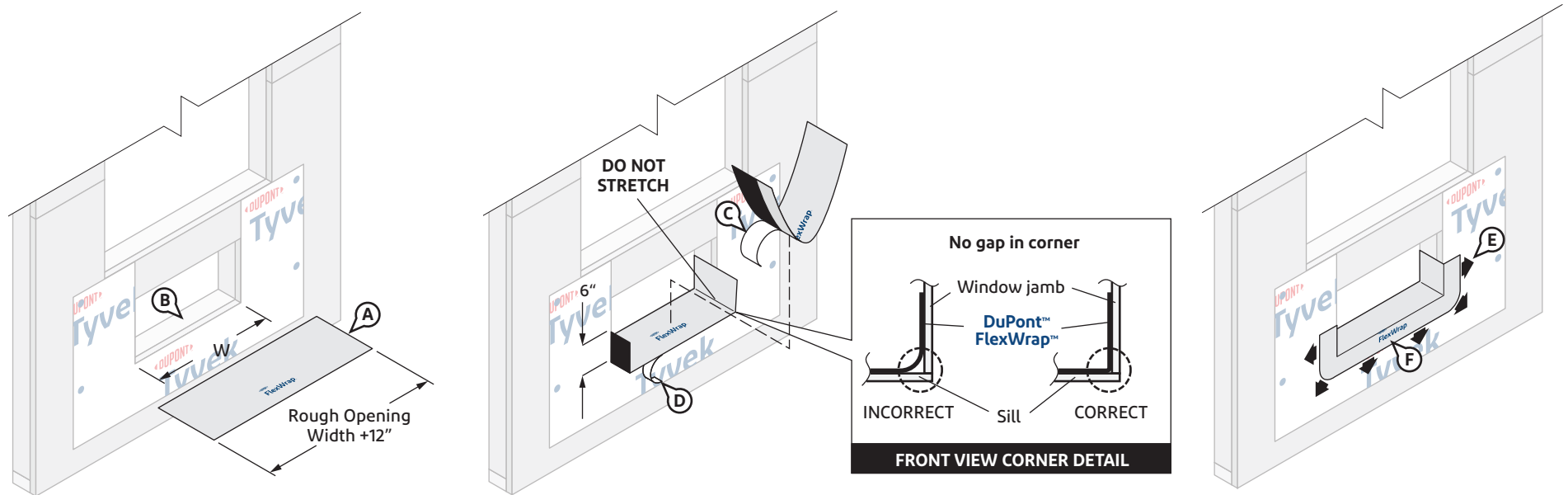
### STEP 3

#### Prepare the Tyvek® WRB Apron for Window and PTAC Installation

- A. Cut an opening in the Tyvek® WRB using a flush cut (“O-Cut”) along the perimeter of the rough opening for the PTAC Unit. Cuts should be made along the dashed indicated lines. (Ensure that the Tyvek® WRB is cut flush with the sheathing and is not wrapped into the rough opening.)
- B. Make two vertical cuts in the Tyvek® WRB above the PTAC rough opening to expose the sheathing in the area between the two rough openings. Cuts should align with jambs of the PTAC rough opening as shown.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

### Option 2 – PTAC Rough Opening Less than 8” below Window Rough Opening

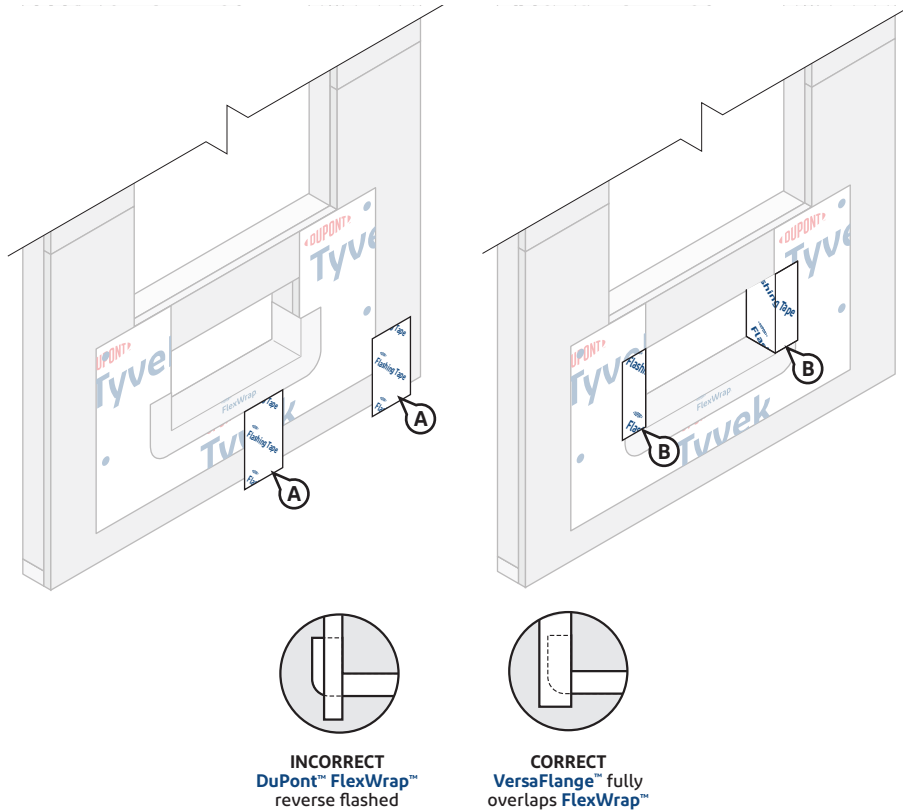


#### STEP 4

- A. Cut **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** at least 12” **LONGER** than width of rough opening (W). Use 6” **FlexWrap™** for 2” x 4” framing and 9” **FlexWrap™** for 2” x 6” framing. Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1” adhesion **BEYOND** where the PTAC frame will be located, ensuring 2”– 3” adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- B. Inspect installation surface to ensure surface is free of dirt or substances that could interfere with adhesion as well as any sharp protrusions.
- C. Remove wide piece of release paper. Position on horizontal sill by aligning the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2”– 3” of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6” up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening.
- D. Remove narrow release paper.
- E. Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill.
- F. Firmly press sill flashing to ensure full adhesion on all surfaces. Eliminate wrinkles and bubbles by smoothing surface and repositioning as necessary.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

### Option 2 – PTAC Rough Opening Less than 8” below Window Rough Opening

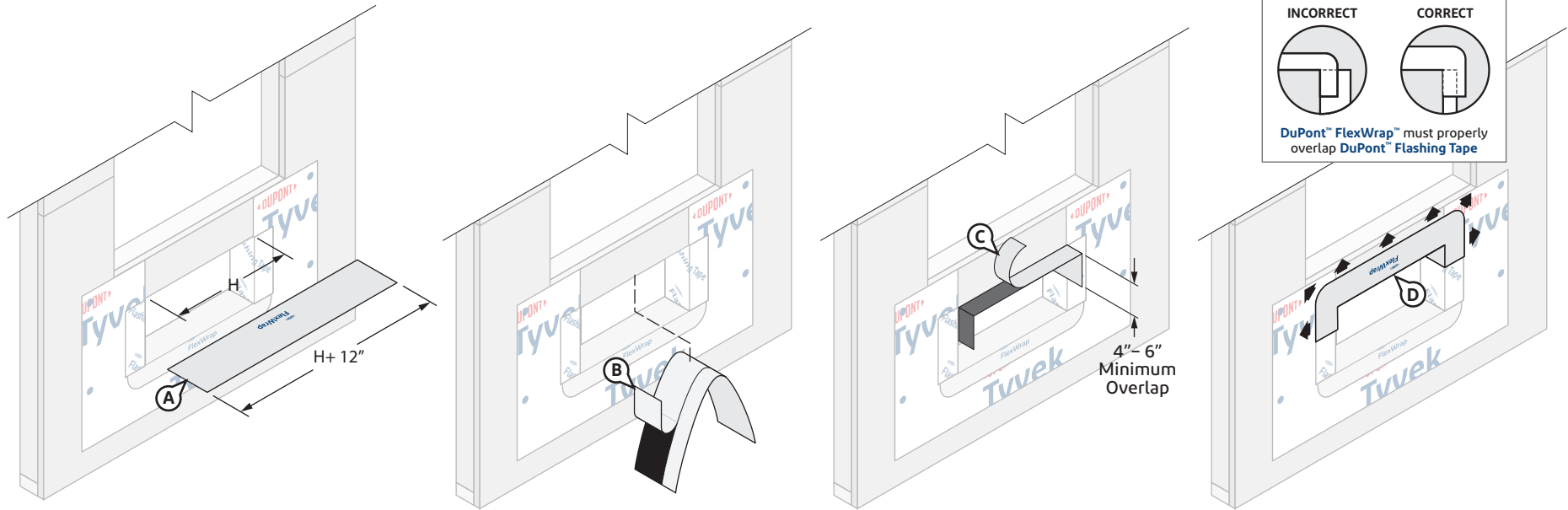


### STEP 5

- G. Cut two pieces of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** the height of the rough opening for the PTAC Unit. PTAC Unit Jamb flashing should be long enough to overlap the sill flashing by at least 2” and be overlapped by future head flashing by at least 2”. Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1” adhesion **BEYOND** where the window will be located, ensuring minimum 2” – 3” adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- H. Wrap the **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** into the rough opening at each jamb and onto wall face. The flashing should fully overlap the **FlexWrap™** on the wall and extend at least 1” **BEYOND** where the back of the PTAC sleeve will be located.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

### Option 2 – PTAC Rough Opening Less than 8” below Window Rough Opening



## STEP 6

### Install DuPont™ FlexWrap™ at the Head of PTAC Unit

- A. Cut **FlexWrap™** at least 8”– 12” **LONGER** than the width of rough opening head (H). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1” adhesion **BEYOND** where the back of the PTAC unit sleeve will be located, ensuring 2”– 3” adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- B. Fold the **FlexWrap™** in half lengthwise to create a slight crease at the center. Remove the wide piece of release paper on one side of the fold. Align the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2”– 3” of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall. Starting at the crease, adhere the **FlexWrap™** at the center of the horizontal portion of the head framing to ensure a minimum of 6” down each jamb. Adhere into rough opening at one corner and down the jamb. Remove the remaining release paper and repeat at opposite corner.

C. Remove narrow release paper.

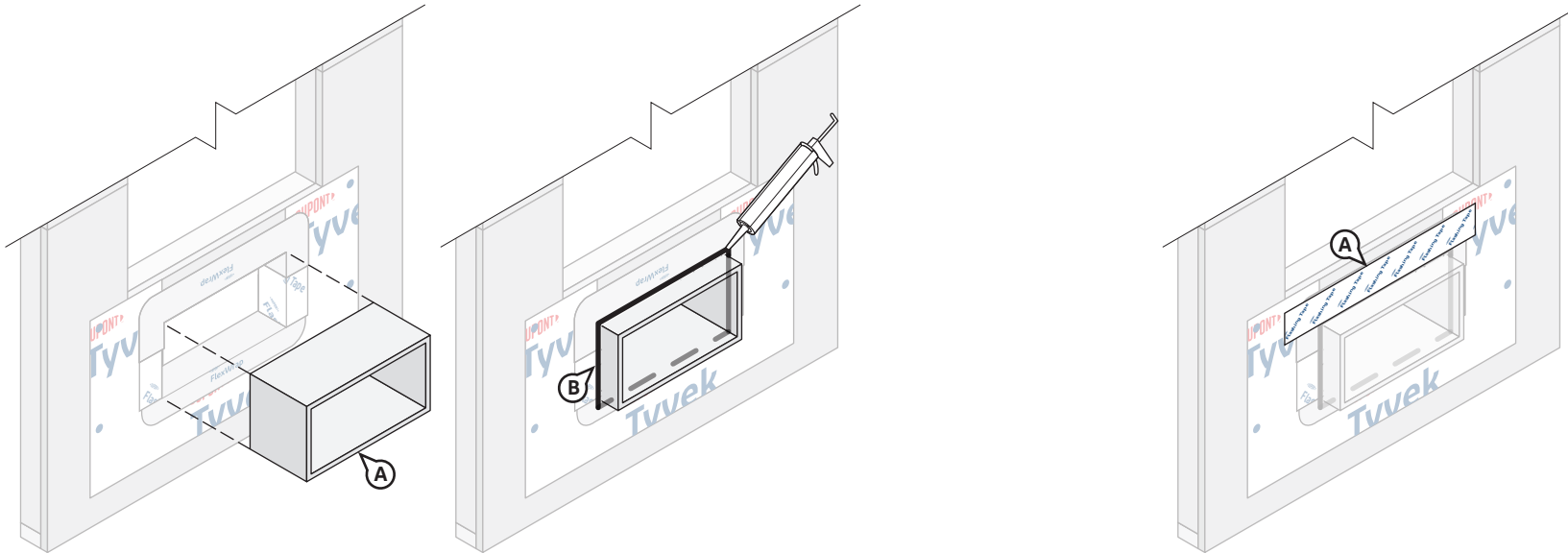
D. Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along the head.

**NOTE:** For exterior gypsum sheathing, apply a [chemically-compatible adhesive/ primer](#) to the exposed sheathing. An adhesive/primer is not required for wood-based sheathing, except when applying flashing during adverse weather conditions.

**NOTE:** DuPont™ Tyvek® Certified Installers may install a 3-piece head (and sill) detail for PTAC unit and window openings less than 6 ft. wide. Installers who are not DuPont™ Tyvek® Certified Installers should refer to the [Special Considerations](#) section for more information regarding the 3-piece head/sill detail. Contact your local DuPont Building Envelope Specialist for more information about the Certified Installer program.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

### Option 2 – PTAC Rough Opening Less than 8” below Window Rough Opening



#### STEP 7

##### Install PTAC Unit

- A. Install PTAC Unit sleeve per manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Apply an exterior perimeter seal using backer rod and a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) along the jambs and head of the PTAC opening.

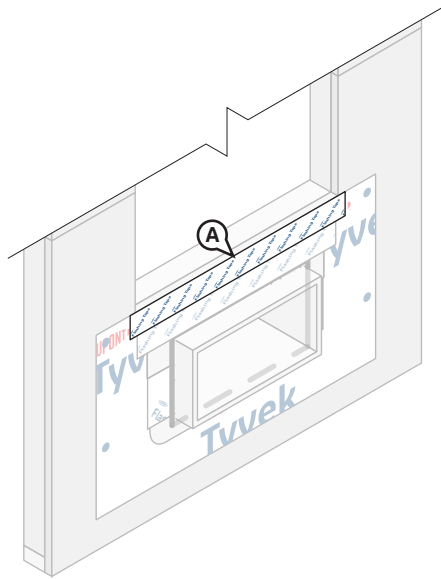
#### STEP 8 – OPTIONAL

Only required when DuPont™ FlexWrap™ head piece does not fully cover exposed sheathing between rough openings and/or the drip cap (if installed).

- A. Cut a piece of DuPont™ Flashing Tape long enough to extend min. 2” **BEYOND** each end of FlexWrap™ PTAC head flashing. Install the cut piece of flashing so top edge is flush with the window sill and is centered along the FlexWrap™ PTAC head flashing.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

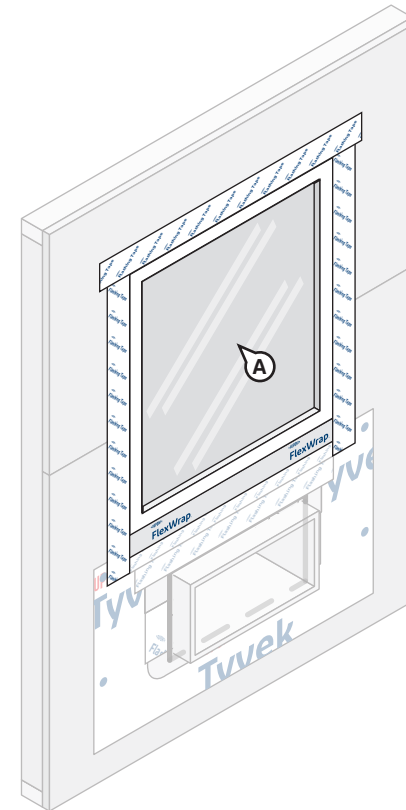
### Option 2 – PTAC Rough Opening Less than 8” below Window Rough Opening



#### STEP 9

Only required when DuPont™ FlexWrap™ head piece does not fully cover exposed sheathing between rough openings.

- A. Cut a piece of DuPont™ Flashing Tape or DuPont™ StraightFlash™ long enough to extend min. 2” BEYOND each end of the FlexWrap™ PTAC head flashing. Install the cut piece of flashing so top edge is flush with the window sill and is centered along the FlexWrap™ PTAC head flashing.



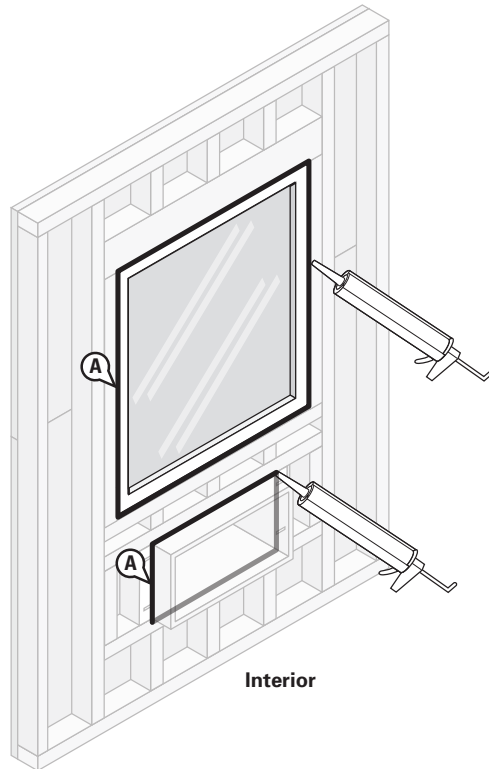
#### STEP 10

- A. Prepare window rough opening, install window according to manufacturer’s instructions, and flash per the [Integral Flanged Window](#) details section in this guide.

**NOTE:** An integral flanged window is shown. If a non-flanged window is installed above the PTAC unit, follow the applicable section within this guide.

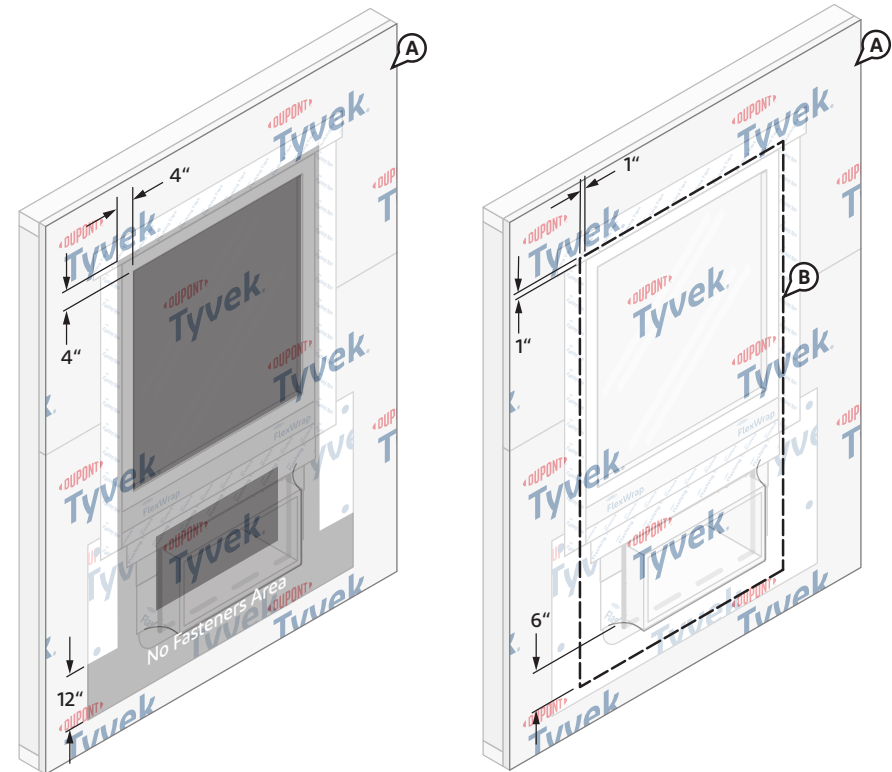
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

### Option 2 – PTAC Rough Opening Less than 8” below Window Rough Opening



#### STEP 11

A. After window and PTAC unit are installed, apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around both the window and PTAC openings at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2”, apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

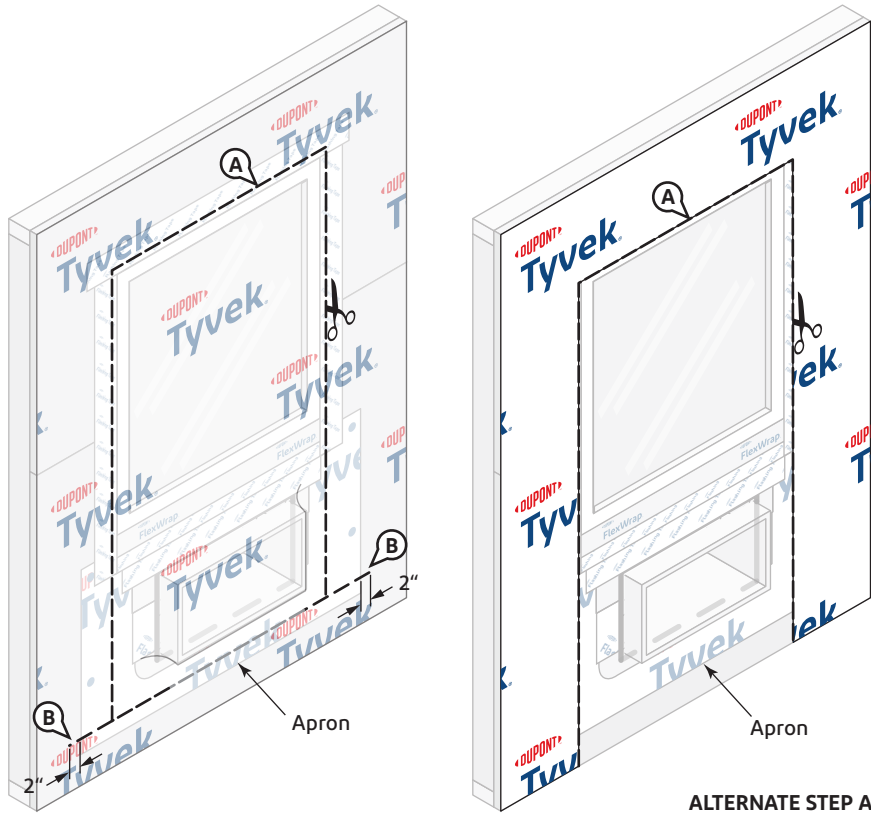


#### STEP 12

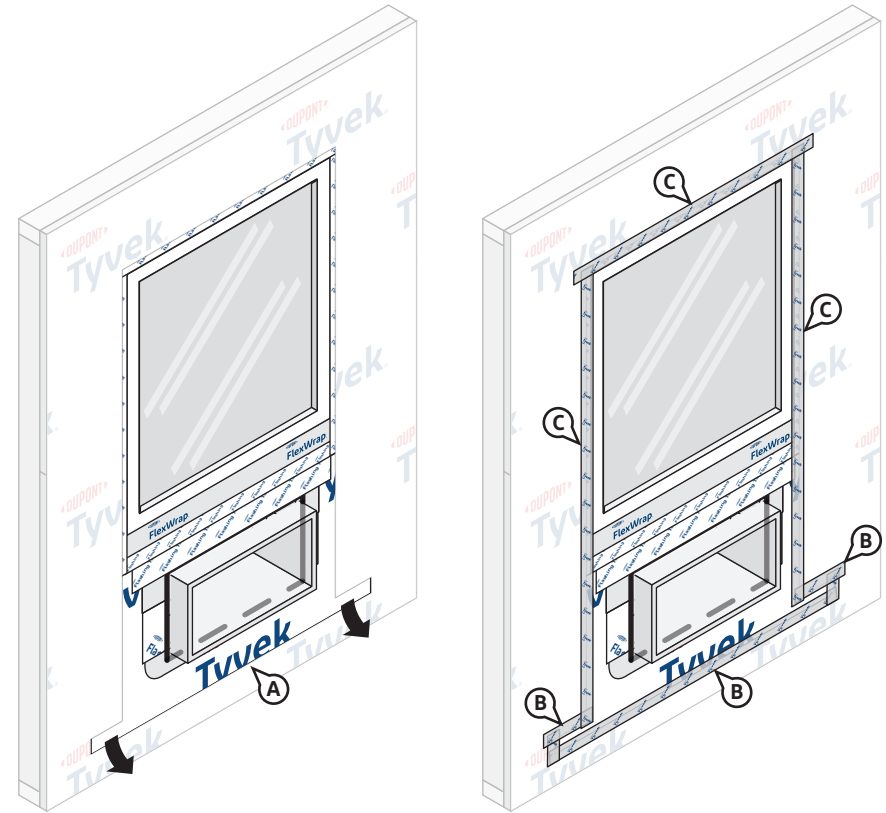
- A. Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4” of the window frame at jambs and head and within 12” of the PTAC frame at sill or location of apron.
- B. Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the window rough opening a 1”– 2” from the jambs and head of the window frame. The vertical lines marked at the jambs of the window should continue to 6” below the sill of the PTAC frame as shown above.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using the “Wrap the Cavity Method”)

### Option 2 – PTAC Rough Opening Less than 8” below Window Rough Opening



ALTERNATE STEP A



#### STEP 13

A. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window and PTAC. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.

**ALTERNATE STEP A:** If apron extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap apron.

B. Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend a 1”– 2” **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.

#### STEP 14

##### Final Step

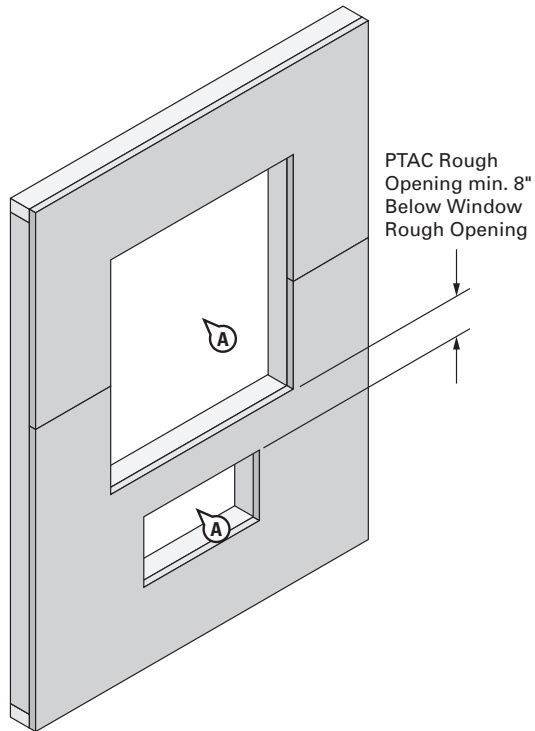
- Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the bottom of the perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
- Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jambs and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around window and PTAC. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

This method can be used to flash Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit sleeves. Ensure **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** logo side faces the exterior. Use of **VersaFlange™** requires a smooth-framed PTAC sleeve for proper adhesion to the frame.

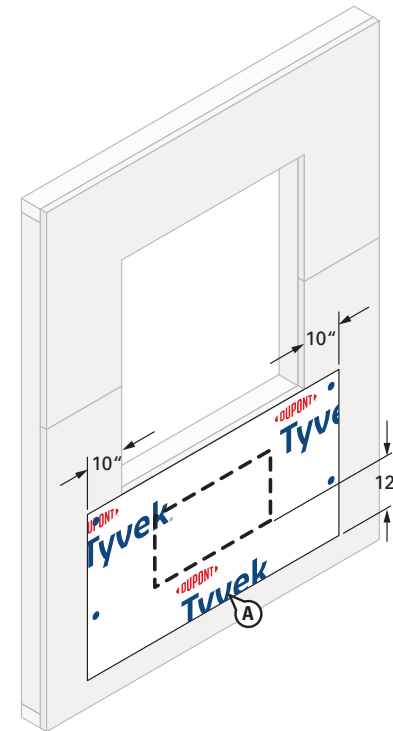
**This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ VersaFlange™, DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, DuPont™ FlexWrap™, and DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ**

### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8" below Window Rough Opening



#### STEP 1

- A. Cut rough opening in sheathing for window and PTAC. Ensure that sheathing is cut flush with, or slightly below the sill framing to allow for positive drainage.



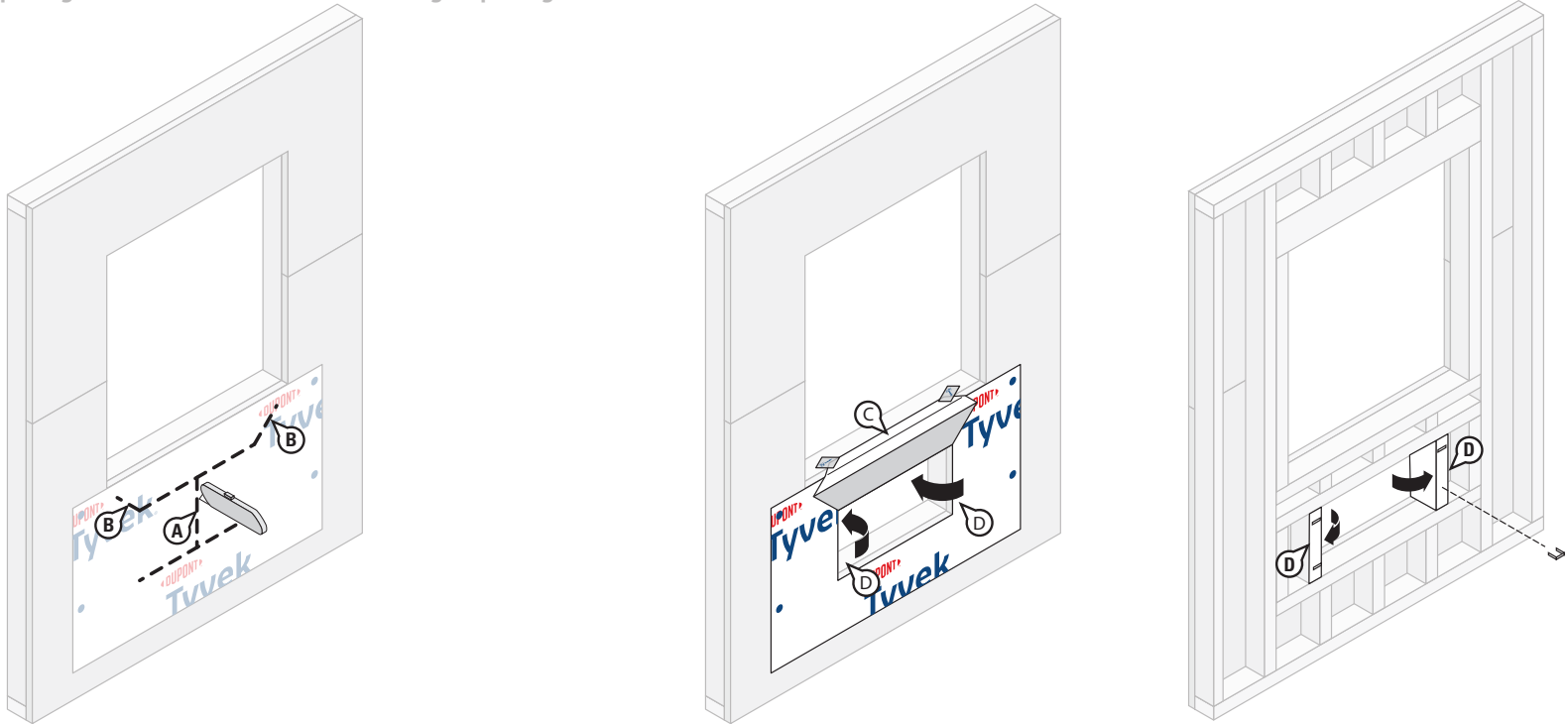
#### STEP 2

##### Prepare Tyvek® WRB Apron

- A. Cut a large apron made of **Tyvek® WRB** for attachment under sill of the *window rough opening*. Apron should extend at least 10" **BEYOND** the sides of *window rough opening* jambs (or to first stud in open stud construction) and at least 12" below sill of the *PTAC rough opening*, or extend far enough below the *PTAC rough opening* to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below. The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall and the bottom of the apron should be left unsecured so it can overlap the **Tyvek® WRB** which will be installed after the window. Avoid placing **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners**, or recommended fasteners, where **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** will be installed.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8” below Window Rough Opening



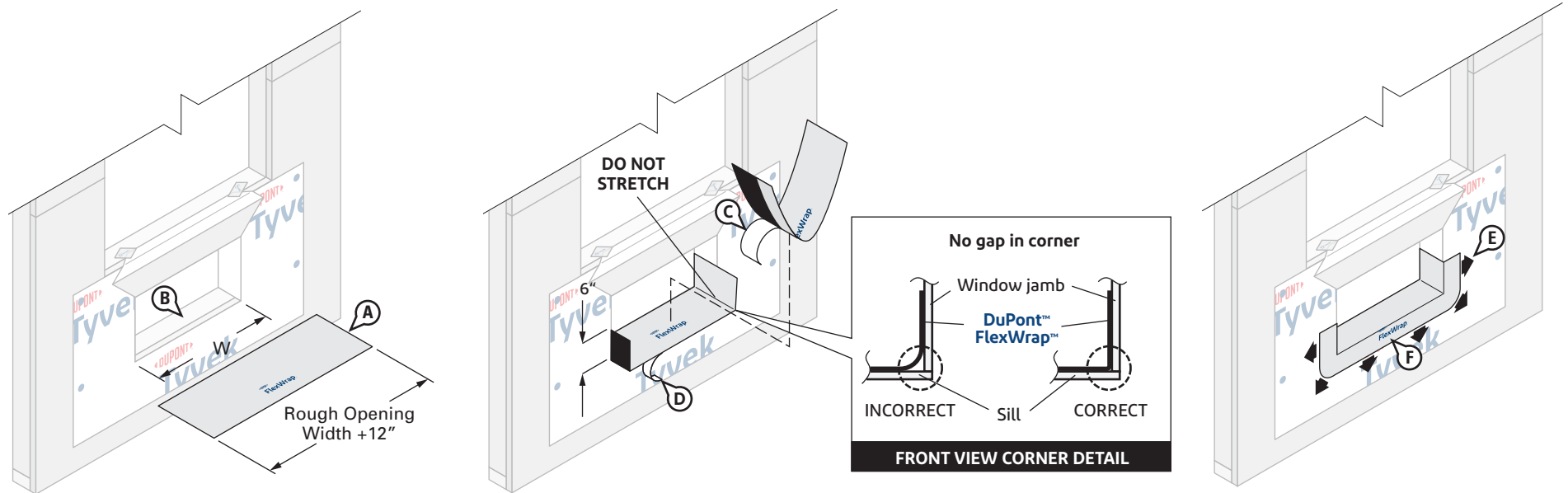
### STEP 3

#### Prepare the Tyvek® WRB Apron for Window and PTAC Installation

- Make an "I-Cut" in the Tyvek® WRB at the PTAC rough opening.
- Cut two 45 degree slits up and away from the PTAC rough opening, extending from the corner of the head. Cuts should extend far enough to ensure DuPont™ VersaFlange™ that will be installed in a future step can be installed to the exposed sheathing at the head.
- Flip head flap up and temporarily secure with DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape.
- Fold side flaps into rough openings of the window and the PTAC and secure to inside wall. Cut off excess flaps if desired.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8” below Window Rough Opening

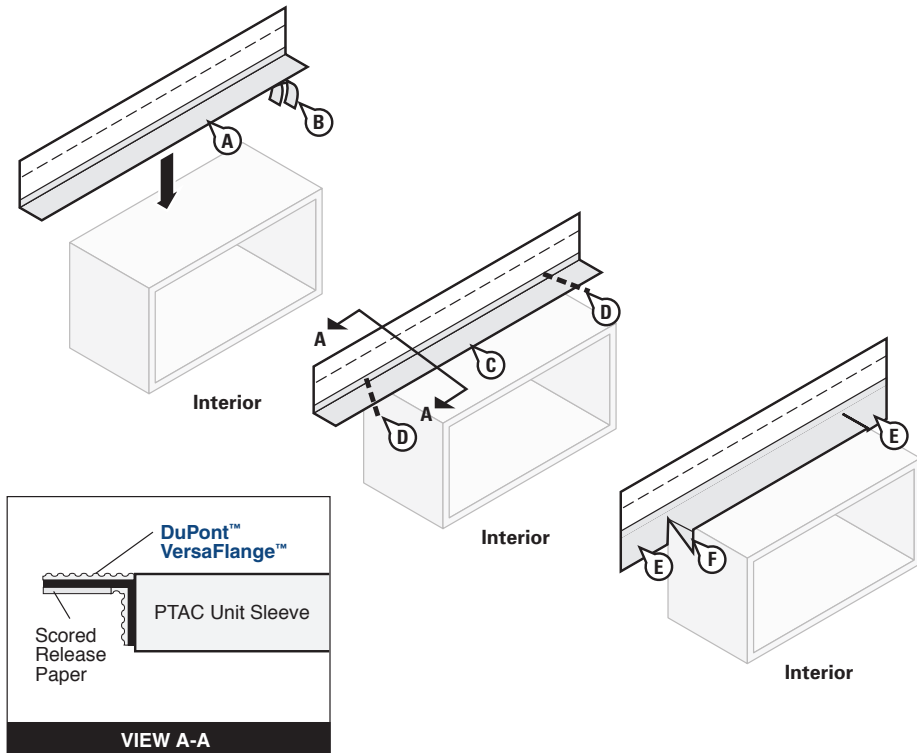


#### STEP 4

- Cut **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening (W). Use 6" **FlexWrap™** for 2" x 4" framing and 9" **FlexWrap™** for 2" x 6" framing. Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the PTAC frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- Inspect installation surface to ensure surface is free of dirt or substances that could interfere with adhesion as well as any sharp protrusions.
- Remove wide piece of release paper. Position on horizontal sill by aligning the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2"– 3" of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6" up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening.
- Remove narrow release paper.
- Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill.
- Firmly press sill flashing to ensure full adhesion on all surfaces. Eliminate wrinkles and bubbles by smoothing surface and repositioning as necessary.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

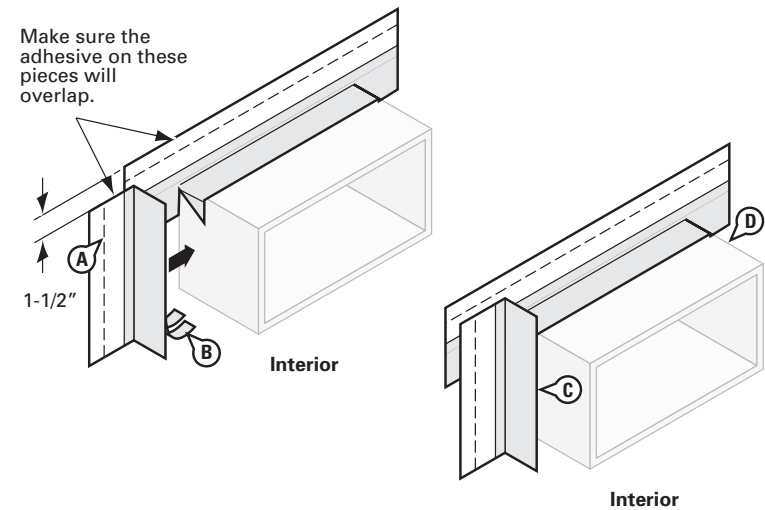
### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8” below Window Rough Opening



#### STEP 5

##### Prepare PTAC Unit Sleeve using DuPont™ VersaFlange™

- Prepare head flashing by cutting a piece of **VersaFlange™** at least 12" **LONGER** than the head length.
- Remove the release paper from one side of the **VersaFlange™**.
- Center the flashing along the length of the PTAC unit sleeve and position so that it contacts the PTAC unit sleeve. Use firm hand pressure or a j-roller to ensure proper adhesion to the sleeve.
- Beginning at the junction of the jamb and head and away from the corners, cut the **VersaFlange™** at a 45° angle.
- Fold the newly created flashing flaps down parallel to the PTAC unit sleeve.
- Fold remaining head flashing flaps down onto the jamb.

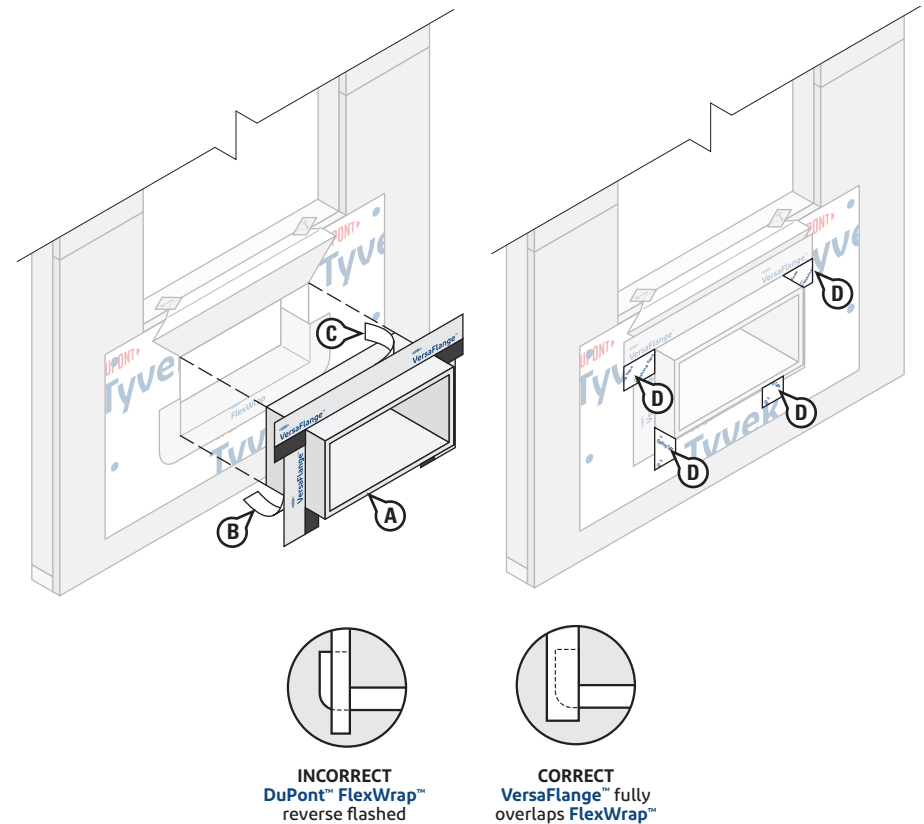
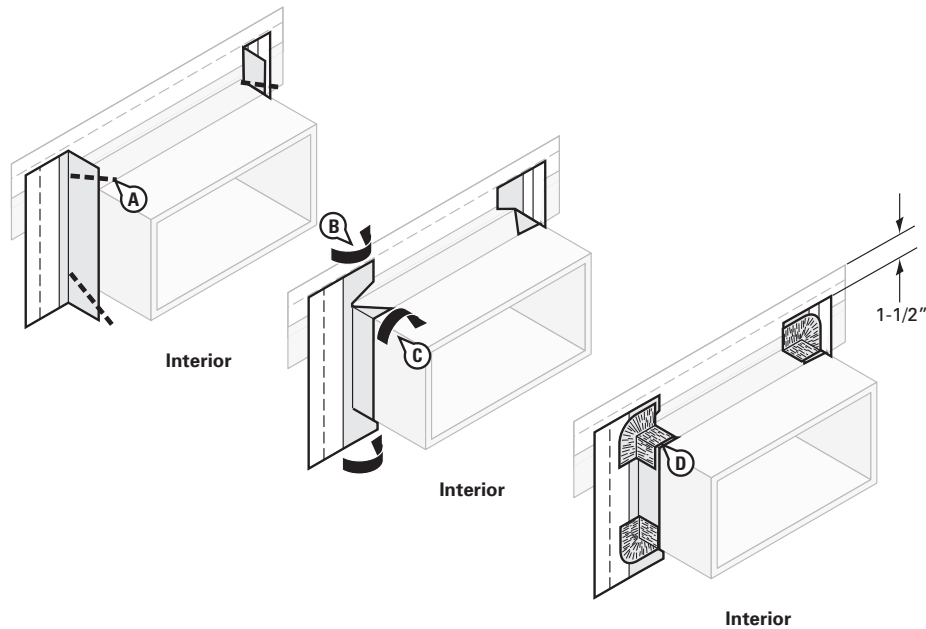


#### STEP 6

- Prepare jamb flashing by cutting a piece of **VersaFlange™** at least 6" **LONGER** than the jamb length.
- Remove the release paper from one side of the **VersaFlange™**.
- Position the **VersaFlange™** so that it contacts the PTAC unit sleeve up to the exterior face of the sleeve. Ensure that the jamb flashing is positioned 1 1/2" below top of head flashing. **Jamb flashing adhesive must come in contact with head flashing adhesive and overlap by 1"**.
- Repeat on opposite jamb.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8” below Window Rough Opening



## STEP 7

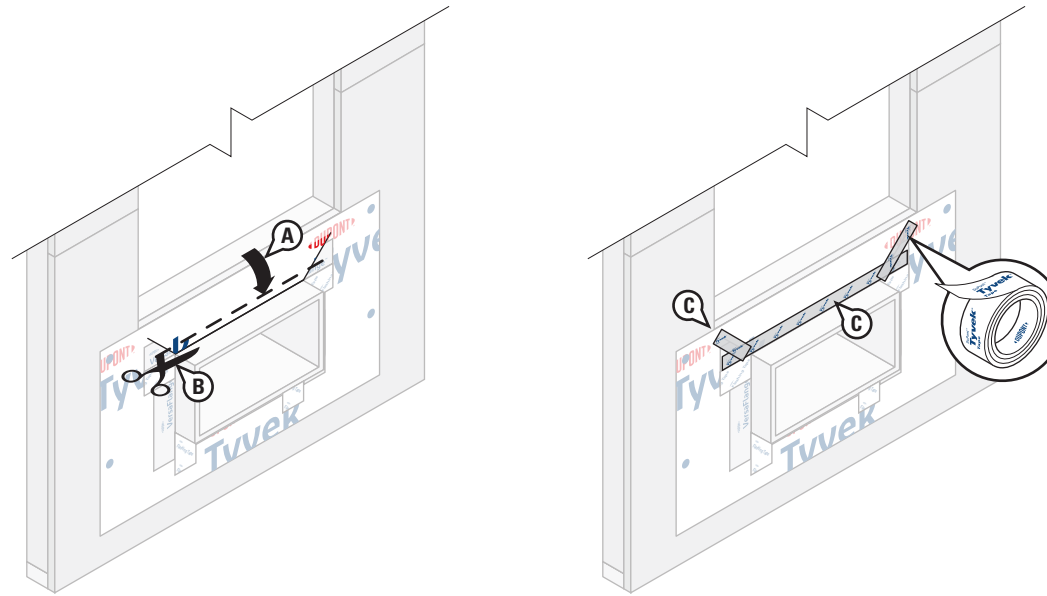
- Beginning at the junction of the jambs and the head, and away from the corners, cut the **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** at a 45° angle. Repeat the procedure at the junction of the sill and jambs.
- In order to overlap jamb adhesive to the head flashing adhesive, temporarily pull back release liner on the head flashing. Fold cut jamb flashing parallel to the PTAC unit sleeve so that the jamb flashing lies flat onto the head flashing. Fold the head flashing release liner back down to protect any remaining exposed butyl along the head flashing prior to installation of the PTAC unit.
- Fold remaining jamb flashing flaps down at all corners and adhere to the PTAC unit sleeve.
- Cut four 3" x 3" pieces of **DuPont™ FlexWrap™**, or four 3" pieces of **DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ**, and add patches to corners of the PTAC unit sleeve.

## STEP 8

- Install the PTAC unit sleeve per manufacturer's instructions.
  - Remove the remaining release paper from the **VersaFlange™** jamb flashing and press firmly to adhere the butyl adhesive to the **Tyvek® WRB**.
  - Remove the release paper at the head and adhere the **VersaFlange™** to the wall surface.
- NOTE:** Do not reverse shingle. **VersaFlange™** must overlap **FlexWrap™** and adhere to the substrate.
- OPTIONAL:** Cover exposed butyl with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, or **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8” below Window Rough Opening



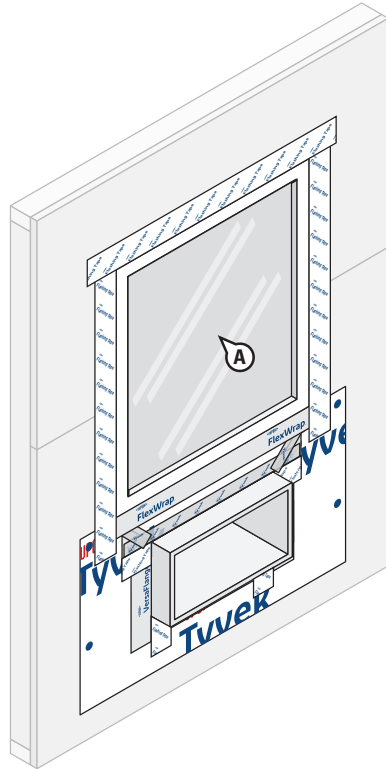
## STEP 9

- Flip down upper flap of **Tyvek® WRB** so it lays flat across head flashing.
- Cut 1”– 2” strip of the **Tyvek® WRB** at lower horizontal edge of head flap.
- Terminate head flap as shown by continuously sealing the horizontal and then the diagonal seams with **Tyvek® Tape**, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**. If additional drainage is desired, skip-sealing at head with a maximum of two (2) 2” gaps for every 3’ of window is acceptable if **an air barrier is not required**.

**NOTE:** For a more robust head flap termination, seal with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™**. Install mechanical fasteners through flashing as needed for increased holding power. See the table in the [Applicable Structures and Performance Criteria](#) section for more information on air barrier requirements and head flap terminations.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

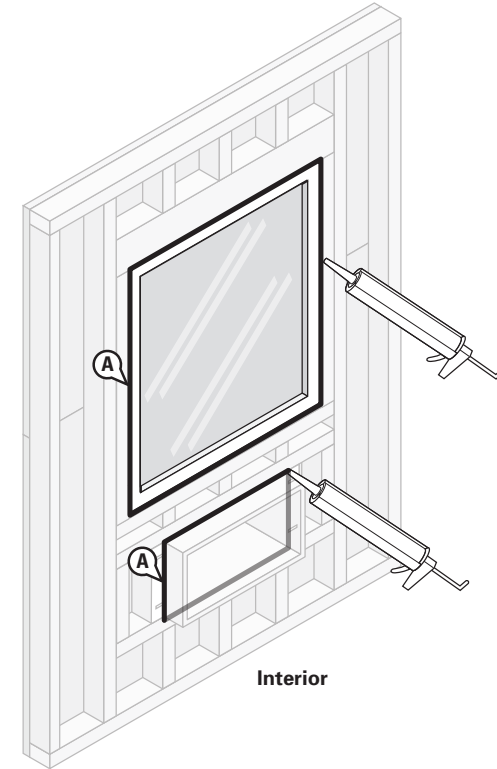
### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8” below Window Rough Opening



#### STEP 10

A. Prepare window rough opening, install window according to manufacturer's instructions, and flash per the [Integral Flanged Window](#) details section in this guide.

**NOTE:** An integral flanged window is shown. If a non-flanged window is installed above the PTAC unit, follow the applicable section within this guide.

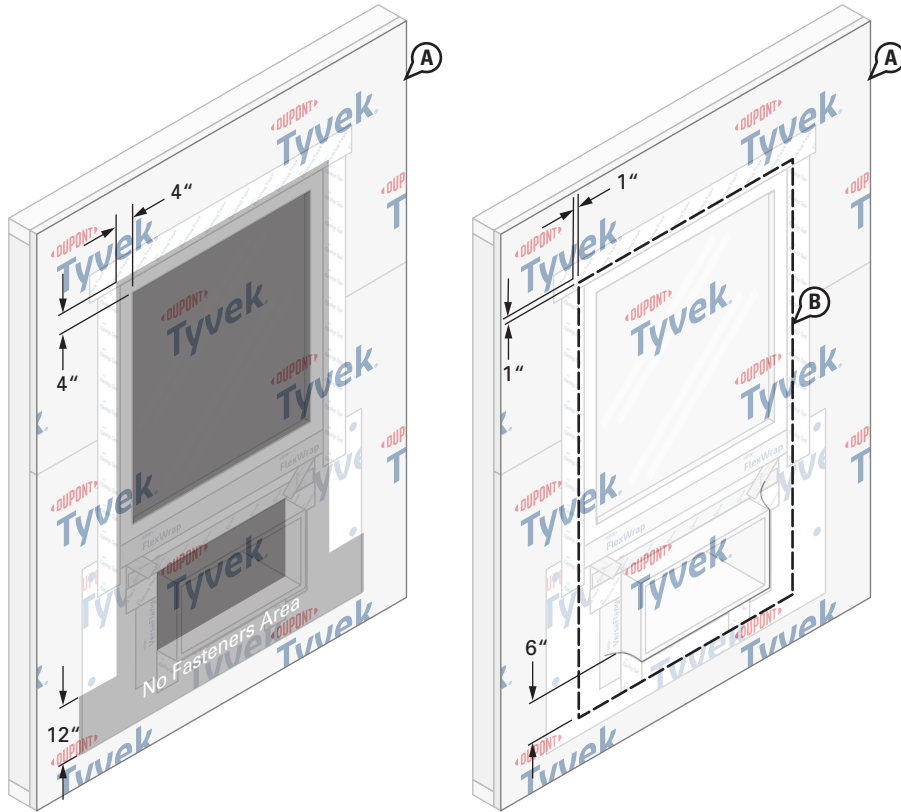


#### STEP 11

A. After window and PTAC unit are installed, apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around both the window and PTAC openings at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

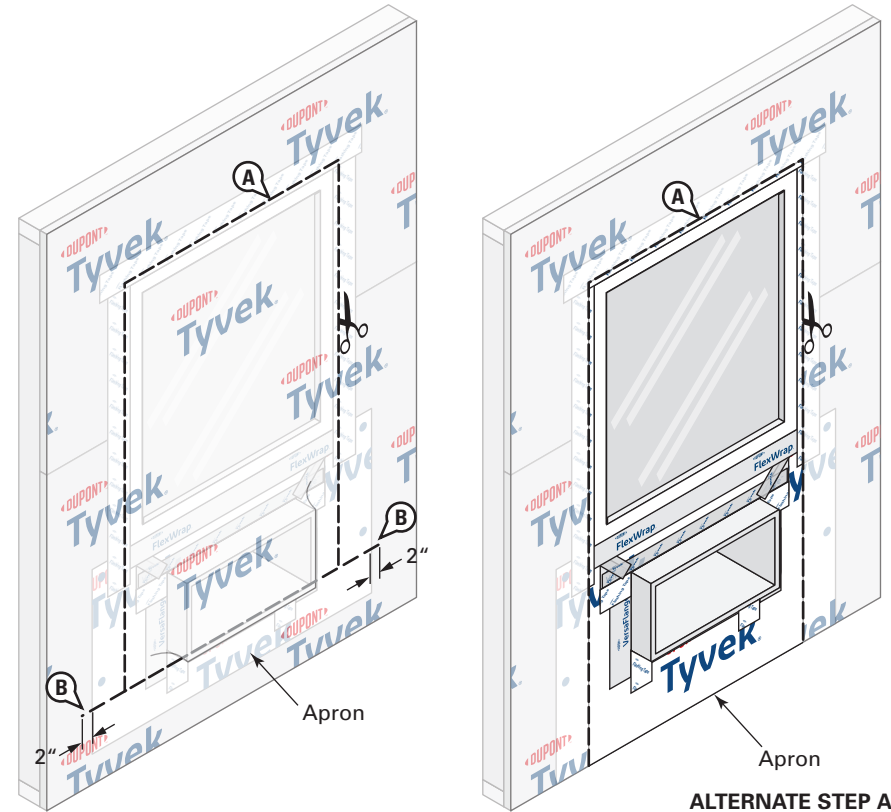
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8” below Window Rough Opening



#### STEP 12

- A. Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4” of the window frame at jambs and head and within 12” of the PTAC frame at sill or location of apron.
- B. Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the window rough opening a 1”– 2” from the jambs and head of the window frame. The vertical lines marked at the jambs of the window should continue to 6” below the sill of the PTAC frame as shown above.

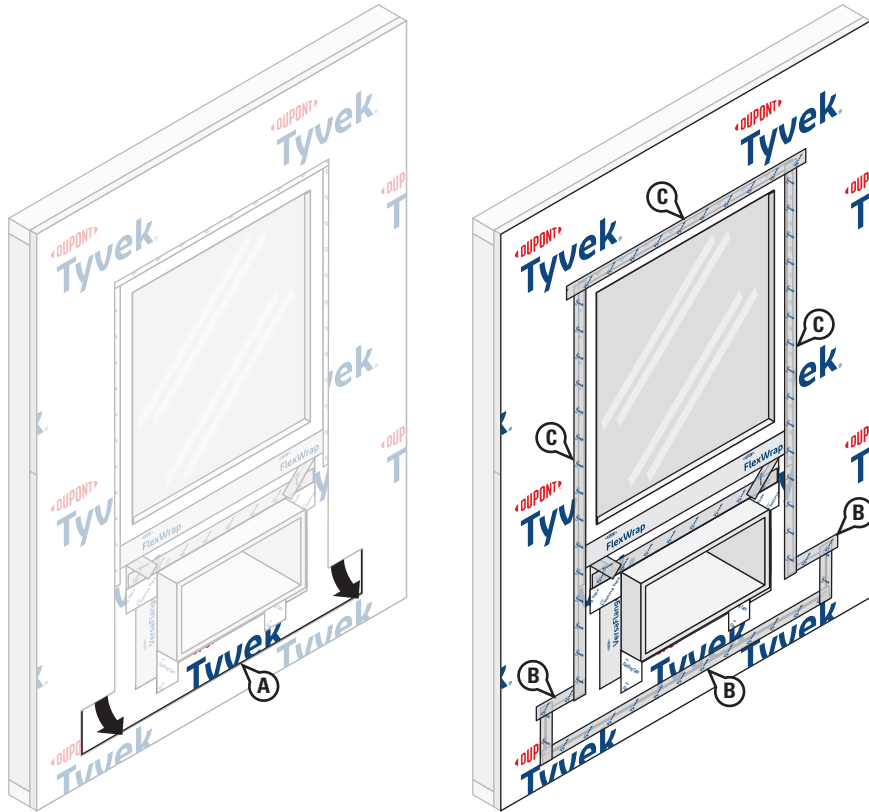


#### STEP 13

- A. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window and PTAC. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.
- ALTERNATE STEP A:** If apron extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap apron.
- B. Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend a 1”– 2” **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

### Option 1 – PTAC Rough Opening Minimum 8” below Window Rough Opening



## STEP 14

### Final Step

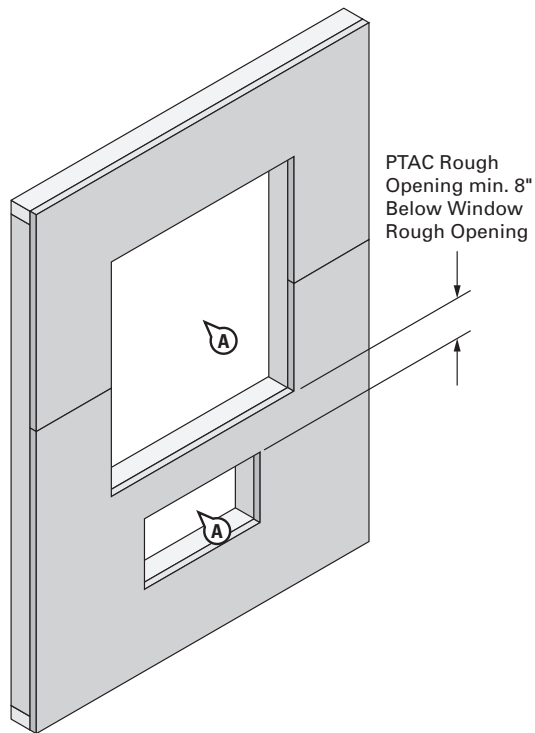
- A. Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the bottom of the perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- B. Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
- C. Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jambs and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around window and PTAC. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

This method can be used to flash Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit sleeves. Ensure **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** logo side faces the exterior. Use of **VersaFlange™** requires a smooth-framed PTAC sleeve for proper adhesion to the frame.

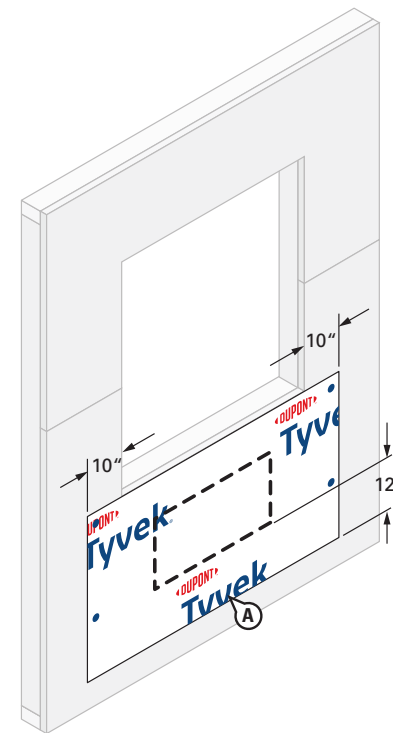
This method applies to the following products: **DuPont™ VersaFlange™**, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, **DuPont™ FlexWrap™**, and **DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ**

### Option 2 – PTAC Rough Opening Less than 8” below Window Rough Opening



#### STEP 1

- A. Cut rough opening in sheathing for window and PTAC. Ensure that sheathing is cut flush with, or slightly below the sill framing to allow for positive drainage.



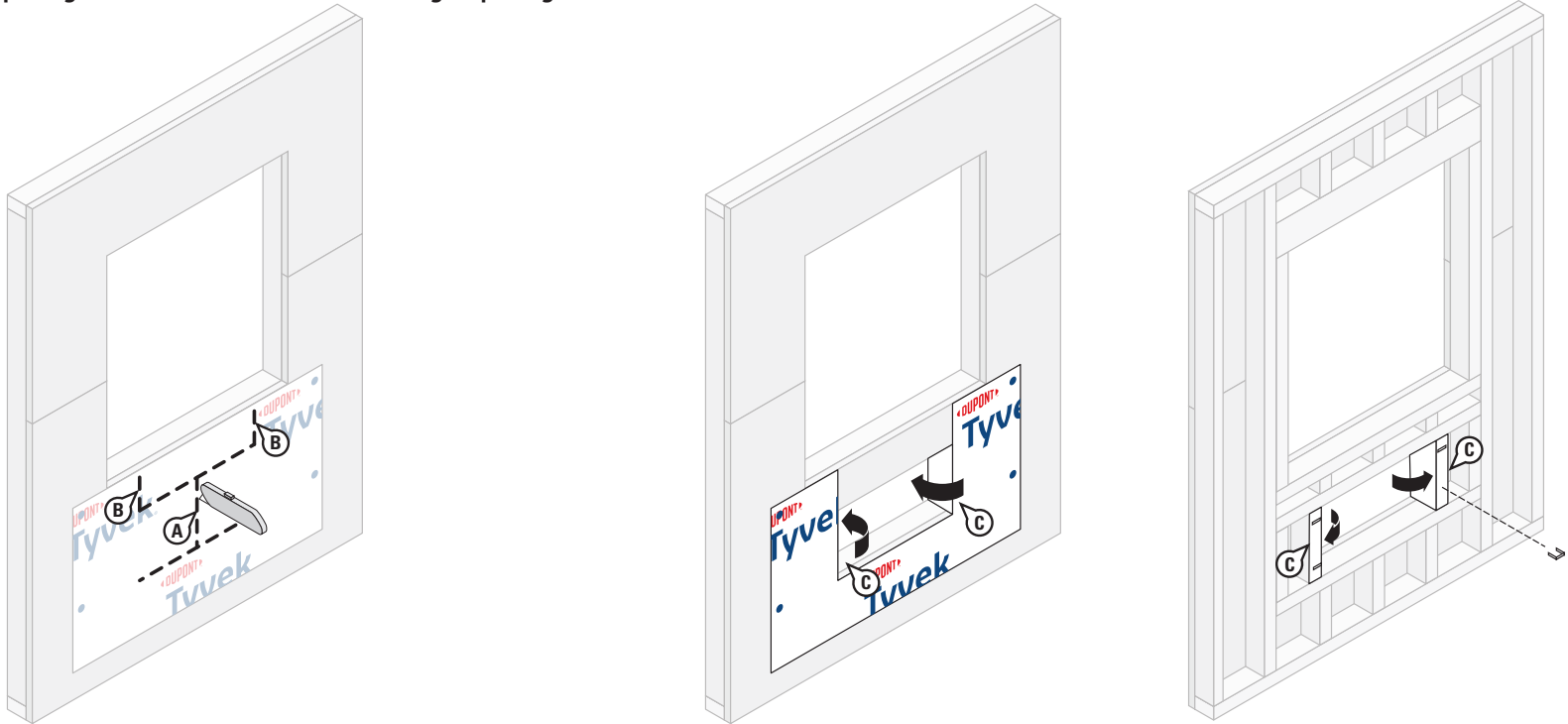
#### STEP 2

##### Prepare Tyvek® WRB Apron

- A. Cut a large apron made of **Tyvek® WRB** for attachment under sill of the *window rough opening*. Apron should extend at least 10" **BEYOND** the sides of *window rough opening* jamb(s) (or to first stud in open stud construction) and at least 12" below sill of the *PTAC rough opening*, or extend far enough below the *PTAC rough opening* to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below. The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall and the bottom of the apron should be left unsecured so it can overlap the **Tyvek® WRB** which will be installed after the window. Avoid placing **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners**, or recommended fasteners, where **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** will be installed.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed **BEFORE** the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

### Option 2 – PTAC Rough Opening Less than 8” below Window Rough Opening



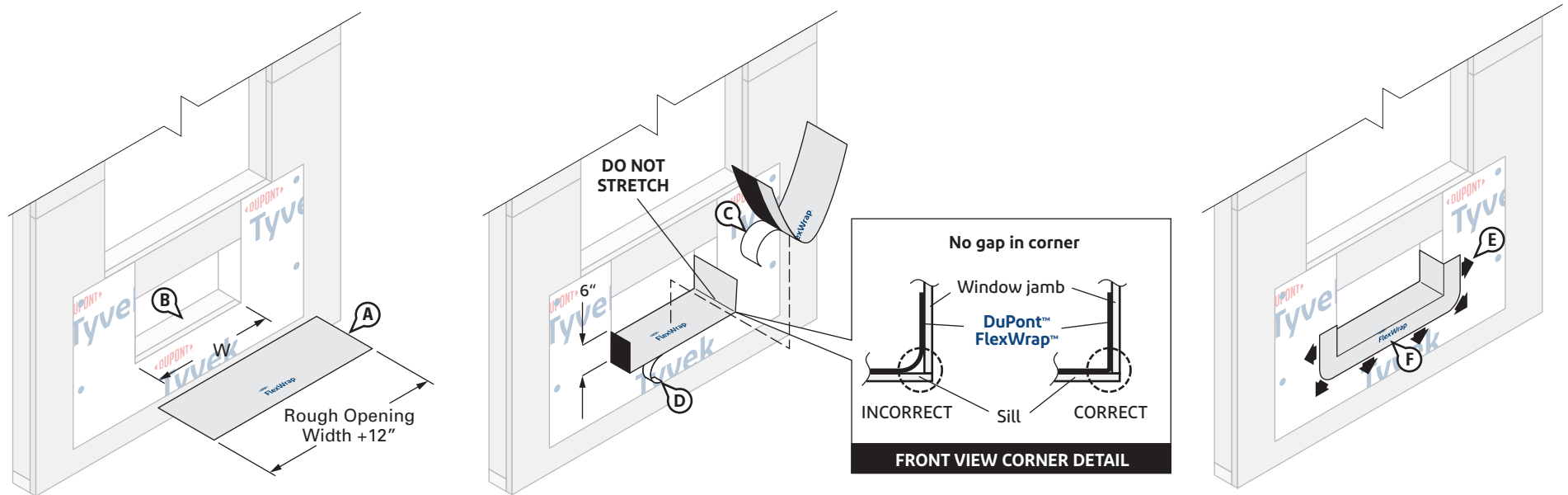
### STEP 3

#### Prepare the Tyvek® WRB Apron for Window and PTAC Installation

- A. Make an "I-Cut" in the Tyvek® WRB at the PTAC rough opening.
- B. Make two vertical cuts in the Tyvek® WRB above the PTAC rough opening to expose the sheathing in the area between the two rough openings. Cuts should align with jambs of the PTAC rough opening as shown.
- C. Fold side flaps into rough openings of the window and the PTAC and secure to inside wall. Cut off excess flaps if desired.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

### Option 2 – PTAC Rough Opening Less than 8” below Window Rough Opening

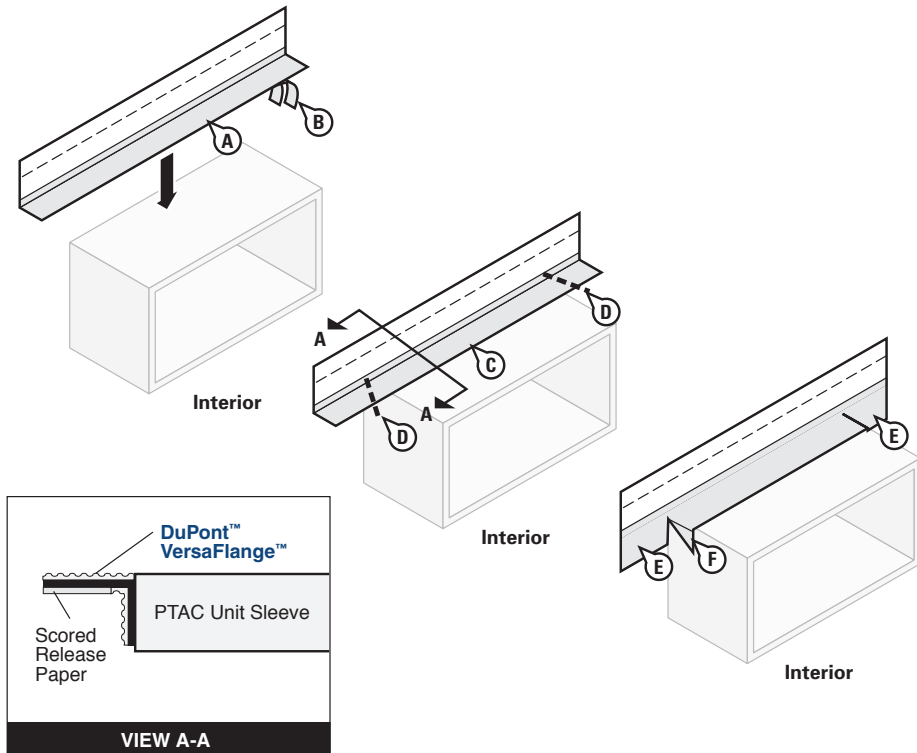


#### STEP 4

- Cut **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening (W). Use 6" **FlexWrap™** for 2" x 4" framing and 9" **FlexWrap™** for 2" x 6" framing. Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- Inspect installation surface to ensure surface is free of dirt or substances that could interfere with adhesion as well as any sharp protrusions.
- Remove wide piece of release paper. Position on horizontal sill by aligning the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2"– 3" of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6" up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening.
- Remove narrow release paper.
- Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill.
- Firmly press sill flashing to ensure full adhesion on all surfaces. Eliminate wrinkles and bubbles by smoothing surface and repositioning as necessary.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

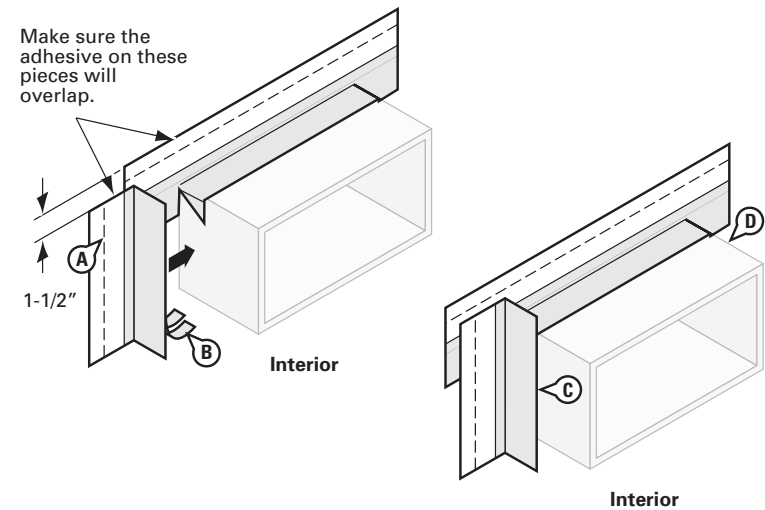
### Option 2 – PTAC Rough Opening Less than 8” below Window Rough Opening



#### STEP 5

##### Prepare PTAC Unit Sleeve using DuPont™ VersaFlange™

- Prepare head flashing by cutting a piece of **VersaFlange™** at least 12” **LONGER** than the head length.
- Remove the release paper from one side of the **VersaFlange™**.
- Center the flashing along the length of the PTAC unit sleeve and position so that it contacts the PTAC unit sleeve. Use firm hand pressure or a j-roller to ensure proper adhesion to the sleeve.
- Beginning at the junction of the jamb and head and away from the corners, cut the **VersaFlange™** at a 45° angle.
- Fold the newly created flashing flaps down parallel to the PTAC unit sleeve.
- Fold remaining head flashing flaps down onto the jamb.

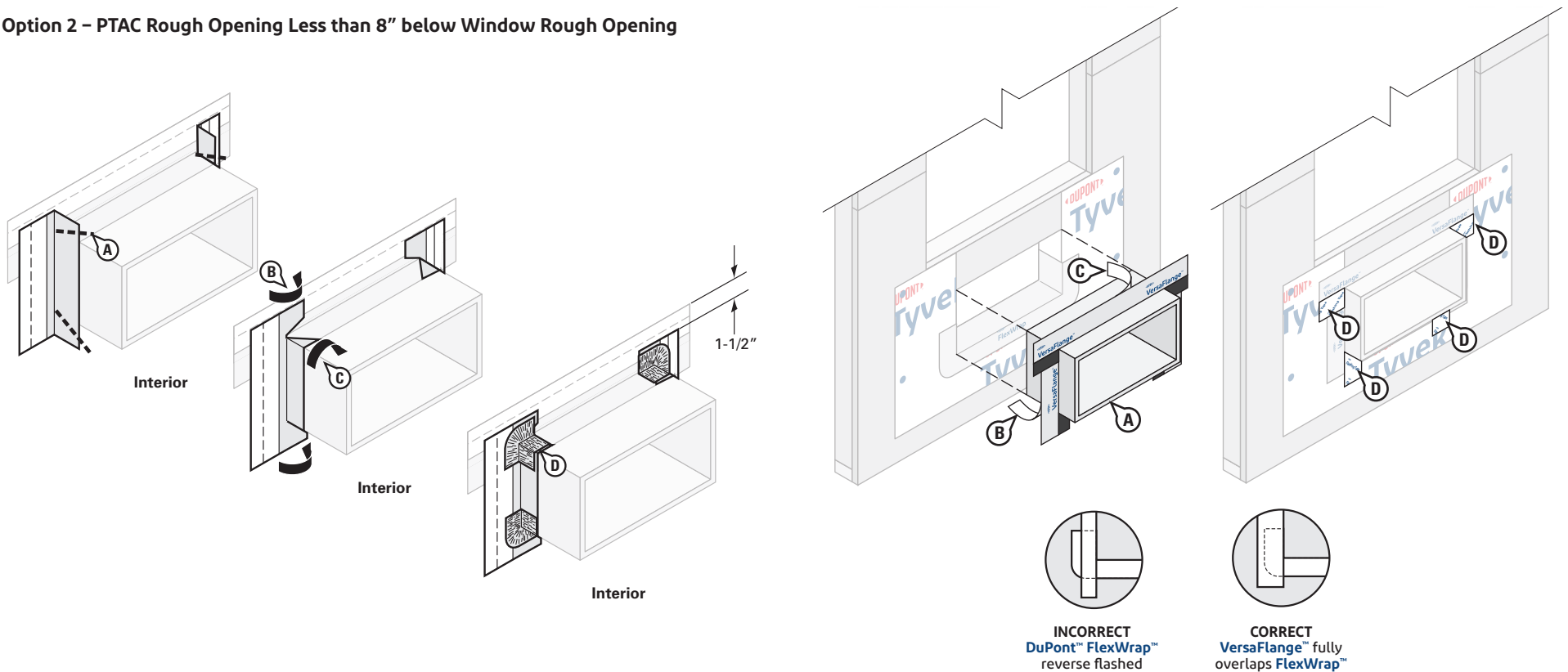


#### STEP 6

- Prepare jamb flashing by cutting a piece of **VersaFlange™** at least 6” **LONGER** than the jamb length.
- Remove the release paper from one side of the **VersaFlange™**.
- Position the **VersaFlange™** so that it contacts the PTAC unit sleeve up to the exterior face of the sleeve. Ensure that the jamb flashing is positioned 1 1/2” below top of head flashing. **Jamb flashing adhesive must come in contact with head flashing adhesive and overlap by 1”.**
- Repeat on opposite jamb.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

### Option 2 – PTAC Rough Opening Less than 8” below Window Rough Opening



#### STEP 7

- Beginning at the junction of the jambs and the head, and away from the corners, cut the **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** at a 45° angle. Repeat the procedure at the junction of the sill and jambs.
- In order to overlap jamb adhesive to the head flashing adhesive, temporarily pull back release liner on the head flashing. Fold cut jamb flashing parallel to the PTAC unit sleeve so that the jamb flashing lies flat onto the head flashing. Fold the head flashing release liner back down to protect any remaining exposed butyl along the head flashing prior to installation of the PTAC unit.
- Fold remaining jamb flashing flaps down at all corners and adhere to the PTAC unit sleeve.
- Cut four 3" x 3" pieces of **DuPont™ FlexWrap™**, or four 3" pieces of **DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ**, and add patches to corners of the PTAC unit sleeve.

#### STEP 8

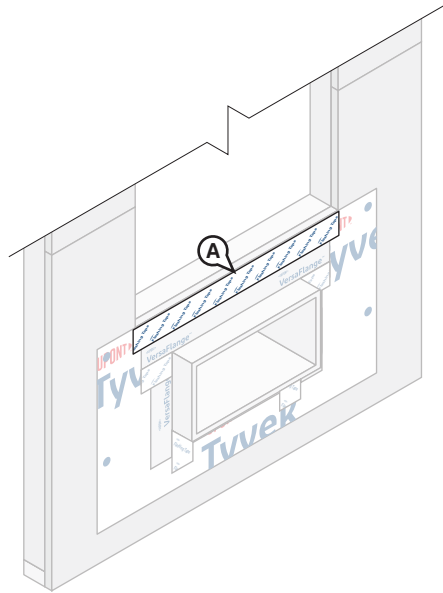
- Install the PTAC unit sleeve per manufacturer's instructions.
- Remove the remaining release paper from the **VersaFlange™** jamb flashing and press firmly to adhere the butyl adhesive to the **Tyvek® WRB**.
- Remove the release paper at the head and adhere the **VersaFlange™** to the wall surface.

**NOTE:** Head piece of **VersaFlange™**, if properly installed, will extend 4" to 4-1/2" above the PTAC rough opening. If the space between the two rough openings exceeds the width of the **VersaFlange™**, some sheathing will remain exposed below the window sill. A separate piece of flashing will be installed per the next step to cover exposed sheathing. **Do not reverse shingle. VersaFlange™ must overlap FlexWrap™ and adhere to the substrate.**

- OPTIONAL:** Cover exposed butyl and exposed sheathing with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, or **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

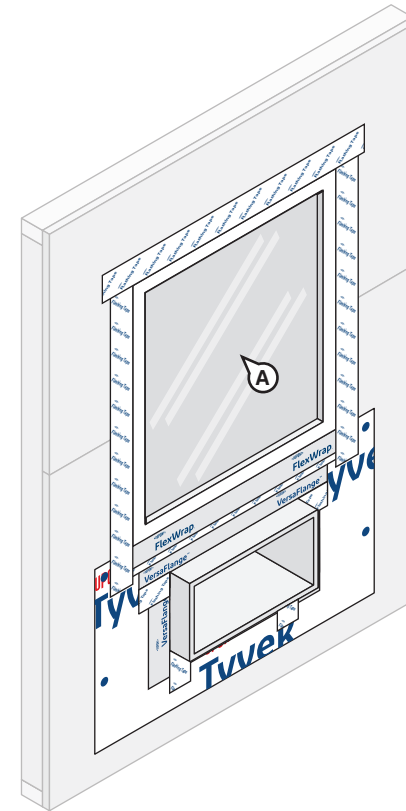
### Option 2 – PTAC Rough Opening Less than 8” below Window Rough Opening



#### STEP 9

Only required when DuPont™ VersaFlange™ head piece does not fully cover exposed sheathing between rough openings.

- A. Cut a piece of DuPont™ Flashing Tape or DuPont™ StraightFlash™ long enough to extend min. 2” BEYOND each end of VersaFlange™ PTAC head flashing. Install the cut piece of flashing so top edge is flush with the window sill and is centered along the VersaFlange™ PTAC head flashing.



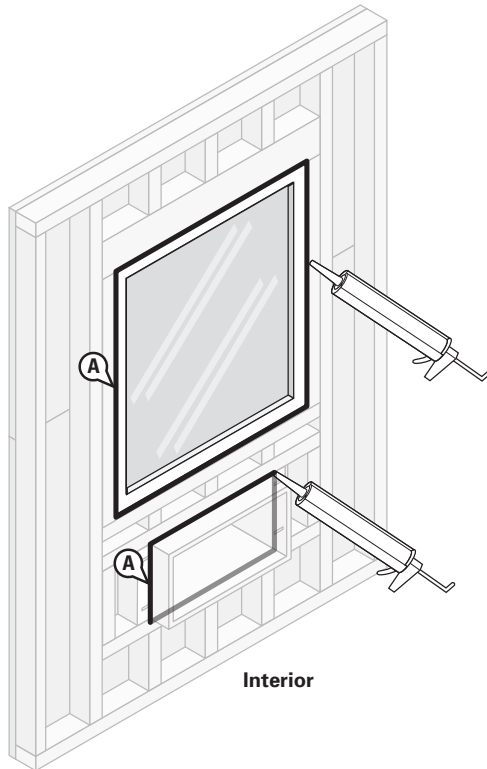
#### STEP 10

- A. Prepare window rough opening, install window according to manufacturer’s instructions, and flash per the [Integral Flanged Window](#) details section in this guide.

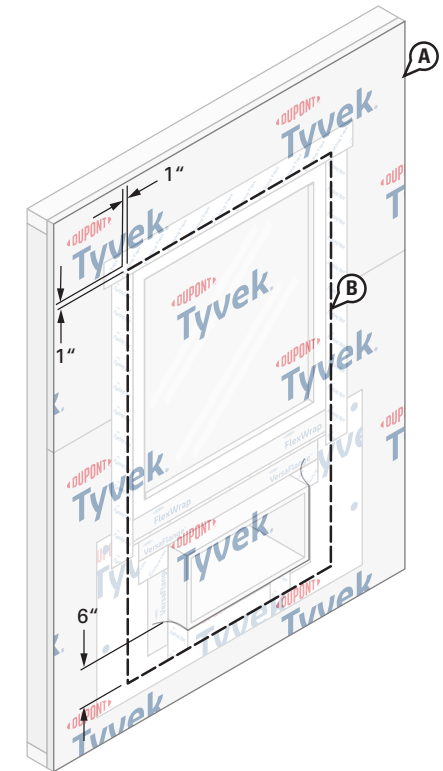
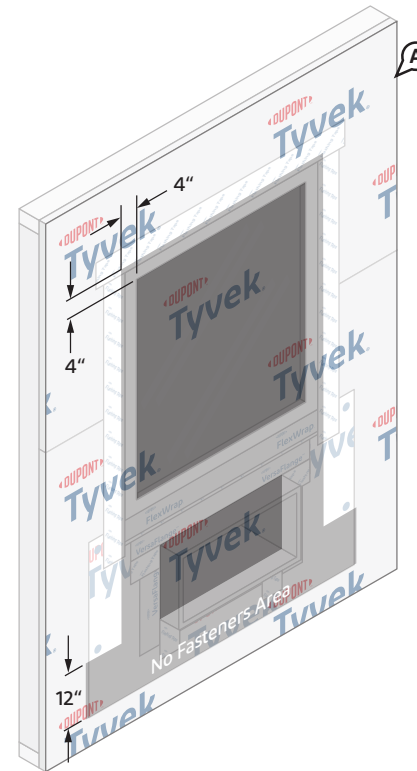
**NOTE:** An integral flanged window is shown. If a non-flanged window is installed above the PTAC unit, follow the applicable section within this guide.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

### Option 2 – PTAC Rough Opening Less than 8” below Window Rough Opening



Interior



#### STEP 11

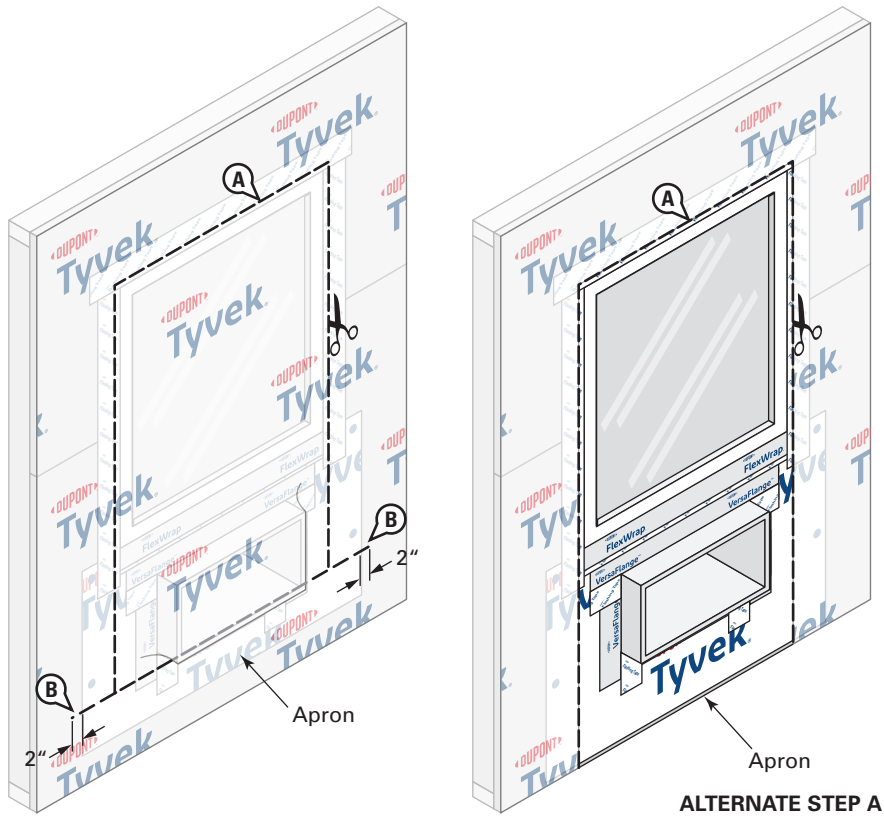
A. After window and PTAC unit are installed, apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around both the window and PTAC openings at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

#### STEP 12

- A. Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the window frame at jambs and head and within 12" of the PTAC frame at sill or location of apron.
- B. Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the window rough opening a 1"–2" from the jambs and head of the window frame. The vertical lines marked at the jambs of the window should continue to 6" below the sill of the PTAC frame as shown above.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner (PTAC) Unit (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

### Option 2 – PTAC Rough Opening Less than 8” below Window Rough Opening



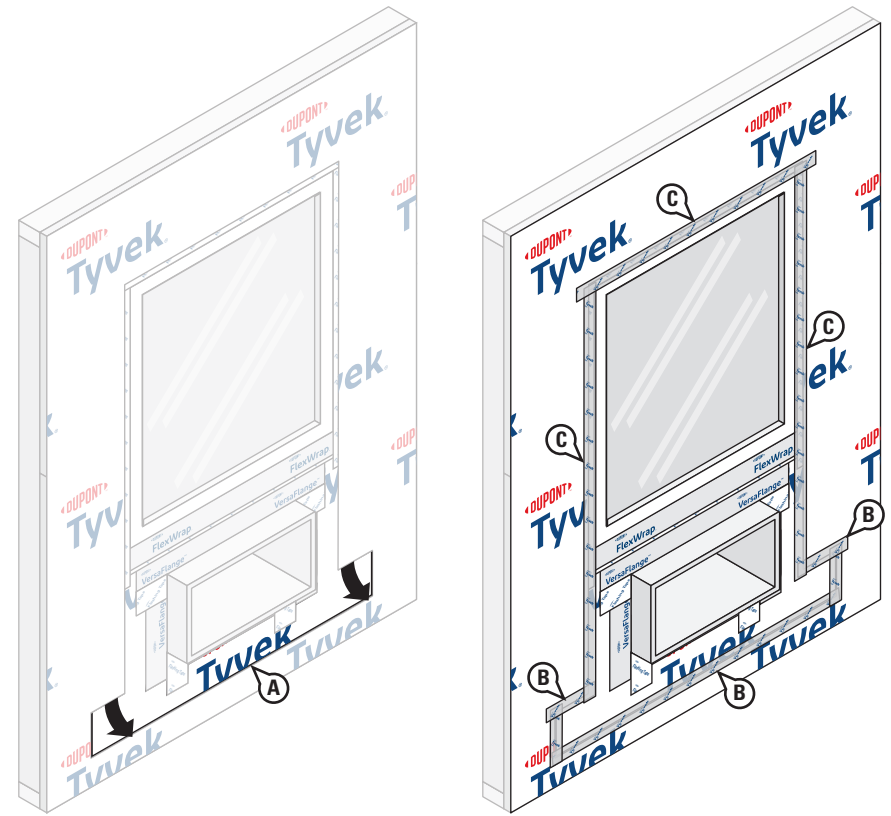
ALTERNATE STEP A

#### STEP 13

A. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window and PTAC. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.

**ALTERNATE STEP A:** If apron extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap apron.

B. Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend a 1”– 2” **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.



#### STEP 14

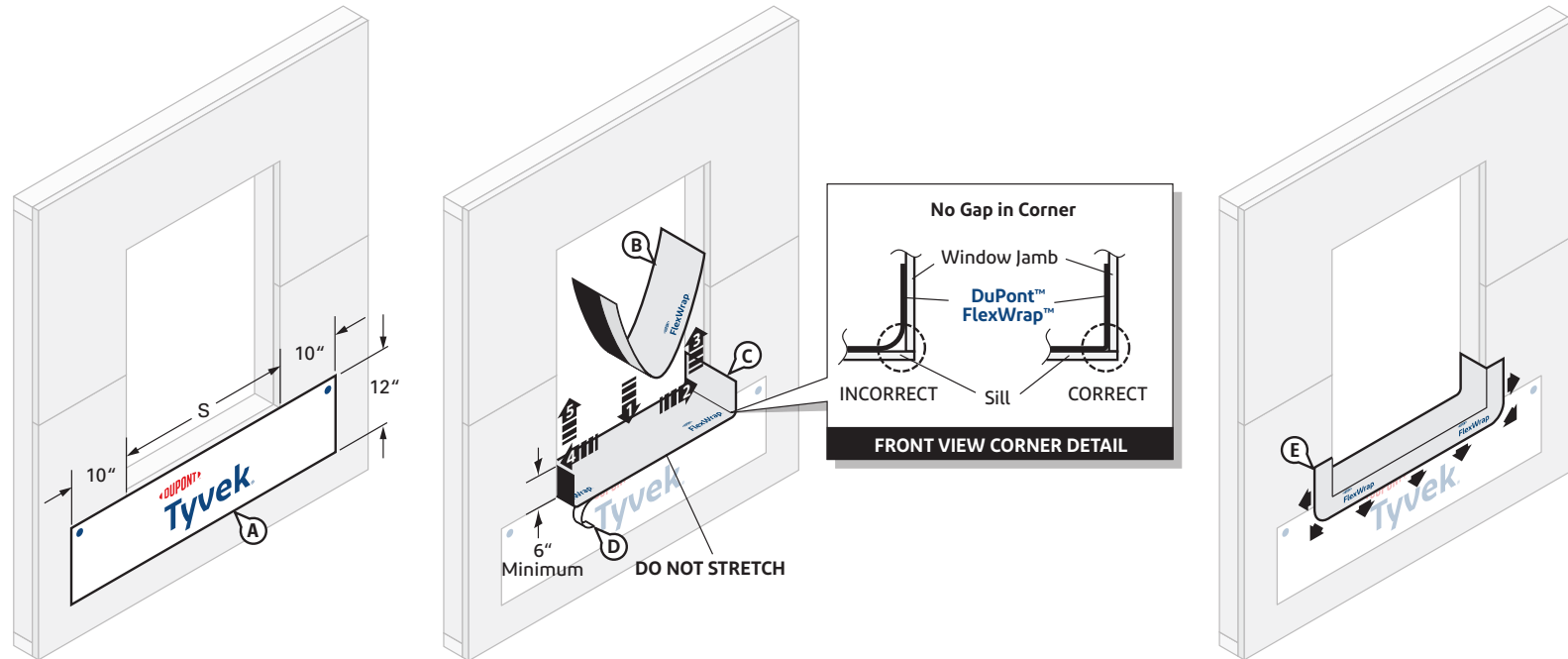
##### Final Step

- Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the bottom of the perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
- Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jambs and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around window and PTAC. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Field Applied Flanged Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

Ensure **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** logo side faces the exterior. This method may also be used for non-integral flanged windows. Use of **VersaFlange™** requires a smooth-framed window for proper adhesion to the frame.

This method applies to the following products: **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, **DuPont™ VersaFlange™**, **DuPont™ FlexWrap™**, and **DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ**



### STEP 1

#### Prepare Tyvek® WRB Apron

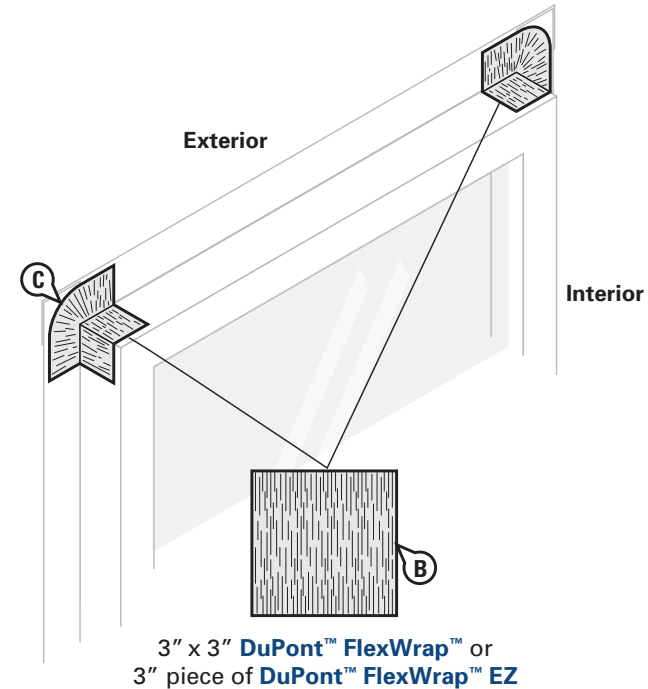
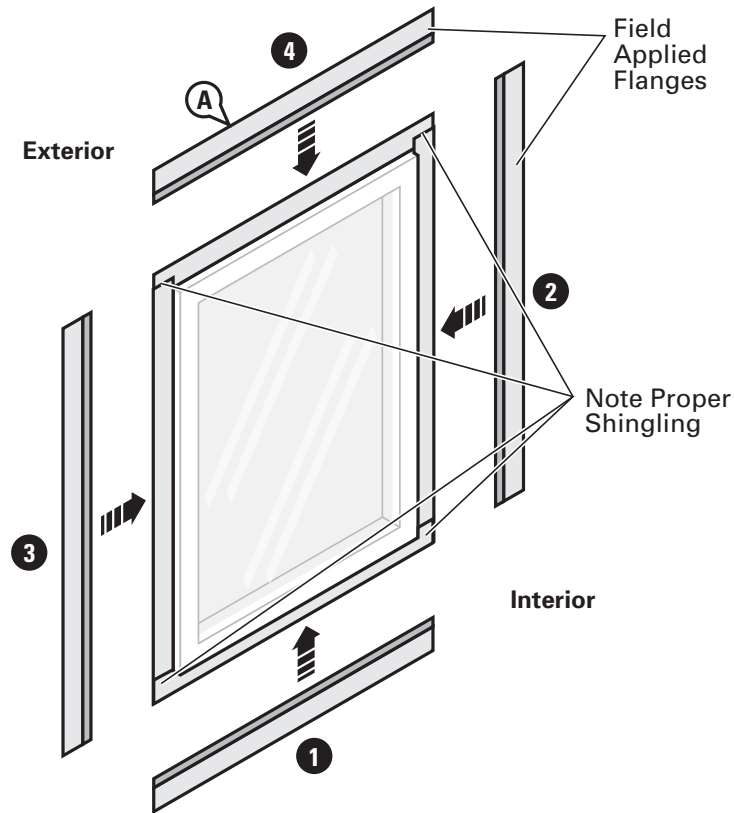
**OPTIONAL:** Refer to the [Alternative Installation Considerations](#) section for guidance for using **DuPont™ Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™** in lieu of a **Tyvek® WRB** apron if desired.

- A. Cut an apron made of **Tyvek® WRB** for attachment under sill of rough opening. Apron should extend at least 10" **BEYOND** the sides of rough opening jambs (or to first stud in open stud construction) and at least 12" below sill of rough opening, or extend far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below. The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall and the bottom of the apron should be left unsecured so it can overlap the **Tyvek® WRB** which will be installed after the window. Avoid placing **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners** where **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** will be installed.

- B. Cut **FlexWrap™** at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening sill (S). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- C. Remove wide piece of release paper. Position on horizontal sill by aligning the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2"– 3" of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6" up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening.
- D. Remove narrow release paper.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Field Applied Flanged Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

E. Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill.



### STEP 2

A. Apply field applied flanges in the correct shingling fashion per manufacturer's installation instructions.

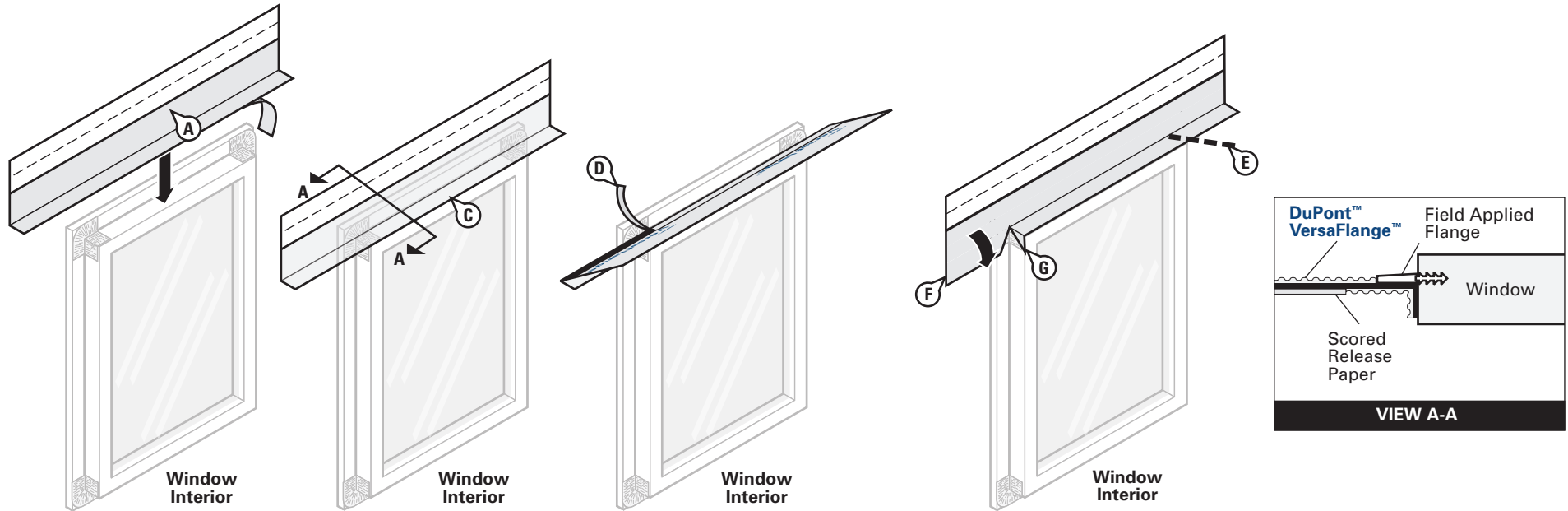
**DO NOT REVERSE SHINGLE.**

B. Cut four 3" x 3" pieces of **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** or four 3" pieces of **DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ**.

C. Apply **FlexWrap™** or **FlexWrap™ EZ** patches to back of flange corners before

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Field Applied Flanged Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

applying DuPont™ VersaFlange™.

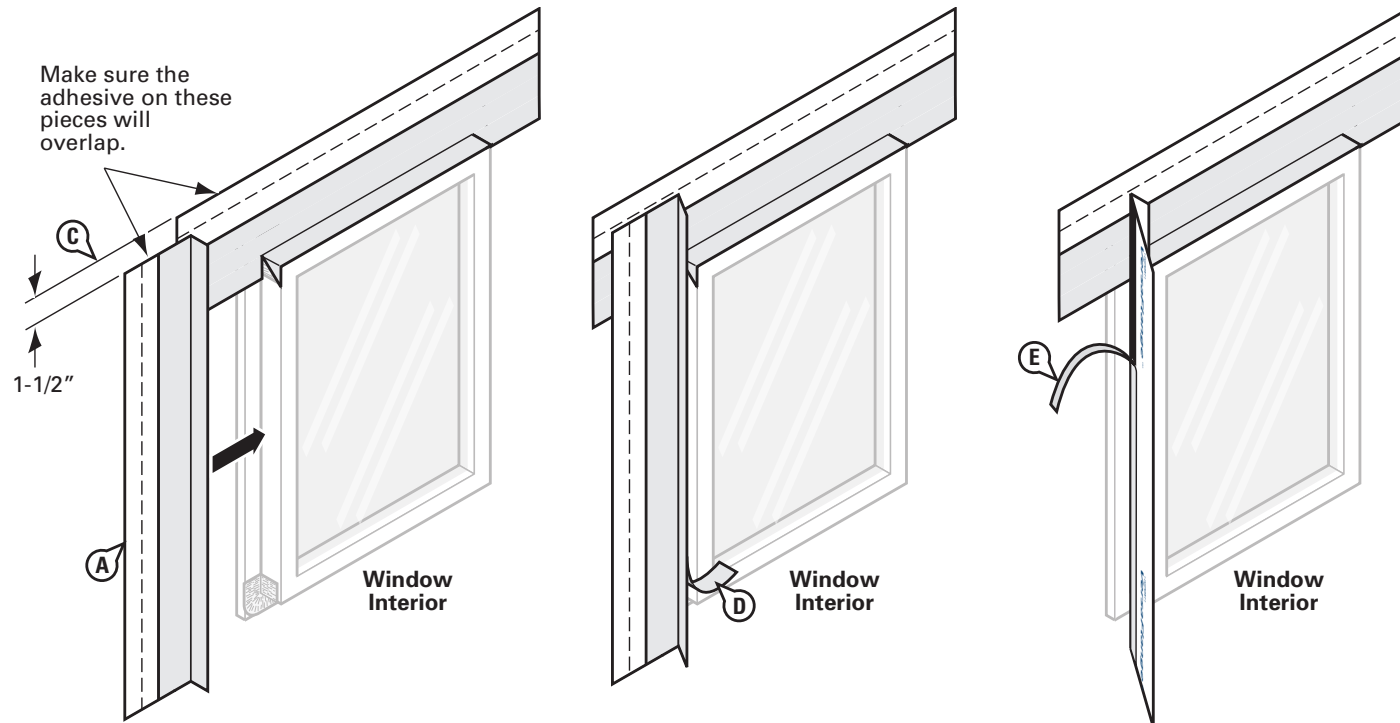


### STEP 3

- A. Prepare head flashing by cutting a piece of DuPont™ VersaFlange™ at least 12" **LONGER** than the head length.
- B. Break the perforated release paper on one side of the head flashing by folding it back and forth upon itself.
- C. Center the VersaFlange™ along the length of the window head and position so that it contacts the window frame and interior side of the flange. Remove the outer release paper and adhere the flashing to the window frame. Use the inner release paper to form a tight seal in the corner.
- D. Remove the inner release paper and adhere the flashing to the back of the flange.
- E. Beginning at the junction of the jamb and the head, and away from the corner, cut VersaFlange™ at a 45° angle.
- F. Fold the newly created flaps down against the flange.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Field Applied Flanged Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

G. Fold remaining head flashing flaps down onto the jamb.



### STEP 4

- Prepare jamb flashing by cutting a piece of **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** at least 6" **LONGER** than the jamb.
- Break the perforated release paper on one side of the jamb flashing by folding it back and forth upon itself.
- Position so that the **VersaFlange™** contacts the window frame and interior side of flange. Ensure that the jamb flashing is positioned 1-1/2" below the top edge of the head flashing. **Jamb flashing adhesive must come in contact with head flashing**

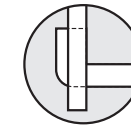
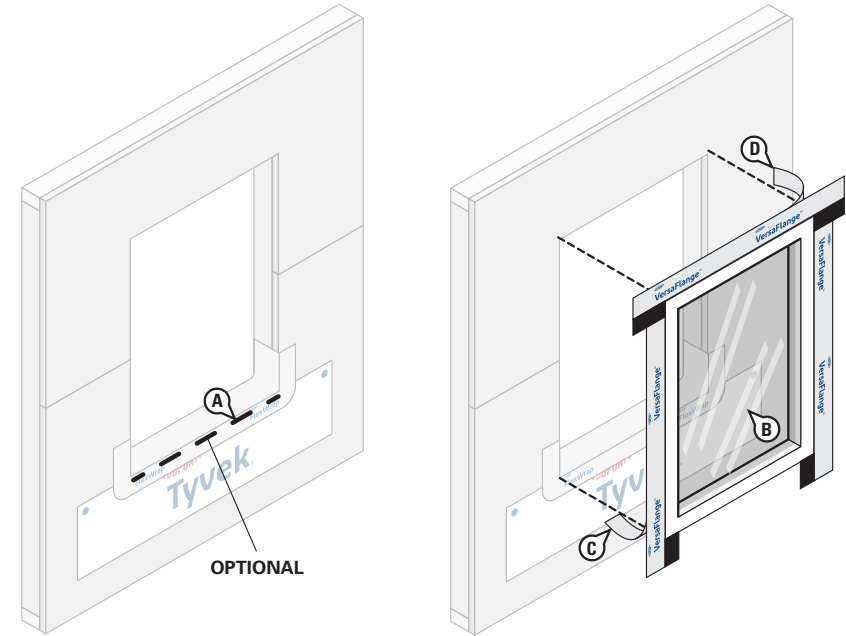
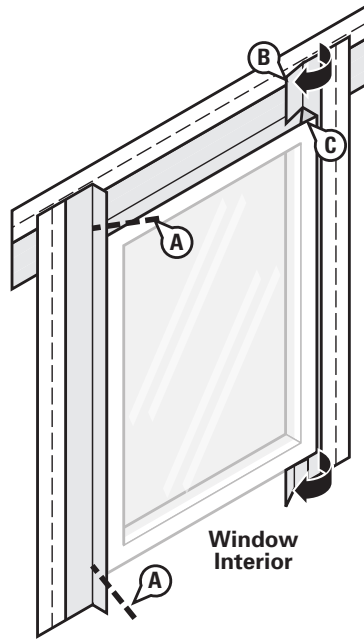
**adhesive and overlap 1".**

- Remove the outer release paper and adhere the flashing to the window frame. Use the inner release paper to form a tight seal in the corner.
- Remove the inner release paper and adhere the flashing to the back of the flange.

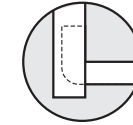
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Field Applied Flanged Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

F. Repeat on opposite jamb.



**INCORRECT**  
DuPont™ FlexWrap™  
reverse flashed



**CORRECT**  
VersaFlange™ fully  
overlaps FlexWrap™

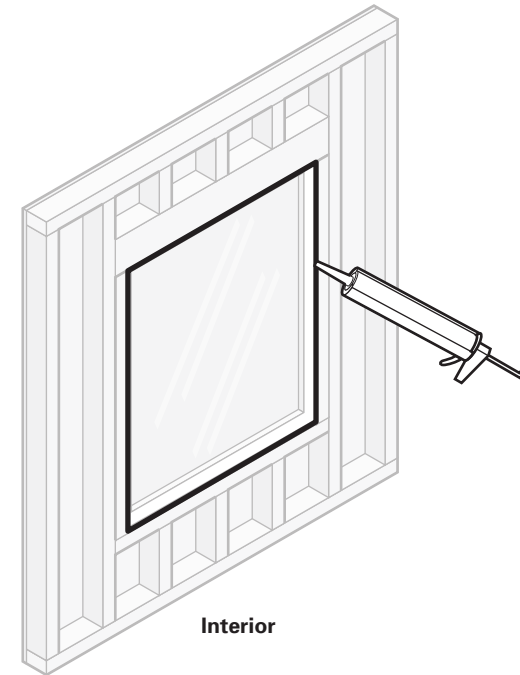
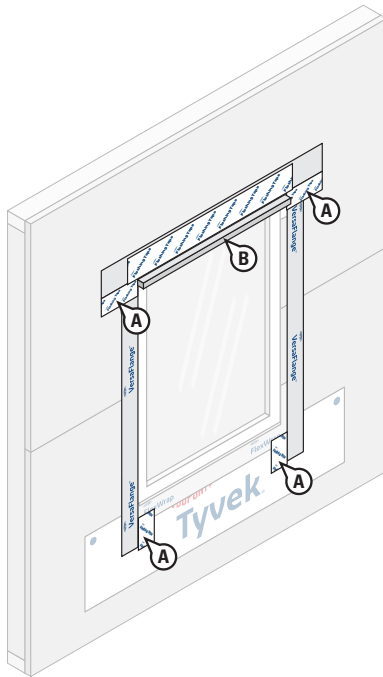
#### STEP 5

- Beginning at the junction of the jamb and head, and away from the corner, cut the **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** at a 45° angle. Repeat the procedure at the junction of the sill and jamb.
- In order to overlap jamb adhesive to the head flashing adhesive, temporarily pull back release liner on the head flashing. Fold cut jamb flashing parallel to the window frame so that the jamb flashing lies flat onto the head flashing. Fold the head flashing release liner back down to protect any remaining exposed butyl along the head flashing prior to installation of the window.
- Fold remaining jamb flashing flaps down at all corners and adhere to the window frame.

#### STEP 6

- OPTIONAL:** Apply a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) along the sill as shown above. **To allow for drainage, do not apply continuous sealant bead along sill.** Ensure a minimum 2" wide drainage gap in the sealant bead within 4" from **each corner** of the jamb-sill interface. Continue applying sealant along the sill with additional 2" wide (min.) drainage gaps for every 6"– 12" (on center) of sill width.
- Install window according to manufacturer's installation instructions.
- Remove the remaining release paper from the **VersaFlange™** jamb flashing and press firmly to adhere the butyl adhesive to the exterior sheathing or framing members. **Do not reverse shingle.** **VersaFlange™** must overlap **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** and adhere to the substrate.
- Remove the release paper at the head and adhere the **VersaFlange™** to the exterior sheathing or framing members.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Field Applied Flanged Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



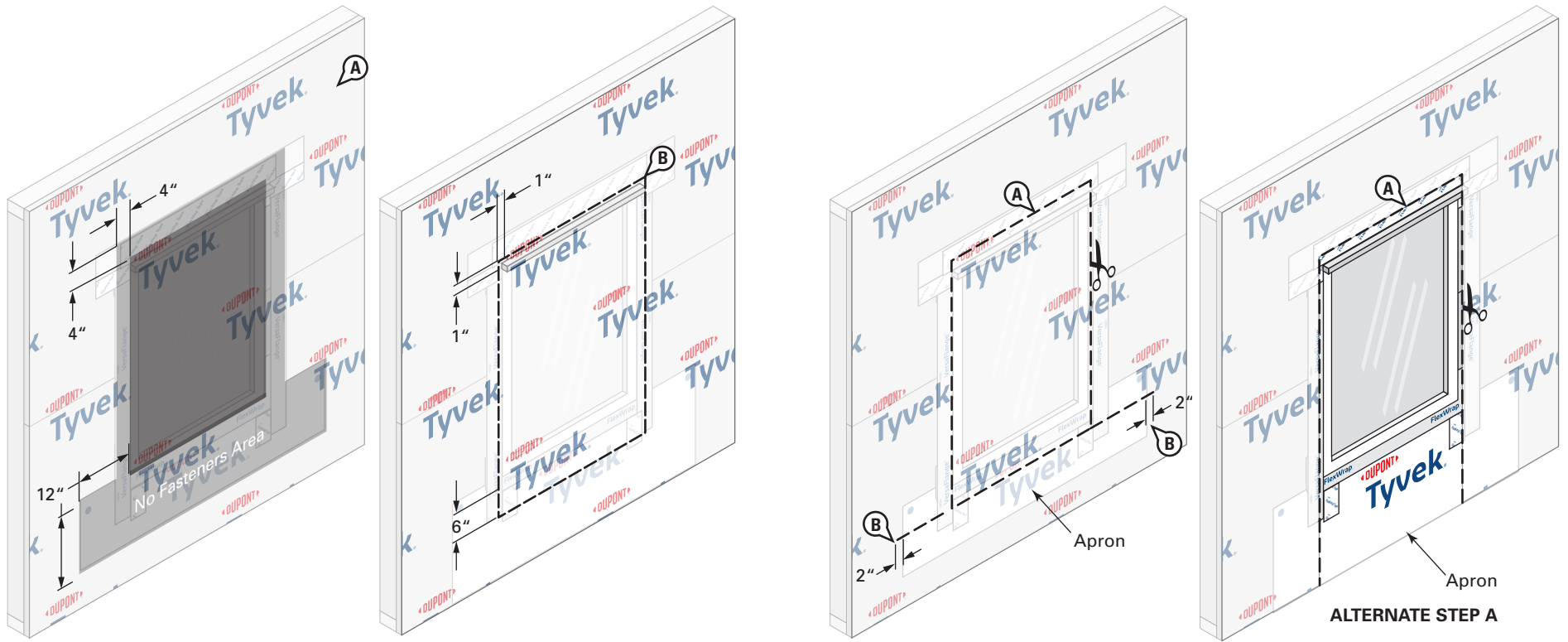
### STEP 7

- A. **OPTIONAL:** Cover exposed butyl with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, or **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.
- B. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the window installation **BEFORE** the **Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 2](#).

### STEP 8

Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the window opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

**Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Field Applied Flanged Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)**



**STEP 9**

- A. Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the window frame at jambs and head and within 12" of the window frame at sill or location of apron.
- B. Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough opening a minimum of 1" from the jambs and head of the window frame, and 6" below the sill of the window frame.

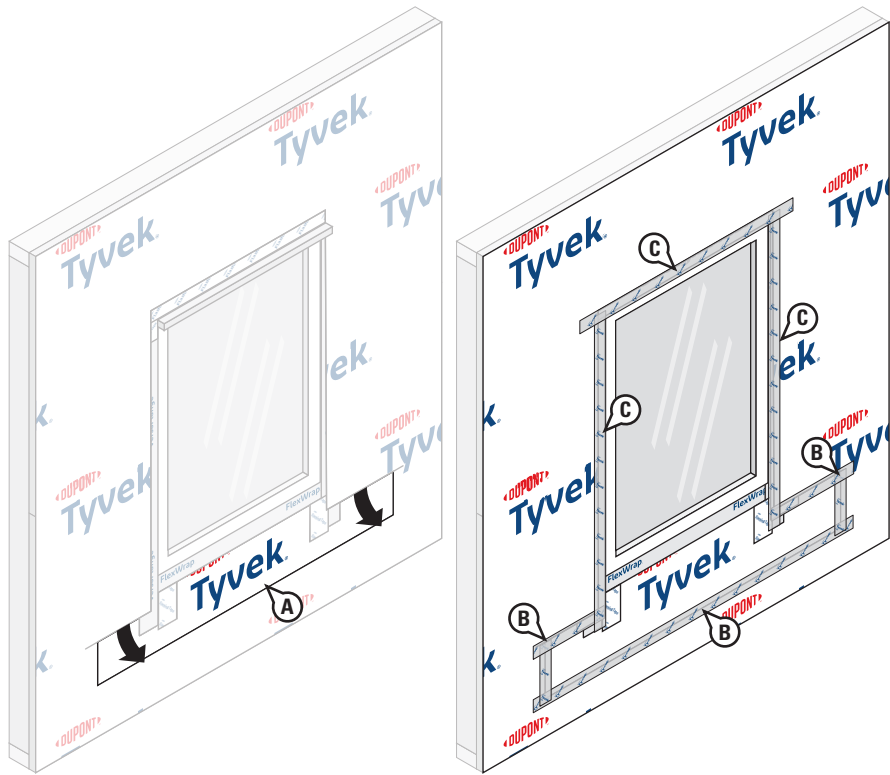
**STEP 10**

- A. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.

**ALTERNATE STEP A:** If apron extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap apron.

- B. Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend 1"- 2" **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Field Applied Flanged Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



### STEP 11

#### Final Step

- A. Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- B. Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
- C. Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jambs and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around window. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used.

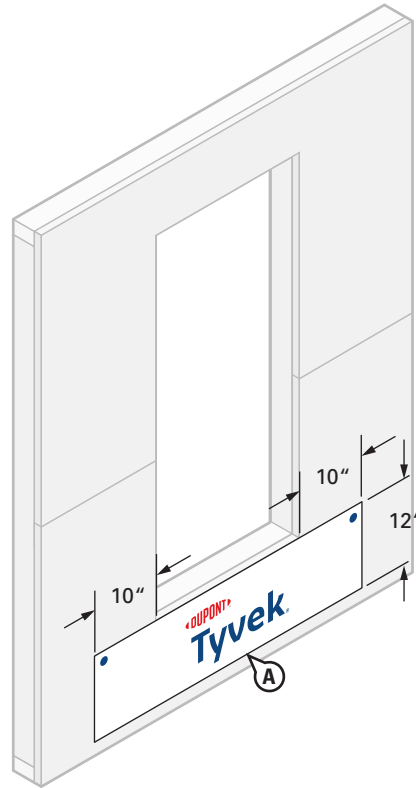
**OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap **AFTER** the **Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 3](#).

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Field Applied Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

This method may also be used for non-integral flanged doors. Doors that have a nailing fin or flange that is not continuous around the perimeter of the door or the fin/flange is not a direct extrusion of the frame (e.g. field-applied flanges) is considered a non-integral flanged unit. Use of DuPont™ VersaFlange™ requires a smooth-framed door for proper adhesion to the frame.

This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, DuPont™ VersaFlange™, DuPont™ FlexWrap™, and DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ



## STEP 1

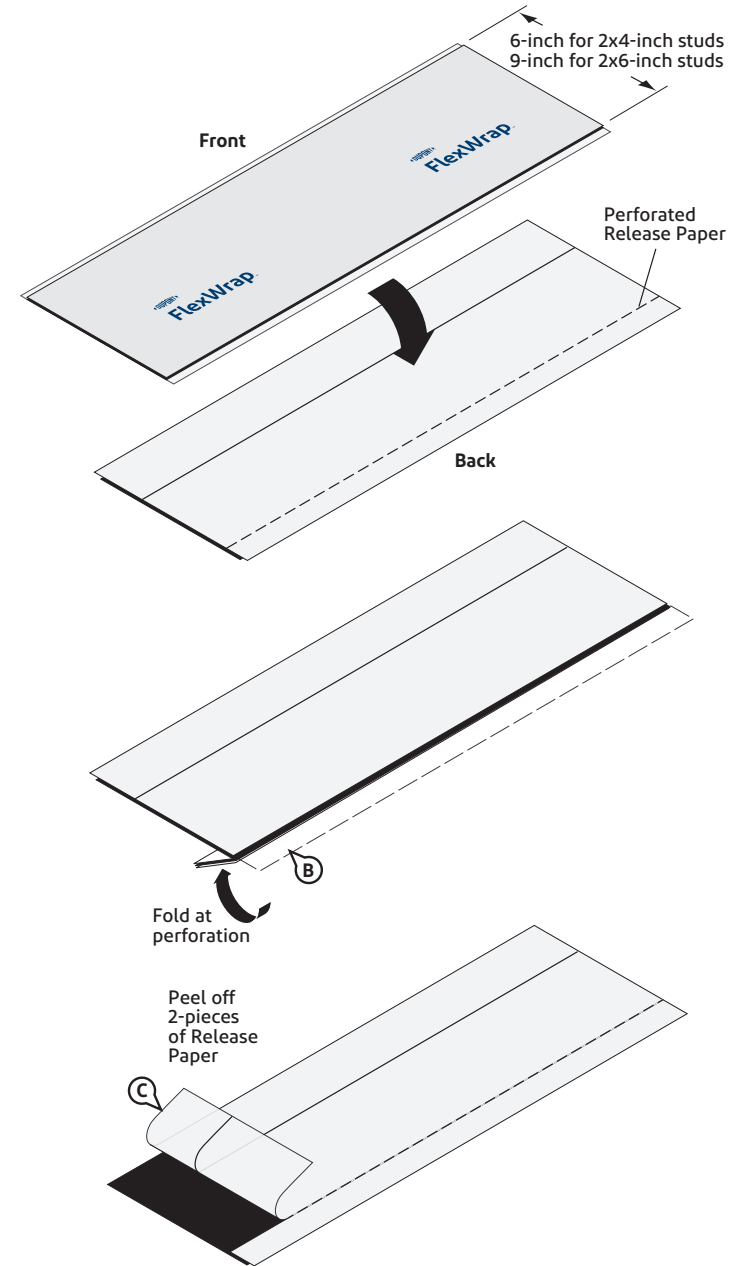
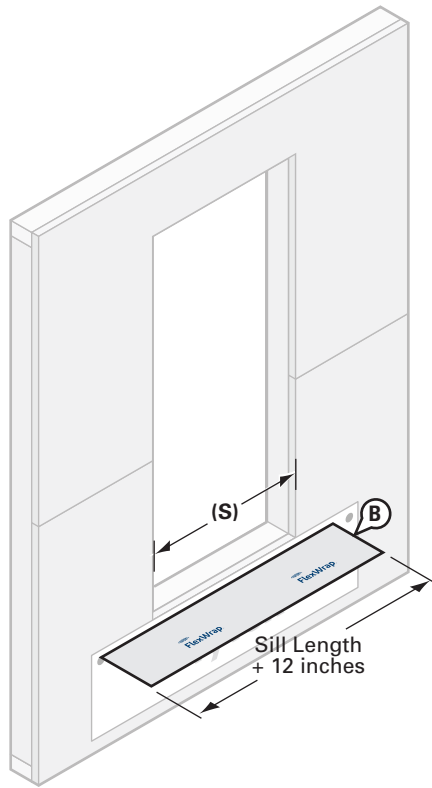
### Prepare Tyvek® WRB Apron

**OPTIONAL:** Refer to the [Alternative Installation Considerations](#) section for guidance for using DuPont™ Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™ in lieu of a Tyvek® WRB apron if desired.

- A. Cut an apron made of Tyvek® WRB for attachment under sill of rough opening. Apron should extend at least 10" BEYOND the sides of rough opening jambs (or to first stud in open stud construction) and at least 12" below sill of rough opening, or extend far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the Tyvek® WRB below. The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall and the bottom of the apron should be left unsecured so it can overlap the Tyvek® WRB which will be installed after the door. Avoid placing DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners or recommended fasteners where DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products will be installed.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Field Applied Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

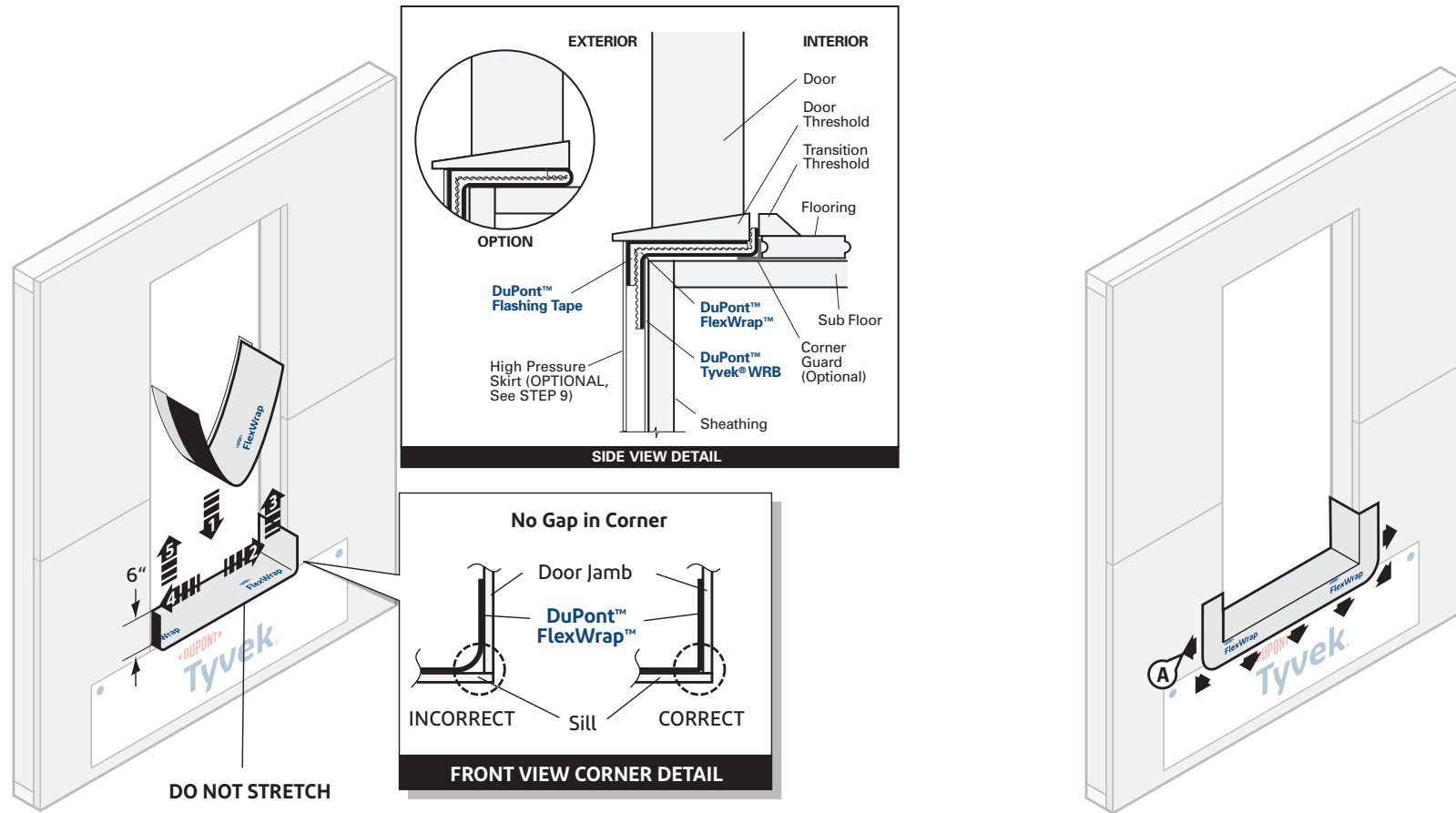


## STEP 2

### Preparation of Sill Flashing

- Cut a piece of 9" wide DuPont™ FlexWrap™ at least 12" LONGER than the width of the sill (S). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the door frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- 9" FlexWrap™ has perforated release paper to help with the formation of a back dam. To ensure that the perforation tears cleanly, fold the perforation 180° and crease the flashing.
- Remove the two widest pieces of release paper leaving the narrowest release paper on the flashing. When the finished floor is applied, the release paper can be removed and the back dam can be completed.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Field Applied Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



### STEP 3

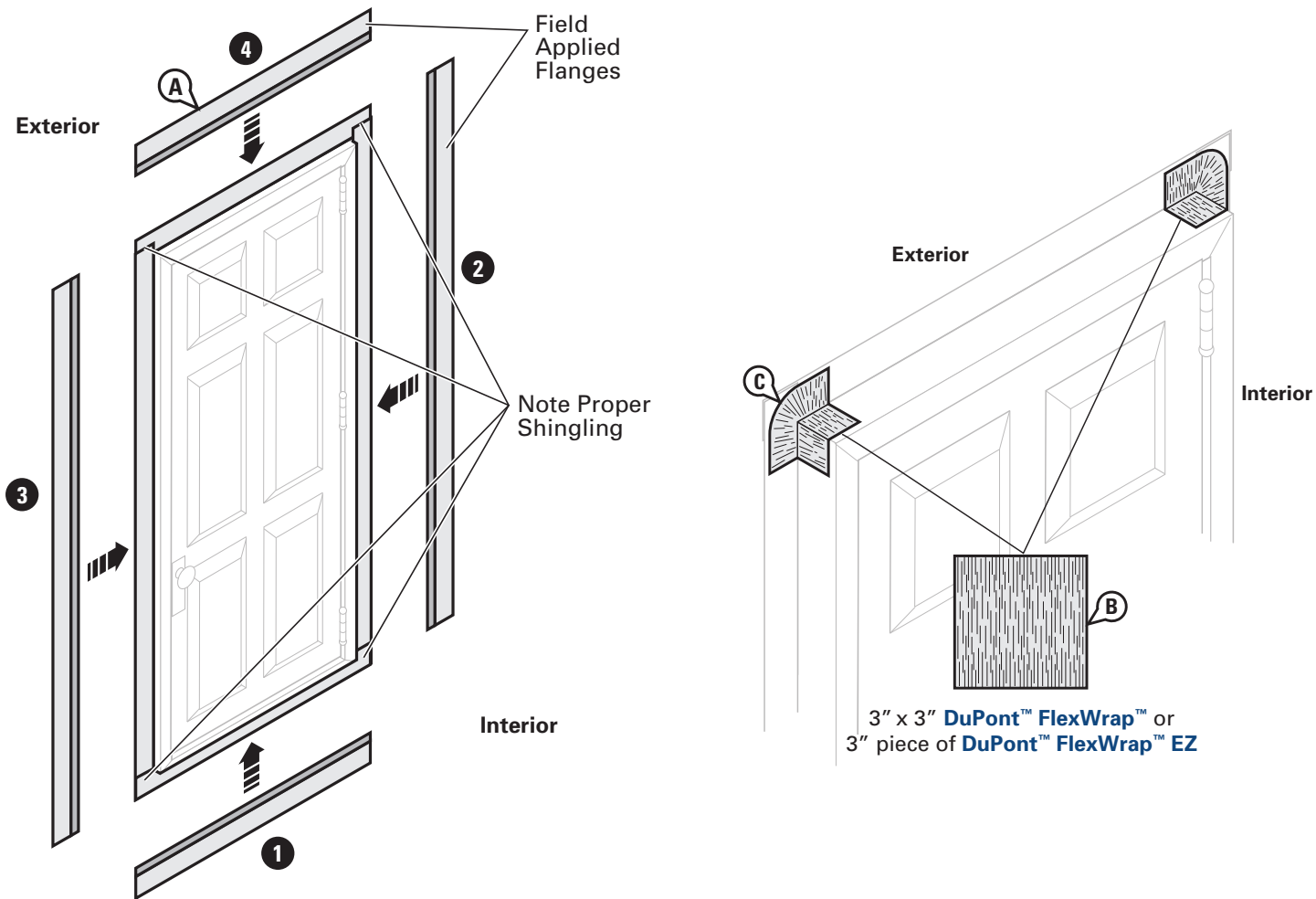
Position the sill flashing as indicated so the section with the release paper still attached extends past the door threshold on the inside. Ensure that 2"– 3" of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6" up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening. When the narrow release paper is removed, the remaining section of **FlexWrap™** can be used to form a back dam.

**OPTIONAL: Create back dam by folding back narrow section of FlexWrap™.** Some flooring cannot accommodate a back dam. In that case fold the back dam on top of **FlexWrap™** in the sill. The door will be installed on top of the fold to create a back dam (see Side View Detail above).

### STEP 4

A. Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Field Applied Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



### STEP 5

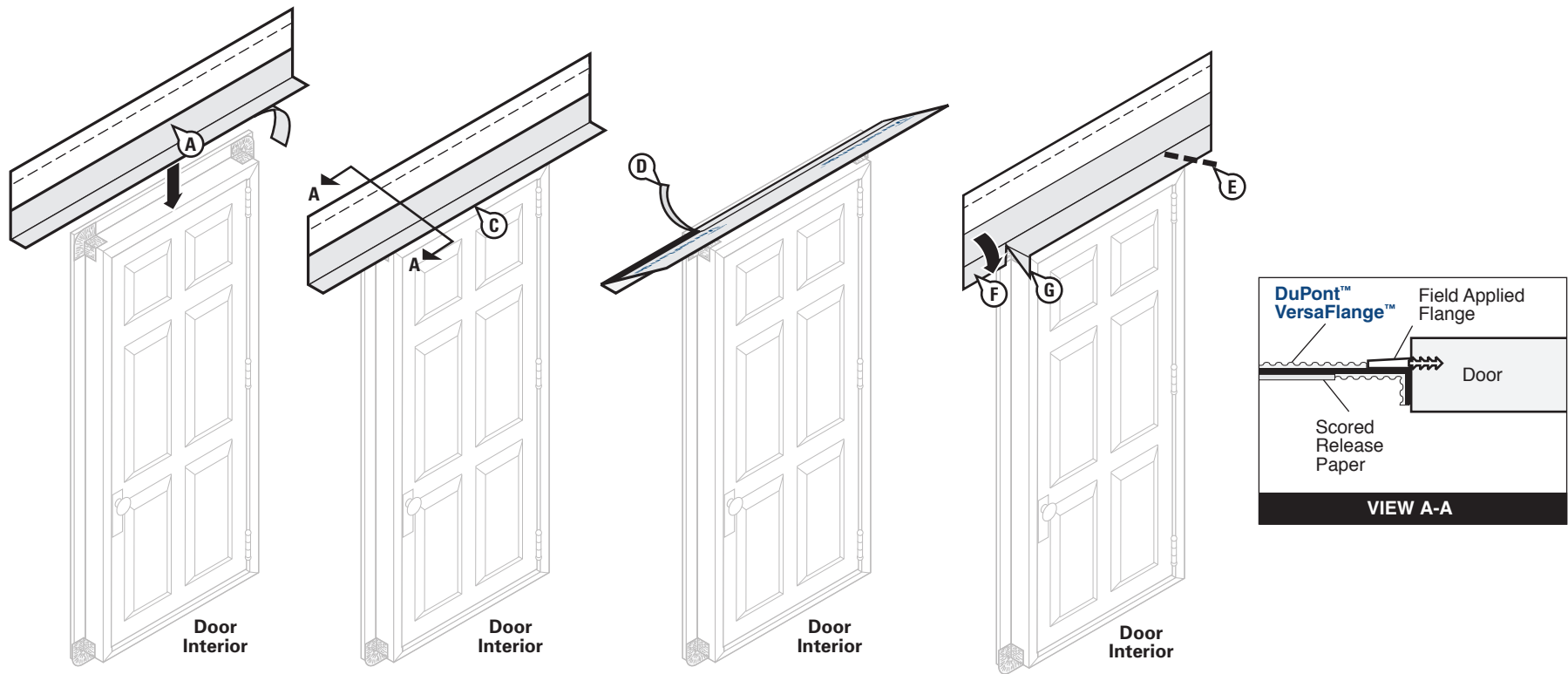
A. Apply field applied flanges in the correct shingling fashion per manufacturer's installation instructions.

**DO NOT REVERSE SHINGLE.**

B. Cut four 3" x 3" pieces of **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** or four 3" pieces of **DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ**.

C. Apply **FlexWrap™** or **FlexWrap™ EZ** patches to back of flange corners before applying **DuPont™ VersaFlange™**.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Field Applied Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

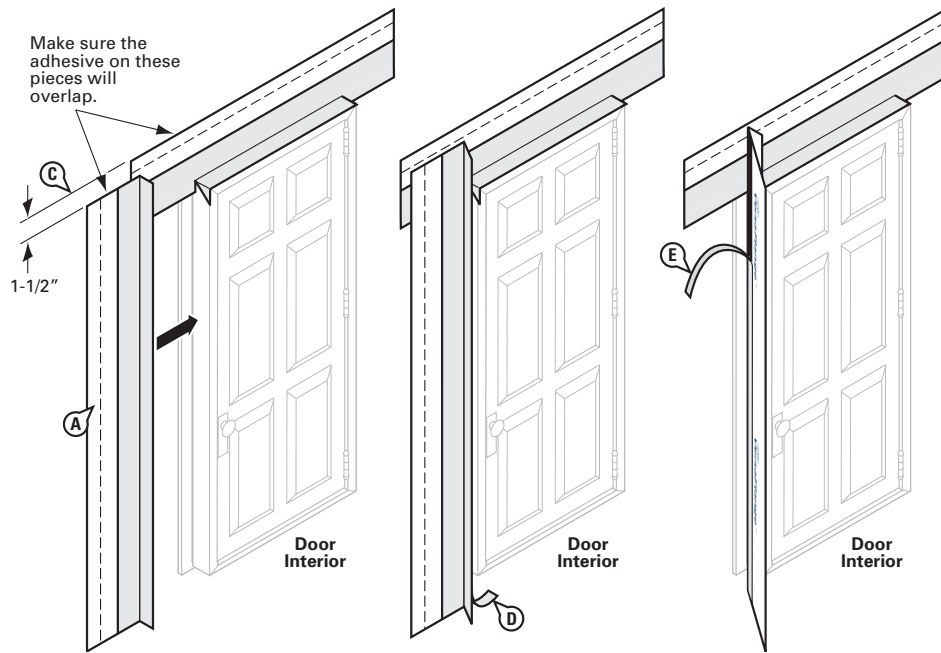


### STEP 6

- A. Prepare head flashing by cutting a piece of **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** at least 12" **LONGER** than the head length.
- B. Break the scored release paper on one edge of the head flashing by folding it back and forth upon itself.
- C. Center the **VersaFlange™** along the length of the door head and position so that it contacts the door frame and interior side of the flange. Remove the outer release paper and adhere the flashing to the door frame. Use the inner release paper to form a tight seal in the corner.
- D. Remove the inner release paper and adhere the flashing to the back of the flange.
- E. Beginning at the junction of the jamb and the head, and away from the corner, cut the **VersaFlange™** at a 45° angle.
- F. Fold the newly created flashing flap down flat against the flange.
- G. Fold remaining head flashing flaps down onto the jamb frame.

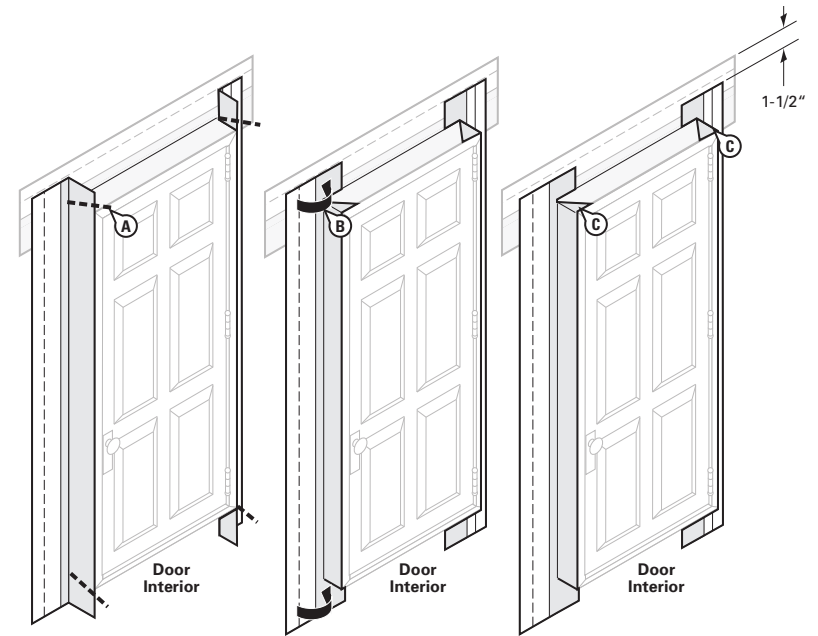
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Field Applied Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



#### STEP 7

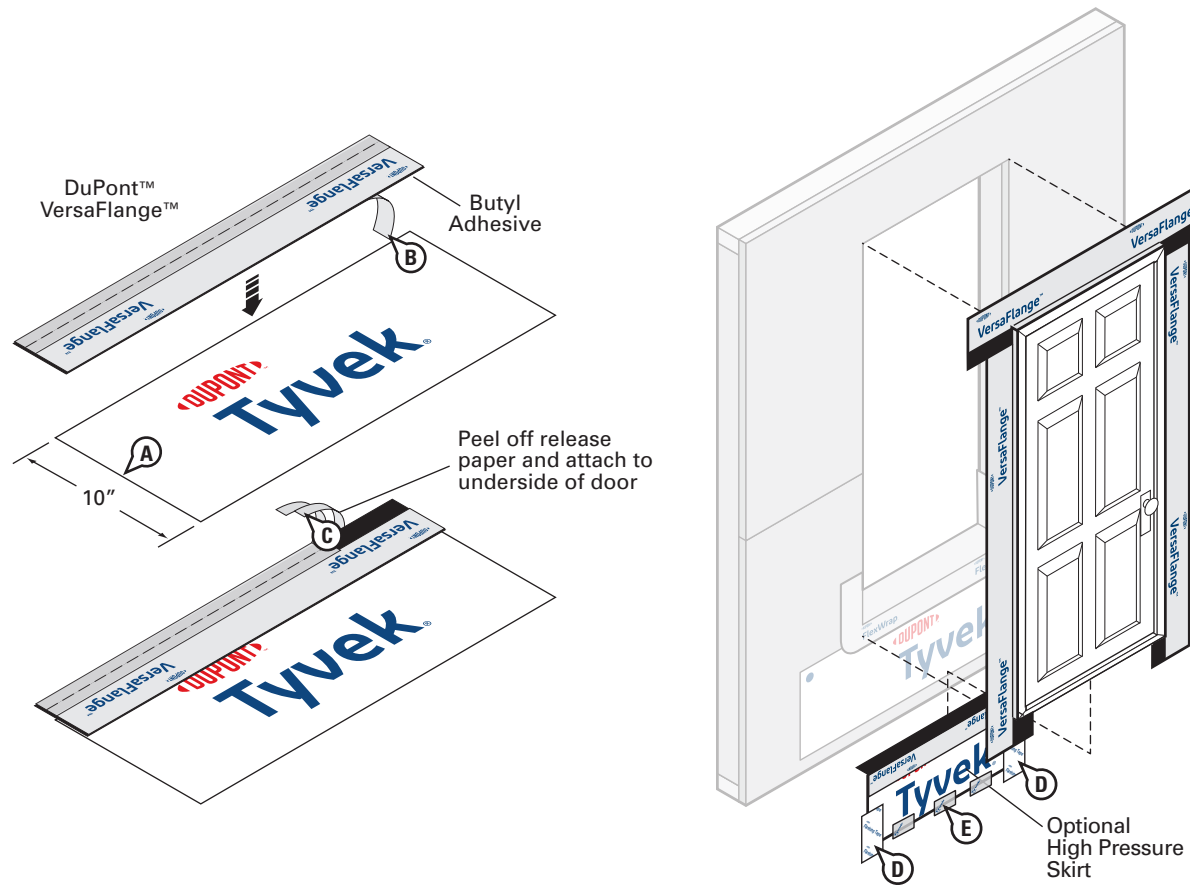
- Prepare jamb flashing by cutting a piece of DuPont™ VersaFlange™ at least 6" **LONGER** than the jamb.
- Break the perforated release paper on one side of the jamb flashing by folding it back and forth upon itself.
- Position so that VersaFlange™ contacts the door frame and interior side of the flange. Ensure that the jamb flashing is positioned 1-1/2" below the top edge of the head flashing. **Jamb flashing adhesive must come in contact with head flashing adhesive by 1"**.
- Remove the outer release paper and adhere the flashing to the door frame. Use the inner release paper to form a tight seal in the corner.
- Remove the inner release paper and adhere the flashing to the back of the flange.
- Repeat on opposite jamb.



#### STEP 8

- Beginning at the junction of the jamb and head, and away from the corner, cut the VersaFlange™ at a 45° angle. Repeat the procedure at the junction of the sill and jamb.
- In order to overlap jamb adhesive to the head flashing adhesive, temporarily pull back release liner on the head flashing. Fold cut jamb flashing parallel to the door frame so that the jamb flashing lies flat onto the head flashing. Fold the head flashing release liner back down to protect any remaining exposed butyl along the head flashing prior to installation of the door.
- Fold remaining jamb flashing flaps down at all corners and adhere to the door frame.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Field Applied Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

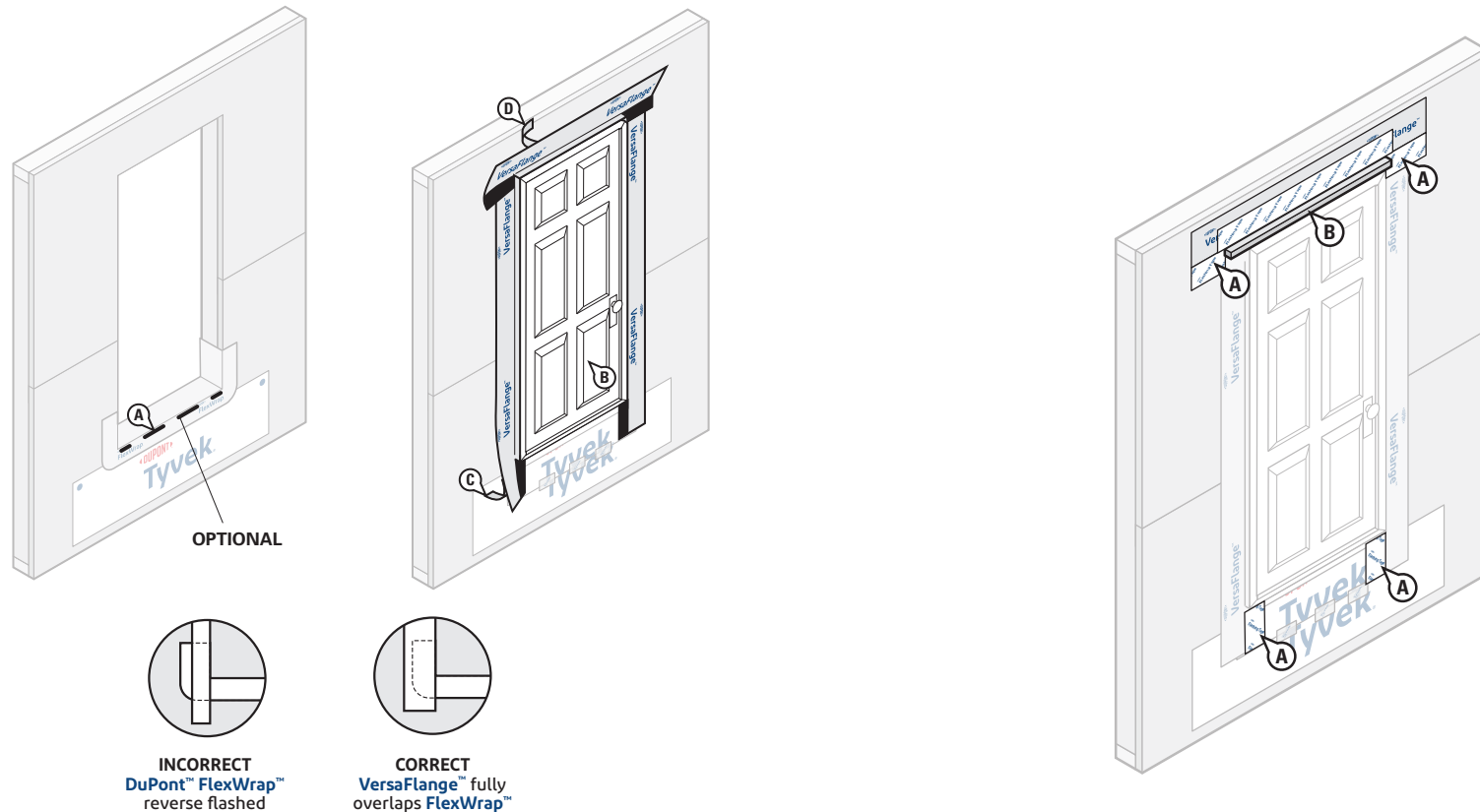


### STEP 9 (OPTIONAL) – HIGH PRESSURE SKIRT

For extreme/coastal exposures, installation of a high-pressure skirt is recommended to help prevent water intrusion at the sill or threshold.

- Create the high pressure skirt by cutting a piece of **Tyvek® WRB** 1" wider than the width of door opening and approximately 10" in height.
- Cut a piece of **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** to the same width of skirt. Remove release paper from one side of the **VersaFlange™** and adhere to **Tyvek® WRB**. The skirt may be made with the **VersaFlange™**, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**.
- Remove the release paper from the other side of the **VersaFlange™** and adhere the butyl adhesive at the sill skirt to the underside of the door threshold behind the jamb flashing.
- After installation of door in Step 10, secure edges of the optional skirt with two 4" pieces of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, or **StraightFlash™**.
- Tape the bottom of the optional skirt to allow for drainage and to minimize wind damage during construction.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Field Applied Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



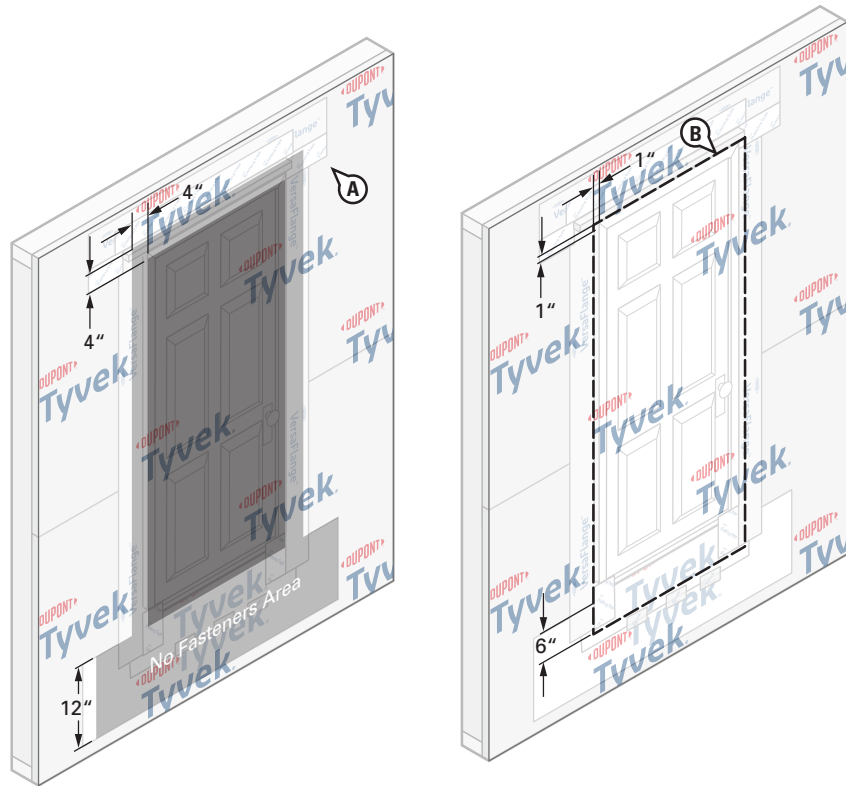
### STEP 10

- OPTIONAL:** Apply a [chemically-compatible sealant](#), along the sill as shown above. **To allow for drainage, do not apply continuous sealant bead along sill.** Ensure a minimum 2" wide drainage gap in the sealant bead within 4" from **each corner** of the jamb-sill interface. Continue applying sealant along the sill with additional 2" wide (min.) drainage gaps for every 6"– 12" (on center) of sill width.
- Install door according to manufacturer's installation instructions.
- Remove the remaining release paper from the **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** jamb flashing and press firmly to adhere the butyl adhesive to the exterior sheathing or framing members. **Do not reverse shingle. VersaFlange™** must overlap **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** and adhere to the substrate.
- Remove the release paper at the head and adhere the **VersaFlange™** to the exterior sheathing or framing members.

### STEP 11

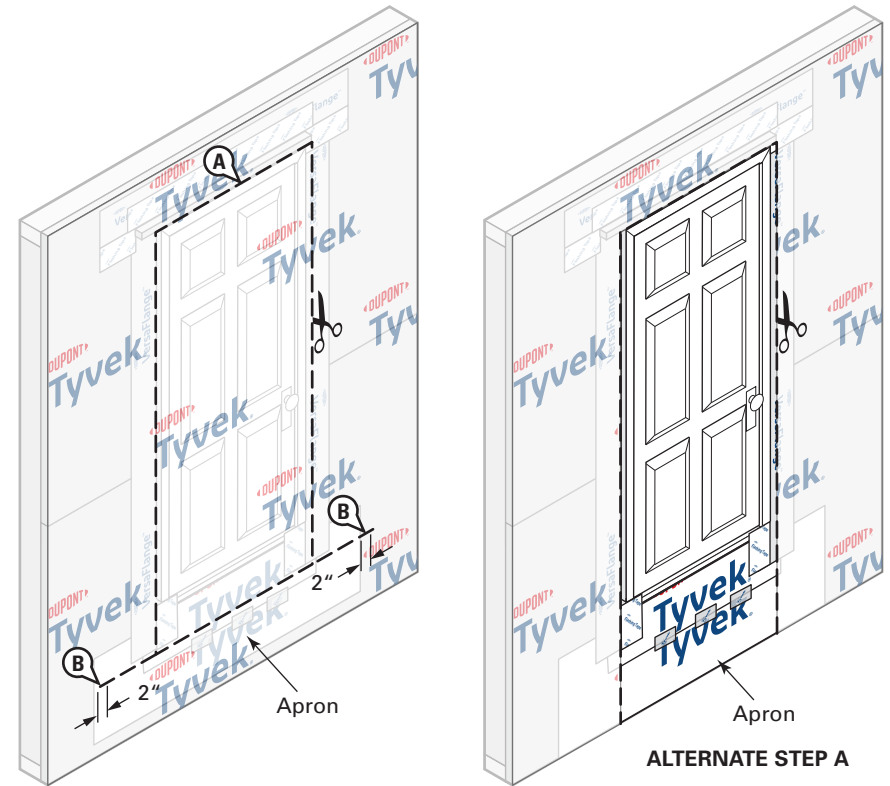
- OPTIONAL:** Cover exposed butyl with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, or **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.
- OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the door installation BEFORE the **Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 2](#).

**Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Field Applied Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)**



**STEP 12**

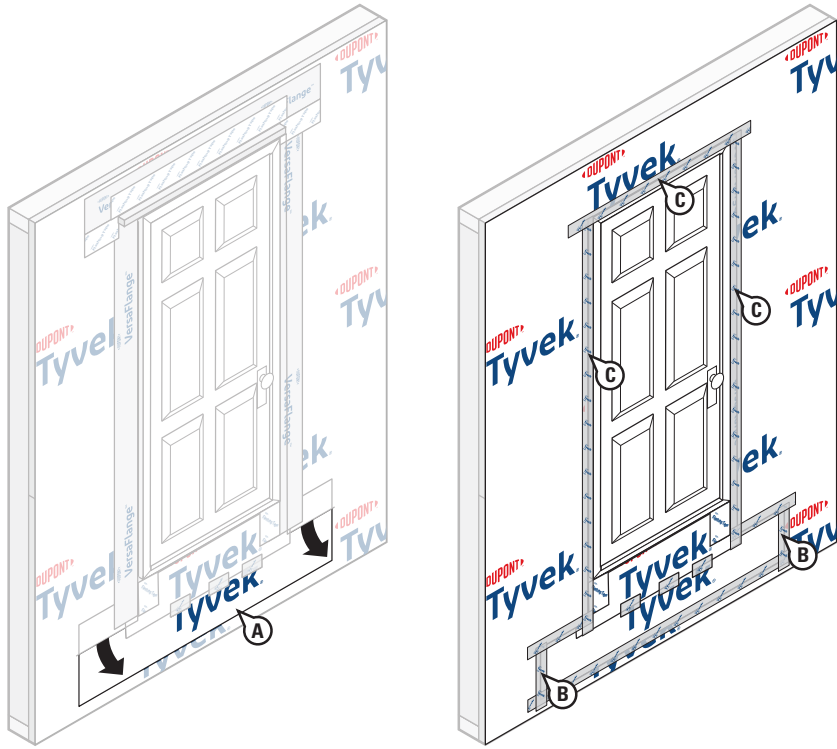
- A. Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the door frame at jambs and head and within 12" of the door frame at sill or location of apron.
- B. Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough opening a minimum of 1" from the jambs and head of the door frame, and 6" below the sill of the door frame.



**STEP 13**

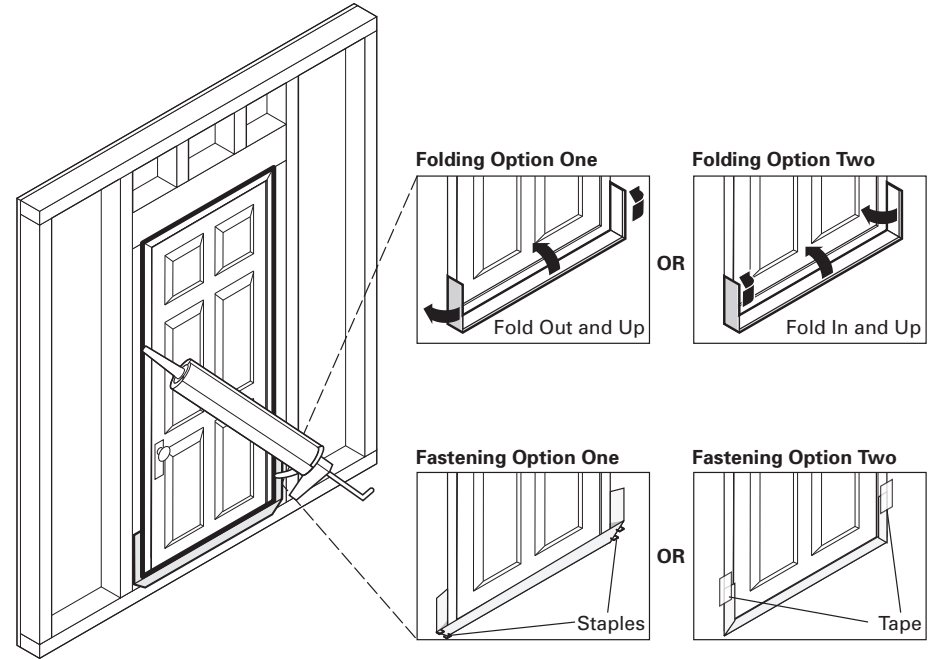
- A. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose door. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.
- ALTERNATE STEP A:** If apron extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap apron.
- B. Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend 1"– 2" **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Field Applied Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



### STEP 14

- Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
- Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jambs and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around door. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap **AFTER** the **Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 3](#).



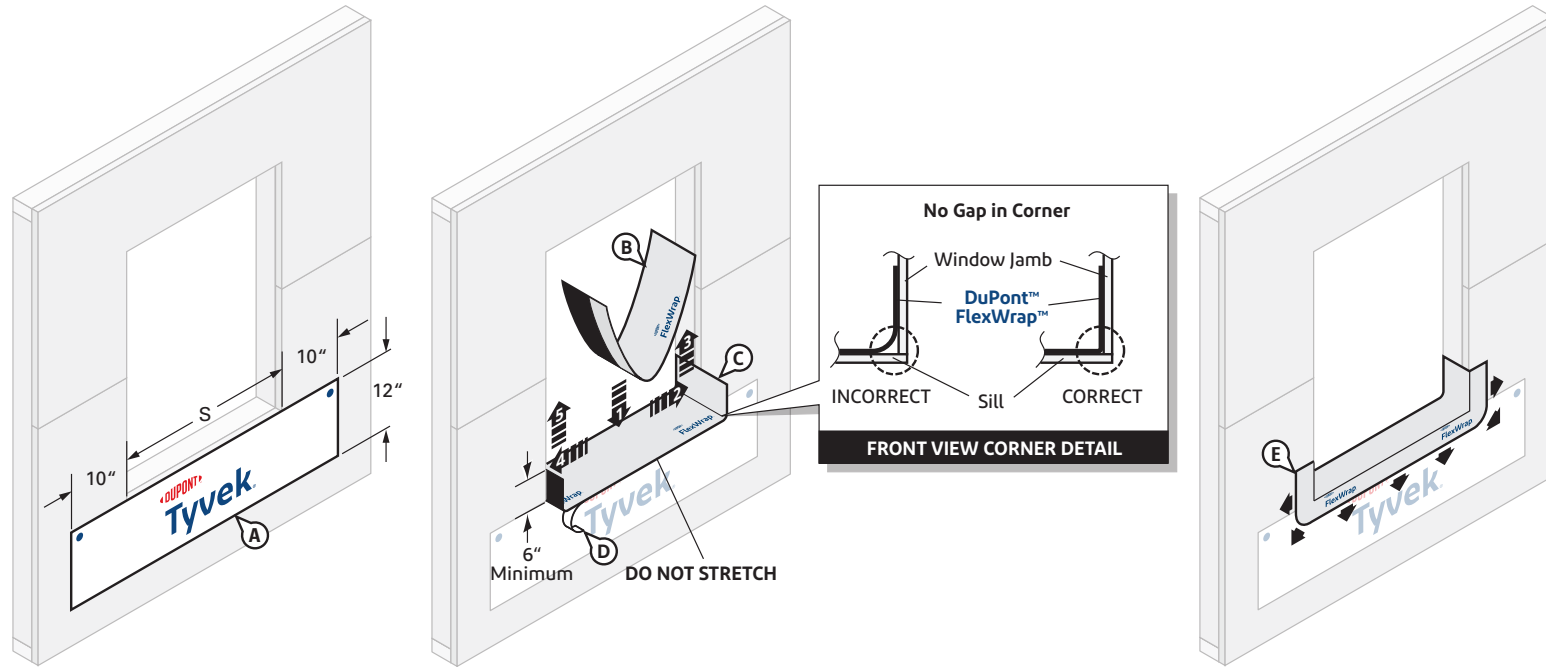
### STEP 15

#### Final Step

- When the interior flooring is ready to install, remove release paper and use Folding Option One or Two (shown above) to form back dam.
- Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the door opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Brick Mold Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, DuPont™ VersaFlange™, and DuPont™ FlexWrap™



### STEP 1

#### Prepare Tyvek® WRB Apron

**OPTIONAL:** Refer to the [Alternative Installation Considerations](#) section for guidance for using DuPont™ Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™ in lieu of a Tyvek® WRB apron if desired.

A. Cut an apron made of Tyvek® WRB for attachment under sill of rough opening. Apron should extend at least 10" **BEYOND** the sides of rough opening jambs (or to first stud in open stud construction) and at least 12" below sill of rough opening, or extend far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the Tyvek® WRB below. The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall and the bottom of the apron should be left unsecured so it can overlap the Tyvek® WRB which will be installed after the window. Avoid placing DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners where DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products will be installed.

B. Cut FlexWrap™ at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening (S). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.

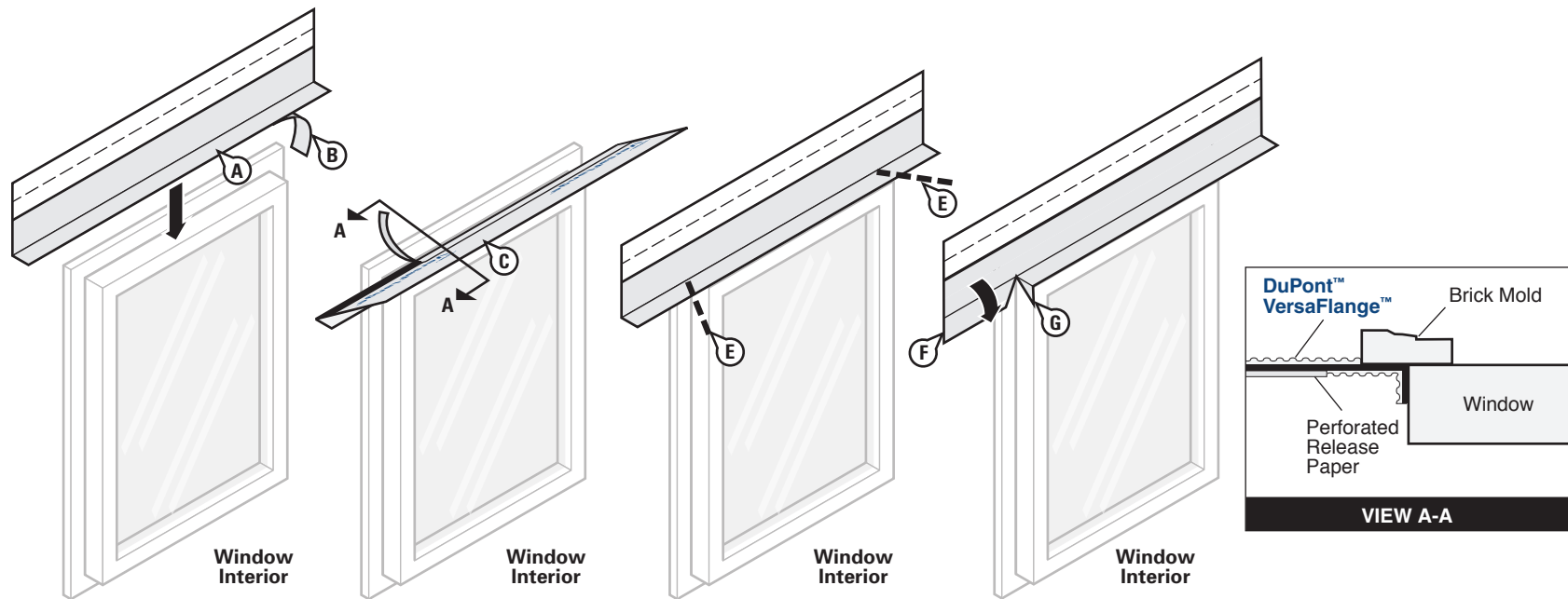
C. Remove wide piece of release paper. Position on horizontal sill by aligning the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2"– 3" of the FlexWrap™ will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6" up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening.

D. Remove narrow release paper.

E. Fan out the FlexWrap™ at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Brick Mold Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

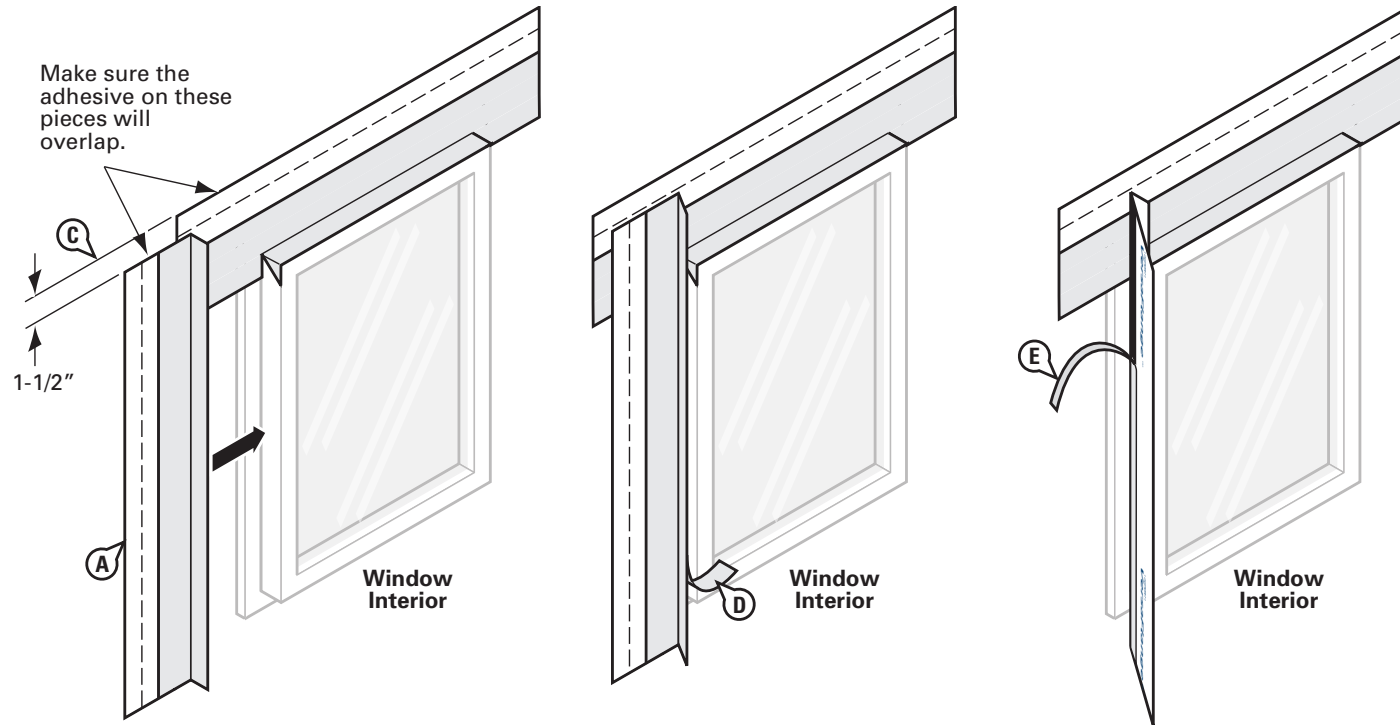


## STEP 2

- Prepare head flashing by cutting a piece of **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** at least 12" **LONGER** than the head length.
- Break the perforated release paper on one side of the head flashing by folding it back and forth upon itself.
- Center the **VersaFlange™** along the length of the window head and position so that it contacts the window frame and interior side of the brick mold. Remove the outer release paper and adhere the flashing to the window frame. Use the inner release paper to form a tight seal in the corner.
- Remove the inner release paper and adhere the flashing to the back of the brick mold.
- Beginning at the junction of the jamb and the head, and away from the corner, cut **VersaFlange™** at a 45° angle.
- Fold the newly created flaps down against the brick mold.
- Fold remaining head flashing flaps down onto the jamb.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Brick Mold Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

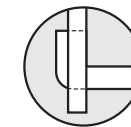
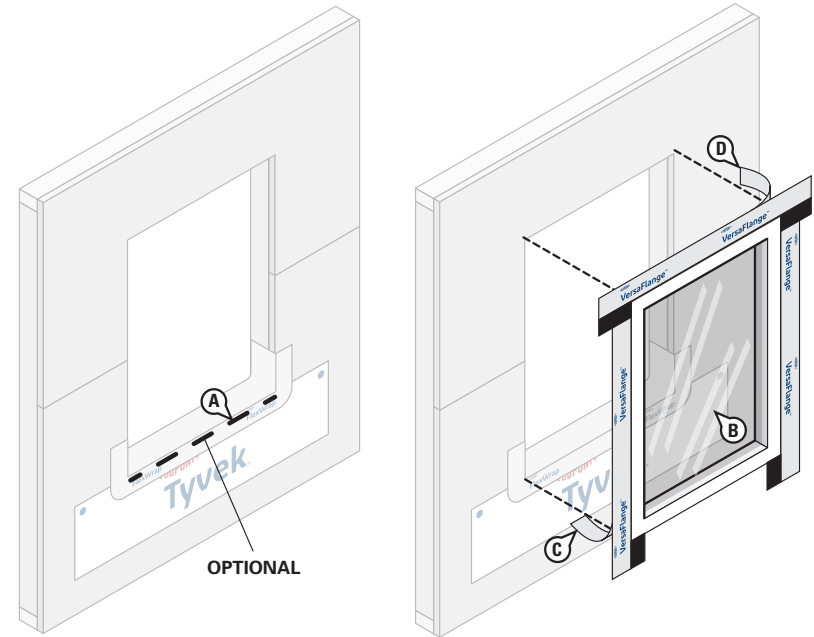
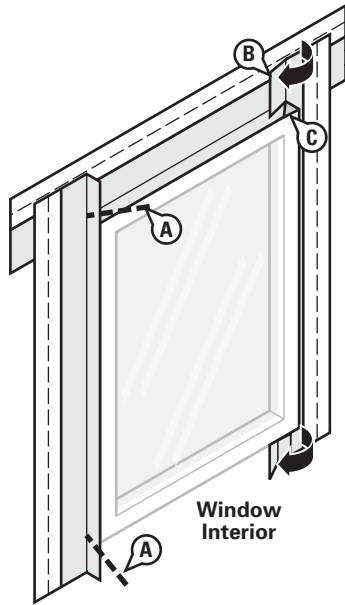


### STEP 3

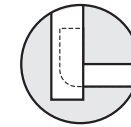
- A. Prepare jamb flashing by cutting a piece of DuPont™ VersaFlange™ at least 6" **LONGER** than the jamb.
- B. Break the perforated release paper on one side of the jamb flashing by folding it back and forth upon itself.
- C. Position so that the VersaFlange™ contacts the window frame and interior side of the brick mold. Ensure that the jamb flashing is positioned 1-1/2" below the top edge of the head flashing. **Jamb flashing adhesive must come in contact with head flashing adhesive and overlap 1"**.
- D. Remove the outer release paper and adhere the flashing to the window frame. Use the inner release paper to form a tight seal in the corner.
- E. Remove the inner release paper and adhere the flashing to the back of the brick mold.
- F. Repeat on opposite jamb.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Brick Mold Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



**INCORRECT**  
DuPont™ FlexWrap™  
reverse flashed



**CORRECT**  
VersaFlange™ fully  
overlaps FlexWrap™

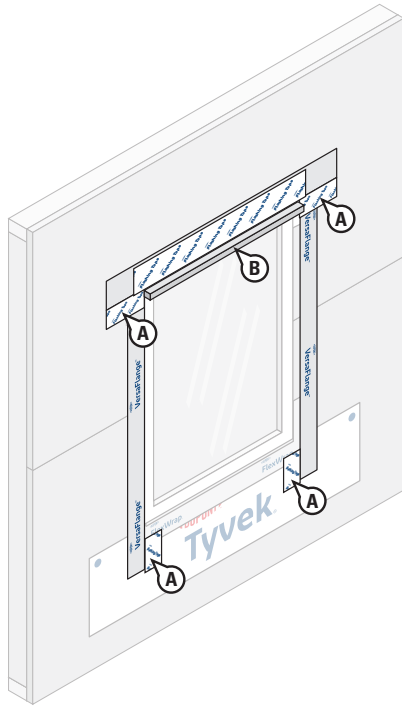
#### STEP 4

- A. Beginning at the junction of the jamb and the head, and away from the corner, cut the **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** at a 45° angle. Repeat the procedure at the junction of the sill and jambs.
- B. In order to overlap jamb adhesive to the head flashing adhesive, temporarily pull back release liner on the head flashing. Fold cut jamb flashing parallel to the window frame so that the jamb flashing lies flat onto the head flashing. Fold the head flashing release liner back down to protect any remaining exposed butyl along the head flashing prior to installation of the window.
- C. Fold remaining jamb flashing flaps down at all corners and adhere to the window frame.

#### STEP 5

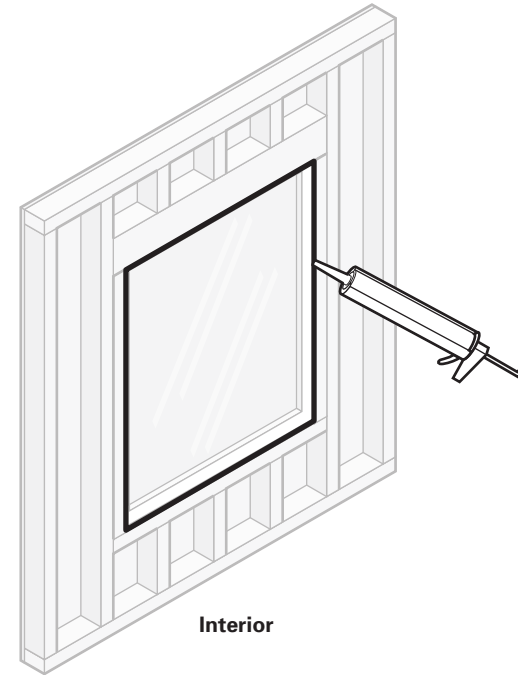
- A. **OPTIONAL:** Apply a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) along the sill as shown above. **To allow for drainage, do not apply continuous sealant bead along sill.** Ensure a minimum 2" wide drainage gap in the sealant bead within 4" from **each corner** of the jamb-sill interface. Continue applying sealant along the sill with additional 2" wide (min.) drainage gaps for every 6"– 12" (on center) of sill width.
- B. Install window according to manufacturer's installation instructions.
- C. Remove the remaining release paper from the **VersaFlange™** jamb flashing and press firmly to adhere the butyl adhesive to the exterior sheathing or framing members. **Do not reverse shingle. VersaFlange™** must overlap **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** and adhere to the substrate.
- D. Remove the release paper at the head and adhere the **VersaFlange™** to the exterior sheathing or framing members.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Brick Mold Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



### STEP 6

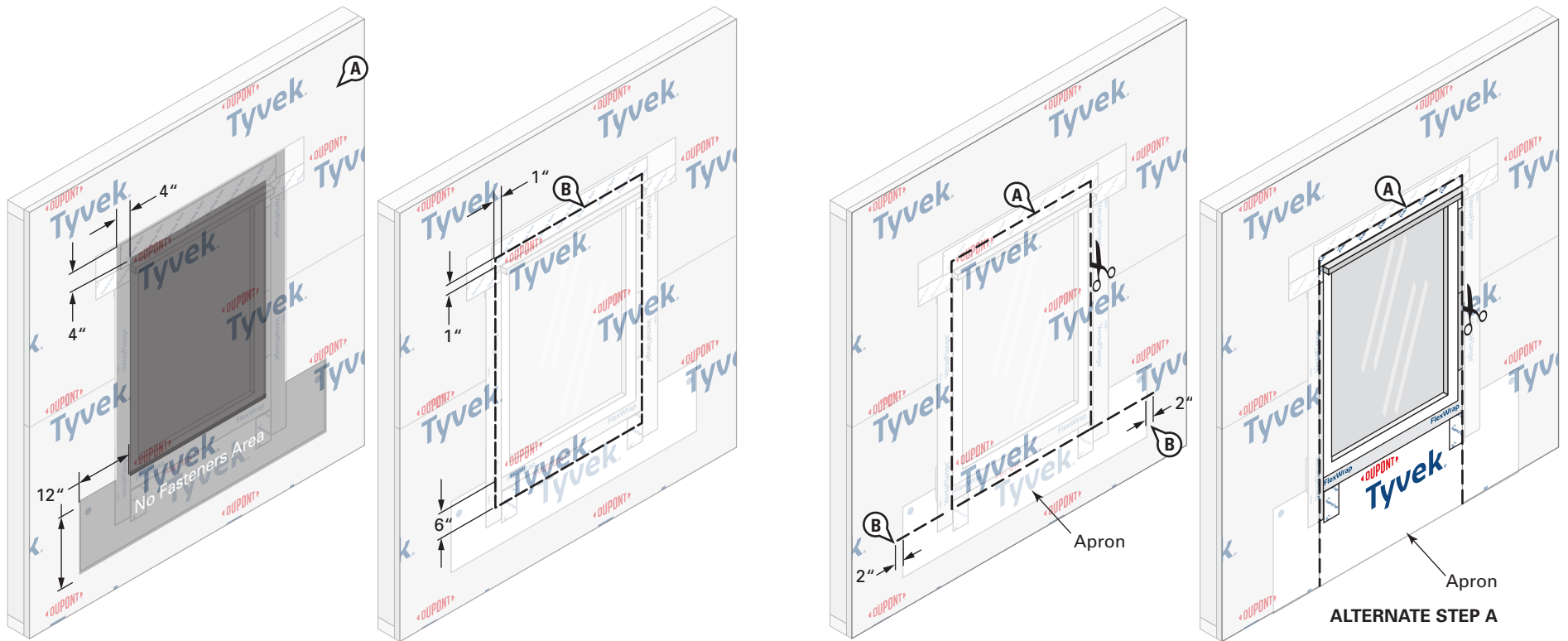
- A. **OPTIONAL:** Cover exposed butyl with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** or **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.
- B. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the window installation BEFORE the **DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 2](#).



### STEP 7

Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the window opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Brick Mold Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



### STEP 8

- Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the window frame at jambs and head and within 12" of the window frame at sill or location of apron.
- Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough opening a minimum of 1" from the jambs and head of the window frame, and 6" below the sill of the window frame.

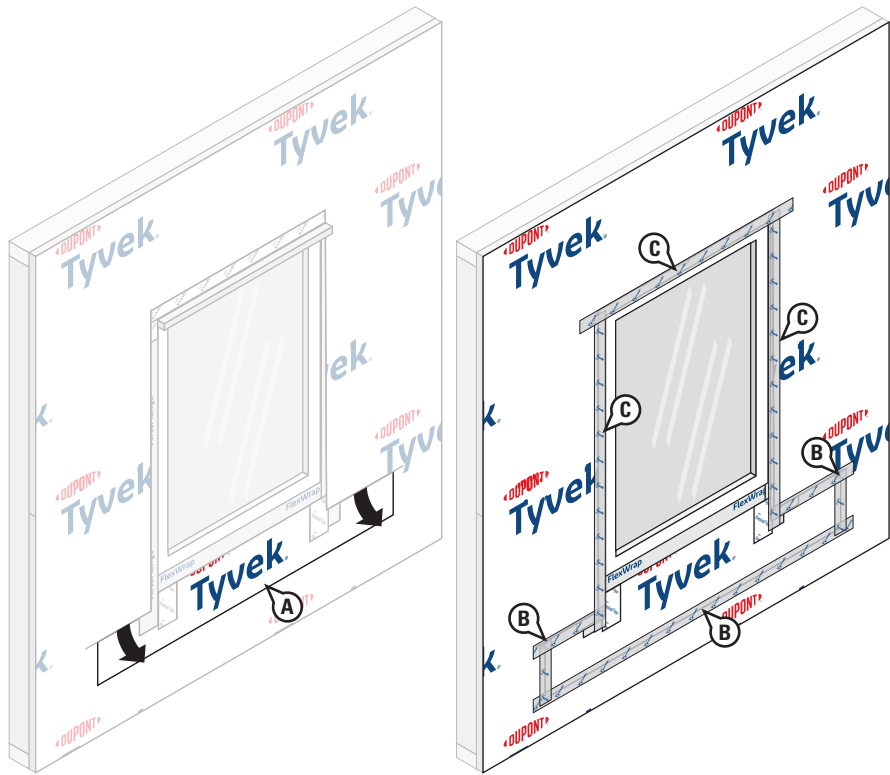
### STEP 9

- Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.

**ALTERNATE STEP A:** If apron extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap apron.

- Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend 1"– 2" **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Brick Mold Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



### STEP 10

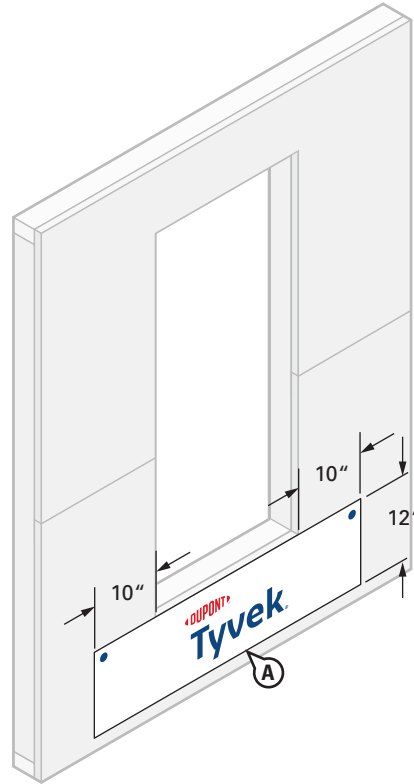
#### Final Step

- A. Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- B. Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
- C. Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jambs and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around window. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap **AFTER** the **Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 3](#).

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Brick Mold Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

This installation guide is intended for doors installed above grade and/or with wood floor construction.

This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, DuPont™ VersaFlange™ and DuPont™ FlexWrap™



---

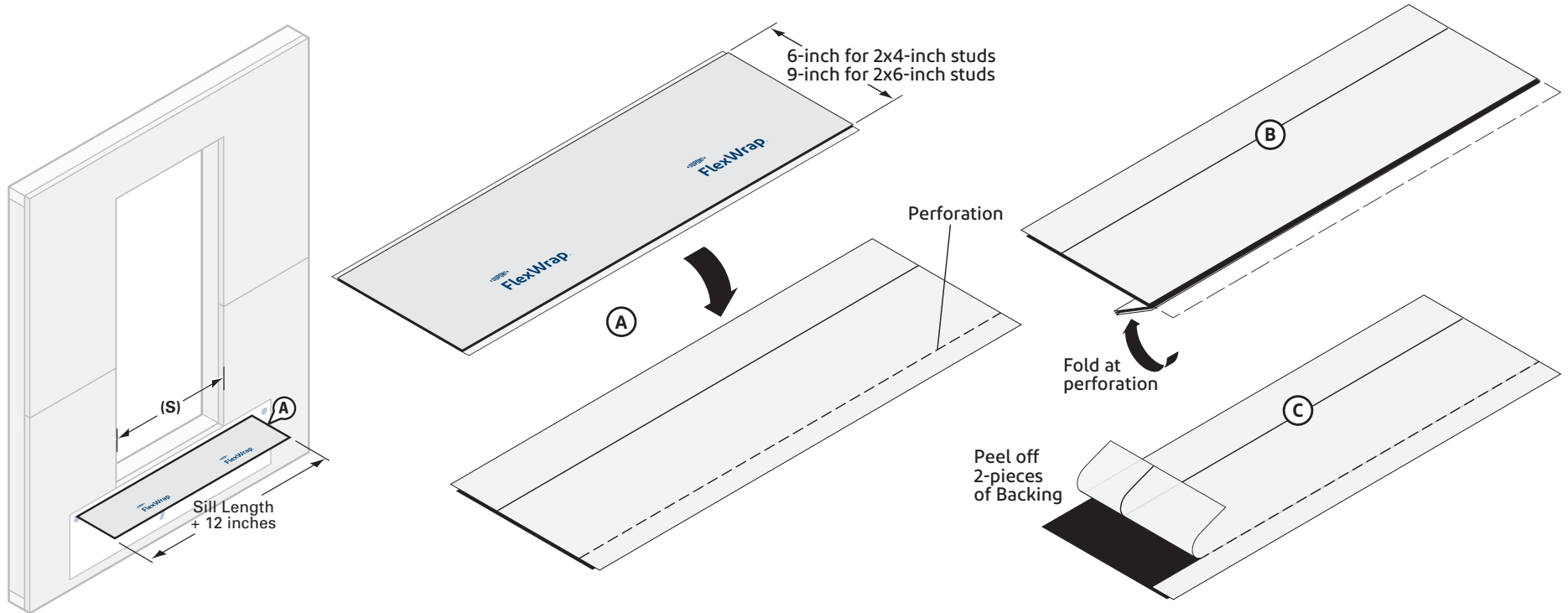
### STEP 1

#### Prepare Tyvek® WRB Apron

**OPTIONAL:** Refer to the [Alternative Installation Considerations](#) section for guidance For using DuPont™ Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™ in lieu of a Tyvek® WRB apron if desired.

- A. Cut an apron made of Tyvek® WRB for attachment under sill of rough opening. Apron should extend at least 10" **BEYOND** the sides of rough opening jambs (or to first stud in open stud construction) and at least 12" below sill of rough opening, or extend far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the Tyvek® WRB below. The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall and the bottom of the apron should be left unsecured so it can overlap the Tyvek® WRB which will be installed after the door. Avoid placing DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners where DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products will be installed.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Brick Mold Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

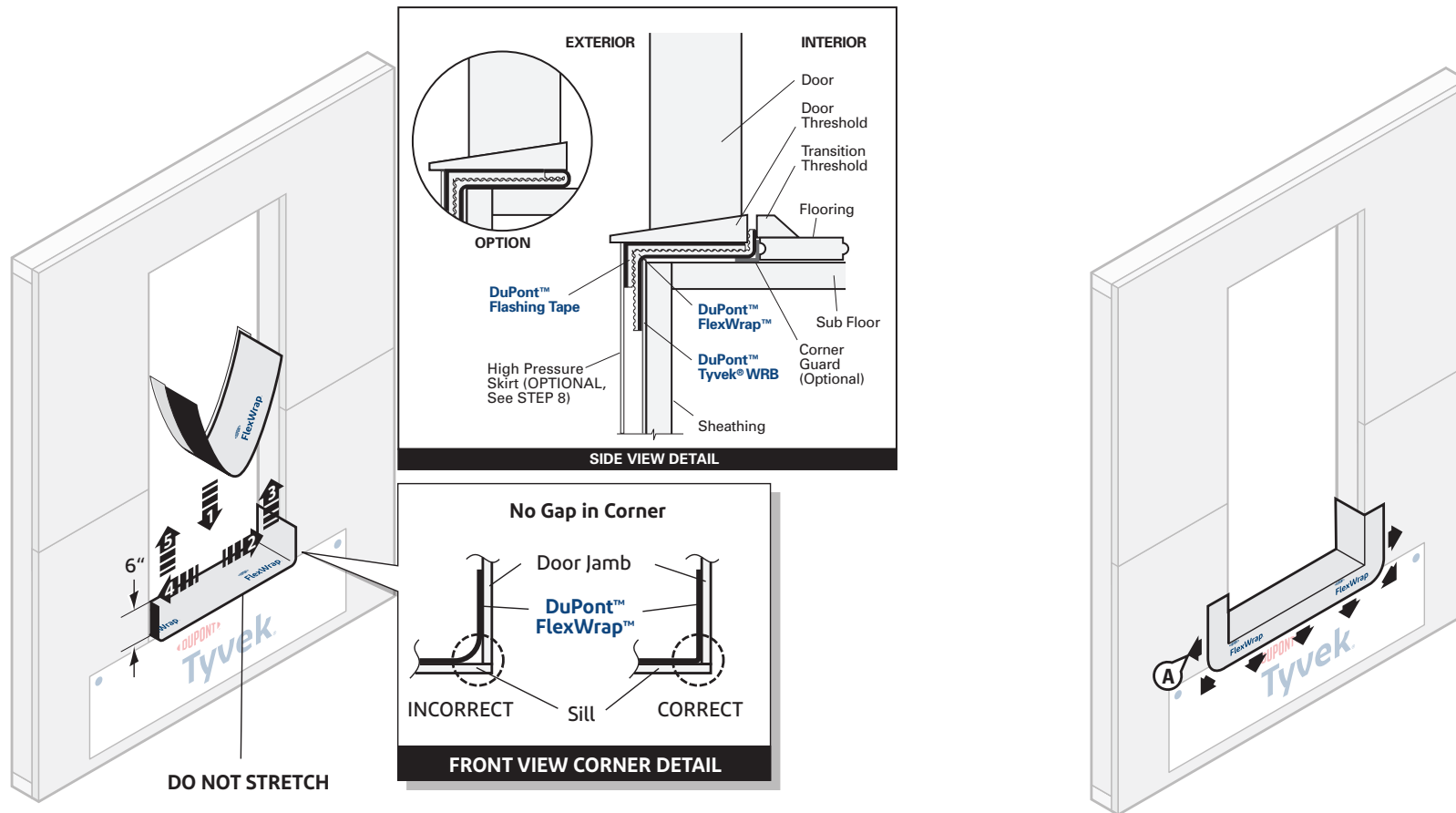


### STEP 2

#### Preparation of Sill Flashing

- A. Cut a piece of 9" wide DuPont™ FlexWrap™ at least 12" **LONGER** than the width of the sill (S). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the door frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- B. 9" FlexWrap™ has perforated release paper to help with the formation of a back dam. To ensure that the perforation tears cleanly, fold the perforation 180° and create the flashing.
- C. Remove the widest pieces of release paper leaving the narrowest release paper on the flashing. When the finished floor is applied, the release paper can be removed and the back dam can be completed.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Brick Mold Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



### STEP 3

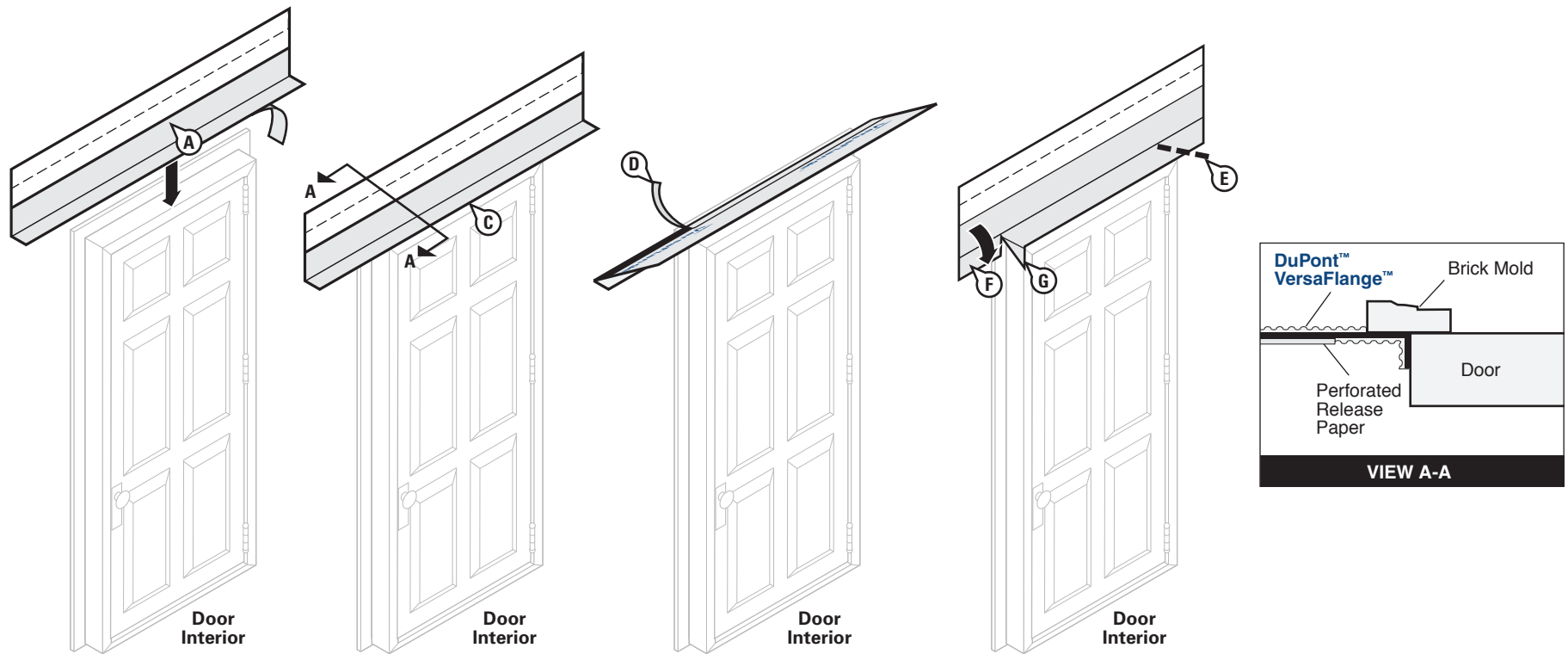
- A. Position the sill flashing as indicated so the section with the release paper still attached extends past the door threshold on the inside. Ensure that 2"–3" of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6" up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening. When the 1" of release paper is removed, the remaining section of **FlexWrap™** can be used to form a back dam.

**OPTIONAL: Create back dam by folding back narrow section of FlexWrap™.** Some flooring cannot accommodate a back dam. In that case fold the back dam on top of **FlexWrap™** in the sill. The door will be installed on top of the fold to create a back dam (see Side View Detail above).

### STEP 4

- A. Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill. Coverage of **FlexWrap™** should be 2"–3" onto the face of the wall.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Brick Mold Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

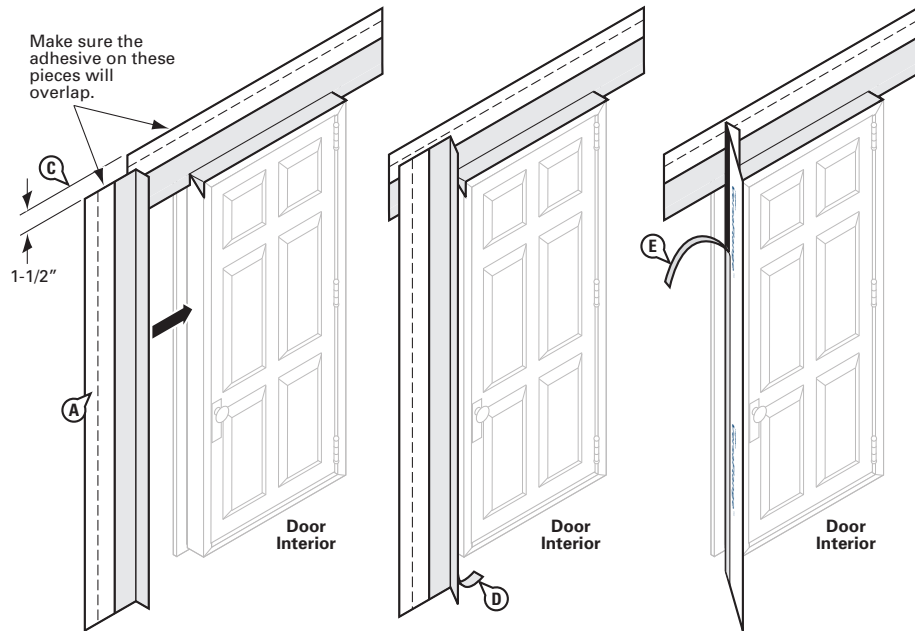


### STEP 5

- A. Prepare head flashing by cutting a piece of **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** at least 12" **LONGER** than the head length.
- B. Break the perforated release paper on one edge of the head flashing by folding it back and forth upon itself.
- C. Center the **VersaFlange™** along the length of the door head and position so that it contacts the door frame and interior side of the brick mold. Remove the outer release paper and adhere the flashing to the door frame. Use the inner release paper to form a tight seal in the corner.
- D. Remove the inner release paper and adhere the flashing to the back of the brick mold.
- E. At the corner of the door frame, cut the **VersaFlange™** at a 45° angle.
- F. Fold the newly created flashing flap down flat against the brick mold.
- G. Fold remaining head flashing flaps down onto the jamb frame.

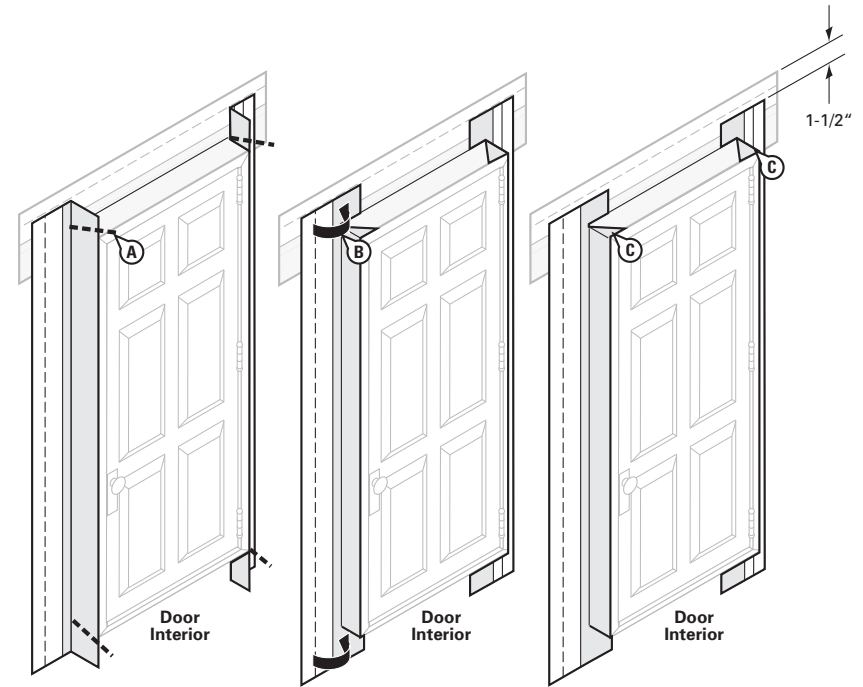
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Brick Mold Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



#### STEP 6

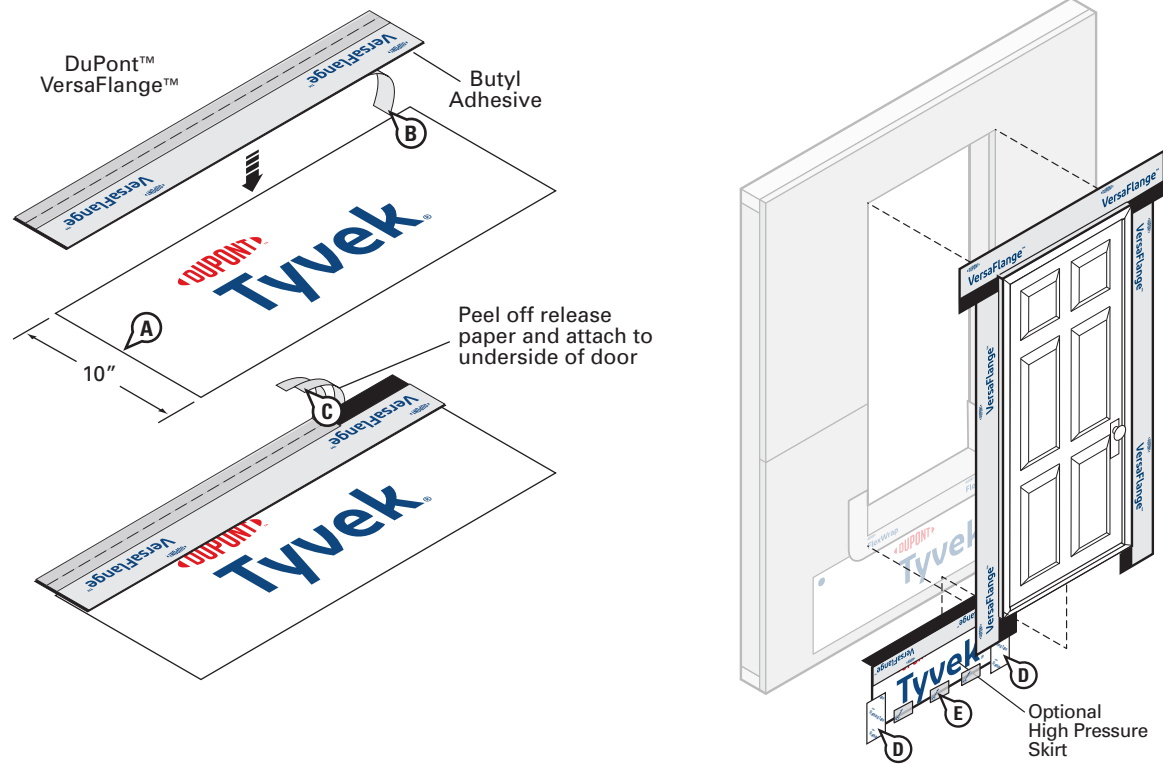
- Prepare jamb flashing by cutting a piece of **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** at least 6" **LONGER** than the jamb.
- Break the perforated release paper on one side of the jamb flashing by folding it back and forth upon itself.
- Position so that **VersaFlange™** contacts the door frame and interior side of the brick mold. Ensure that the jamb flashing is positioned 1-1/2" below the top edge of the head flashing. **Jamb flashing adhesive must come in contact with head flashing adhesive by 1"**.
- Remove the outer release paper and adhere the flashing to the door frame. Use the inner release paper to form a tight seal in the corner.
- Remove the inner release paper and adhere the flashing to the back of the brick mold.
- Repeat on opposite jamb.



#### STEP 7

- Beginning at the junction of the jamb and head, and away from the corner, cut the **VersaFlange™** at a 45° angle. Repeat the procedure at the junction of the sill and jamb.
- In order to overlap jamb adhesive to the head flashing adhesive, temporarily pull back release liner on the head flashing. Fold cut jamb flashing parallel to the door frame so that the jamb flashing lies flat onto the head flashing. Fold the head flashing release liner back down to protect any remaining exposed butyl along the head flashing prior to installation of the door.
- Fold remaining jamb flashing flaps down at all corners and adhere to the door frame.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Brick Mold Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

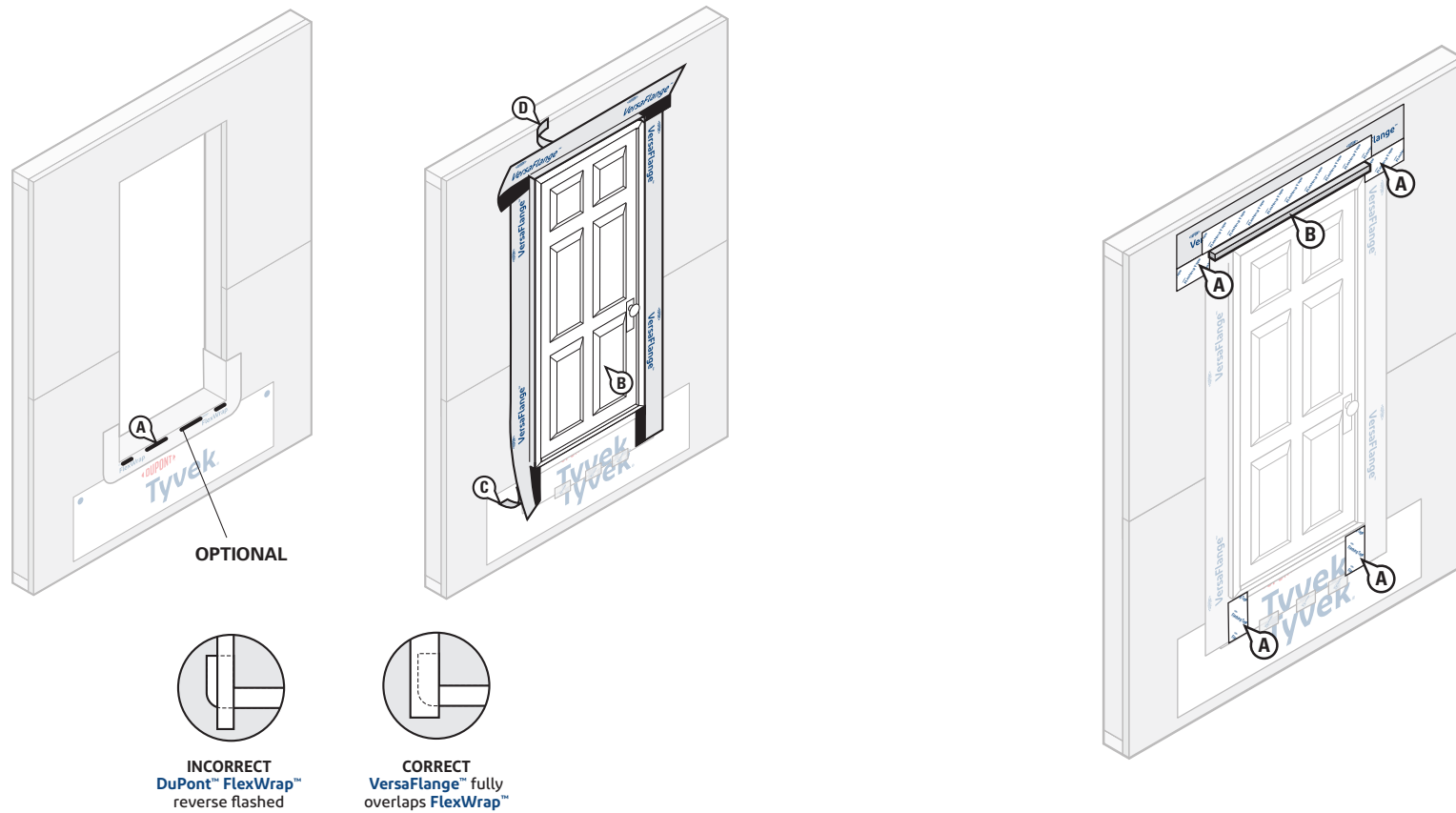


### STEP 8 (OPTIONAL - HIGH PRESSURE SKIRT)

For extreme/coastal exposures, installation of a high-pressure skirt is recommended to help prevent water intrusion at the sill or threshold.

- Create the high pressure skirt by cutting a piece of **Tyvek® WRB** 1" **WIDER** than the width of the door opening and approximately 10" in height.
- Cut a piece of **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** to the same width of skirt. Remove release paper from one side of the **VersaFlange™** and adhere to the **Tyvek® WRB**. The skirt may be made with **VersaFlange™**, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, or **StraightFlash™**.
- Remove the release paper from the other side of the **VersaFlange™** and adhere the butyl adhesive at the sill skirt to the underside of the door threshold behind the jamb flashing.
- After installation of door in Step 9, secure edges of the optional skirt with two 4" pieces of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, or **StraightFlash™**.
- Tape the bottom of the optional skirt to allow for drainage and to minimize wind damage during construction.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Brick Mold Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



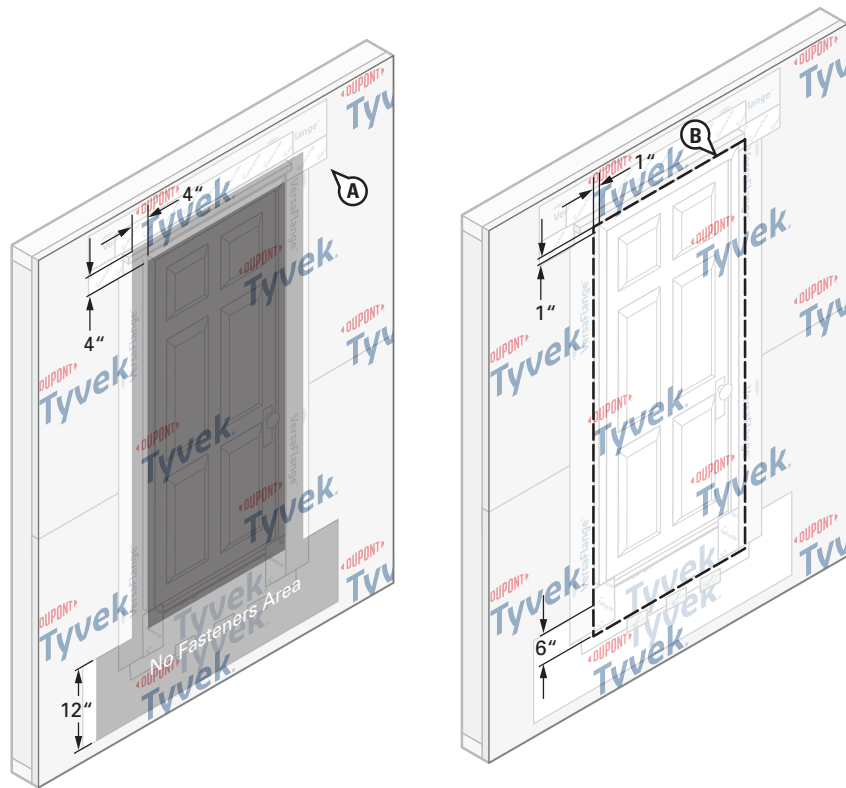
### STEP 9

- A. **OPTIONAL:** Apply a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) along the sill as shown above. **To allow for drainage, do not apply continuous sealant bead along sill.** Ensure a minimum 2" wide drainage gap in the sealant bead within 4" from **each corner** of the jamb-sill interface. Continue applying sealant along the sill with additional 2" wide (min.) drainage gaps for every 6"– 12" (on center) of sill width.
- B. Install door according to manufacturer's installation instructions.
- C. Remove the remaining release paper from the **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** jamb flashing and press firmly to adhere the butyl adhesive to the exterior sheathing or framing members. **Do not reverse shingle.** VersaFlange™ must overlap **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** and adhere to the substrate.
- D. Remove the release paper at the head and adhere the **VersaFlange™** to the exterior sheathing or framing members.

### STEP 10

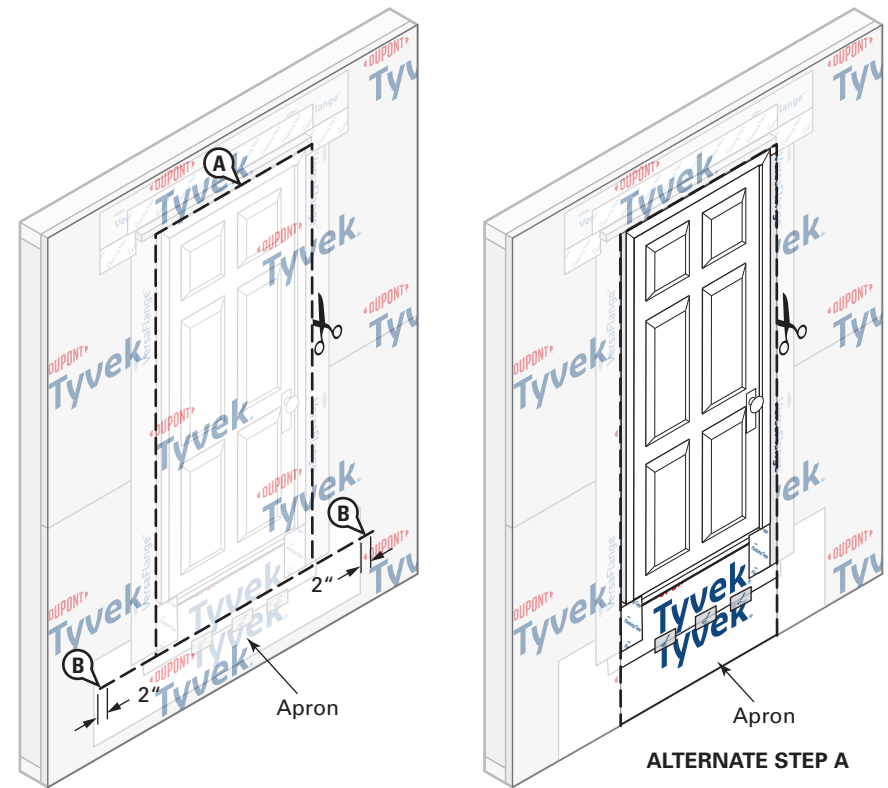
- A. **OPTIONAL:** Cover exposed butyl with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, or **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.
- B. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the door installation **BEFORE** the **Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed, see [Drip Cap Installation](#) section and refer to [Option 2](#).

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Brick Mold Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



### STEP 11

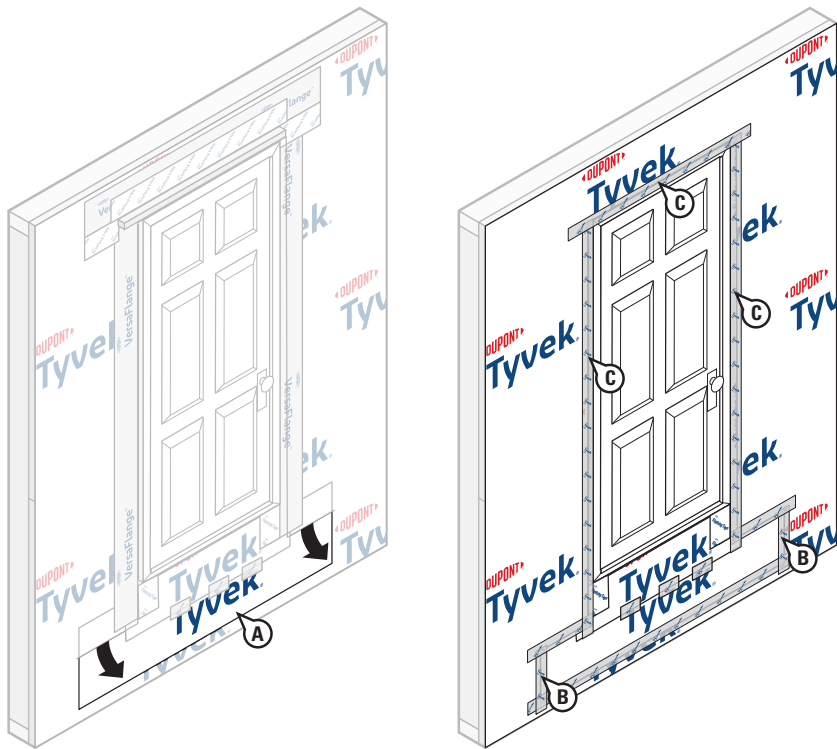
- A. Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the door frame at jamba and head and within 12" of the door frame at sill or location of apron.
- B. Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough opening a minimum of 1" from the jamba and head of the door frame, and 6" below the sill of the door frame.



### STEP 12

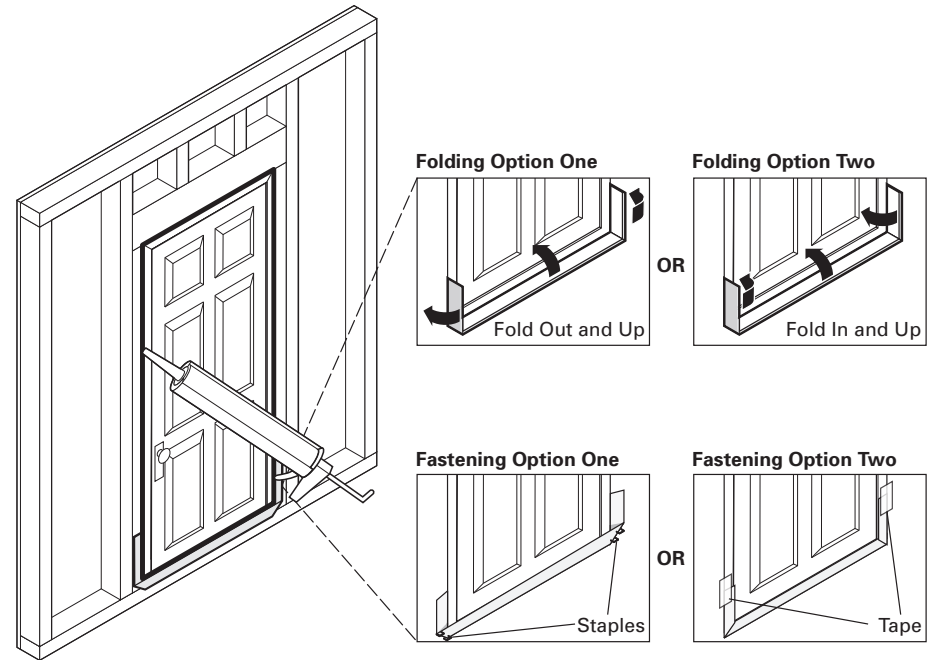
- A. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose door. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.
- ALTERNATE STEP A:** If apron extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jamba and head only to overlap apron.
- B. Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend 1"– 2" **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Brick Mold Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



### STEP 13

- Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
- Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jambs and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around door. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap **AFTER** the **Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 3](#).



### STEP 14

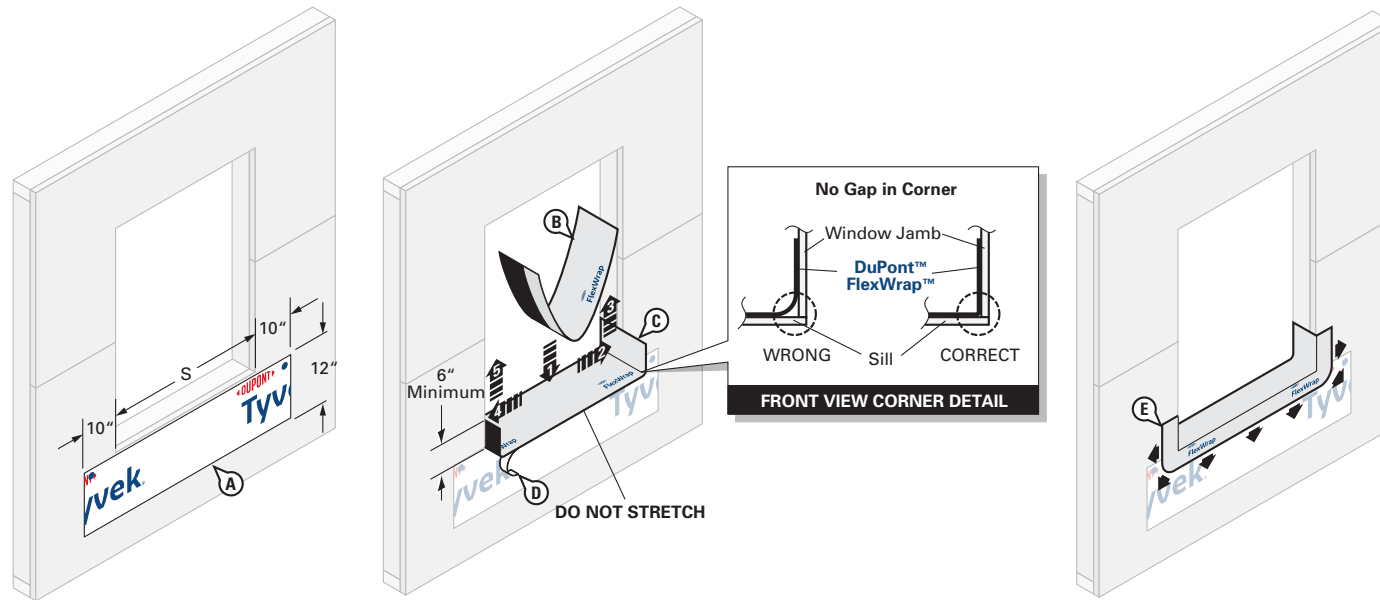
#### Final Step

- When the interior flooring is ready to install, remove release paper and use Folding Option One or Two (shown above) to form back dam.
- Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the door opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Windows and Doors (Using “Wrap the Cavity” Method)

The steps below can be used for the following details: Non-Flanged Window, Non-Flanged Door, Brick Mold Window, Brick Mold Door, Storefront Window on Slab, Storefront Window on Knee Wall, and/or PTAC Units.\*

This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, and DuPont™ FlexWrap™



### STEP 1

#### Prepare Tyvek® WRB Apron

**OPTIONAL:** Refer to the [Alternative Installation Considerations](#) section for guidance for using DuPont™ Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™ in lieu of a Tyvek® WRB apron if desired.

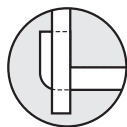
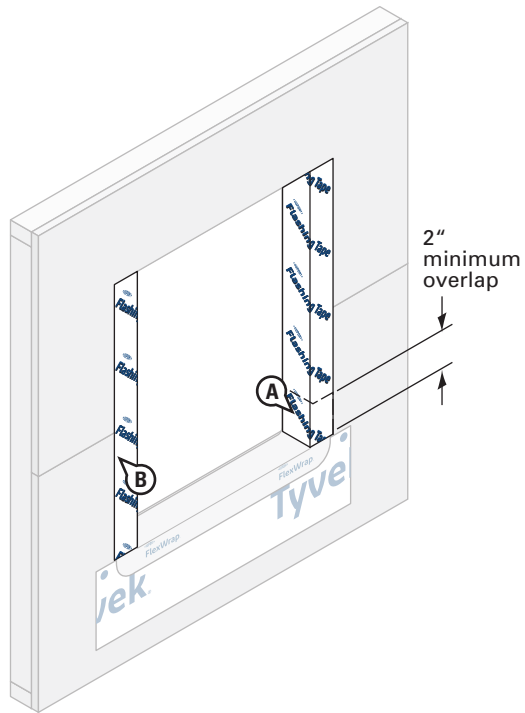
- A. Cut an apron made of Tyvek® WRB for attachment under sill of rough opening. Apron should extend at least 10" **BEYOND** the sides of rough opening jambs (or to first stud in open stud construction) and at least 12" below sill of rough opening, or extend far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the Tyvek® WRB below. The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall and the bottom of the apron should be left unsecured so it can overlap the Tyvek® WRB which will be installed after the window. Avoid placing DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners, or recommended fasteners, where DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products will be installed.

- B. Cut FlexWrap™ at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening sill (S). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- C. Remove wide piece of release paper. Position on horizontal sill by aligning the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2"– 3" of the FlexWrap™ will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6" up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening.
- D. Remove narrow release paper.
- E. Fan out the FlexWrap™ at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill.

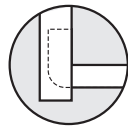
\*NOTE: For installation methods using DuPont™ VersaFlange™, the “Wrap the Cavity” method may be used as an alternate flashing method.

NOTE: When using DuPont™ Flashing Tape in lieu of StraightFlash™ for the wrap the cavity method, Tower® Residential Sealant cannot be used as the primary water seal, as it was not designed to be used for non-flanged units. Refer to [Chemical Compatibility of Representative Building Sealants and Adhesives/Primers](#) for more information.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Windows and Doors (Using “Wrap the Cavity” Method)



**INCORRECT**  
DuPont™ FlexWrap™  
reverse flashed

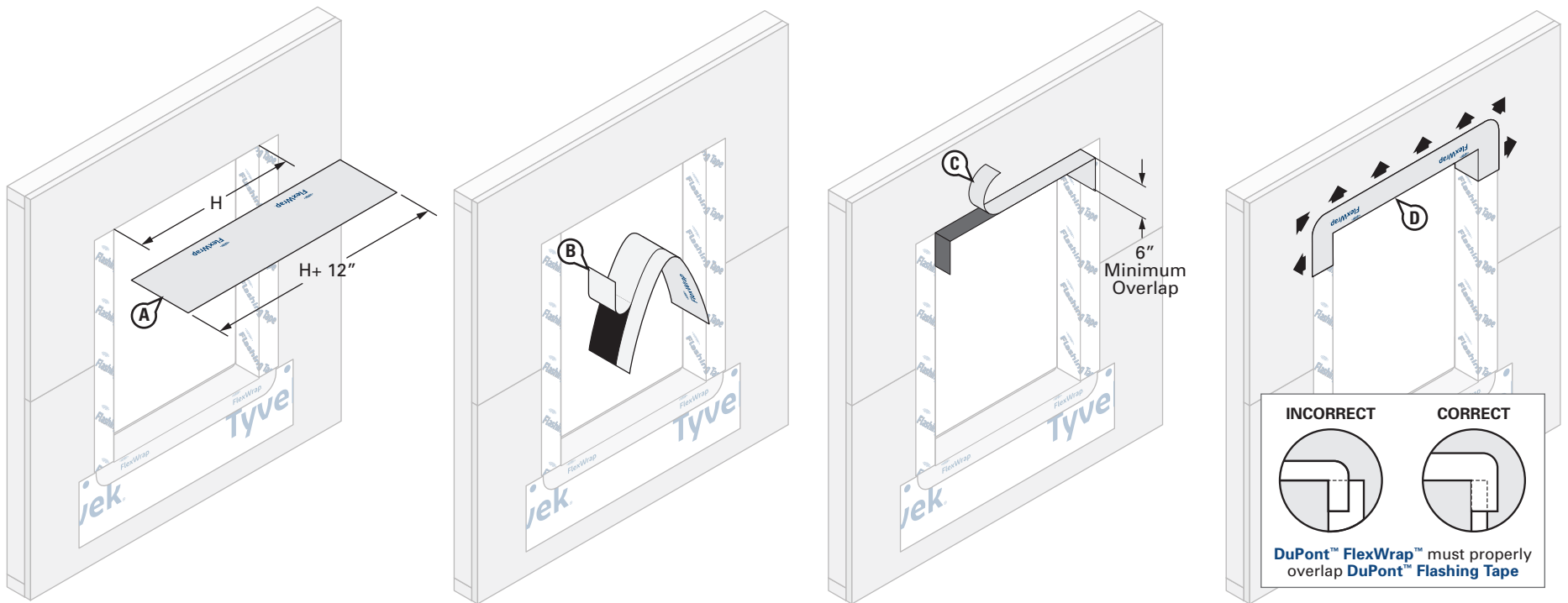


**CORRECT**  
DuPont™ Flashing Tape  
fully overlaps FlexWrap™

### STEP 2

- A. Cut the jamb flashing the vertical length of the rough opening. Jamb flashing should be long enough to overlap the sill flashing by at least 2” and be overlapped by future head flashing by at least 2”.
- B. Wrap **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** into the rough opening at each jamb and onto wall face. The flashing should align with the interior edge of the jamb framing.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Windows and Doors (Using “Wrap the Cavity” Method)



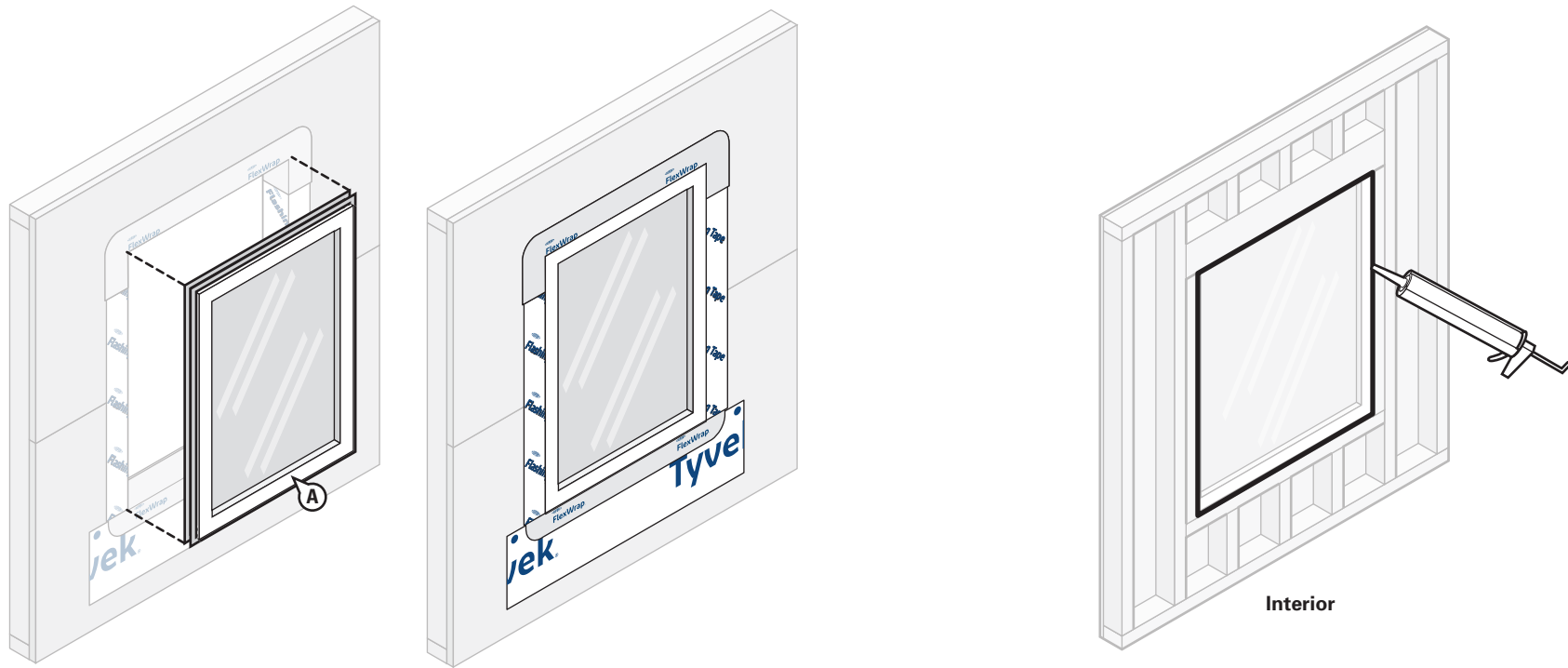
### STEP 3

#### Install DuPont™ FlexWrap™ at Head

- Cut **FlexWrap™** at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening head ( $H$ ). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- Fold the **FlexWrap™** in half lengthwise to create a slight crease at the center. Remove the wide piece of release paper on one side of the fold. Align the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2"– 3" of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall. Starting at the crease, adhere the **FlexWrap™** at the center of the horizontal portion of the head framing to ensure a minimum of 6" down each jamb. Adhere into rough opening at one corner and down the jamb. Remove the remaining release paper, and repeat at opposite corner.
- Remove narrow release paper.
- Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along the head.

**NOTE:** DuPont™ Tyvek® Certified Installers may install a 3-piece head (and sill) detail for window openings less than 6 ft. wide. For windows greater than 6 ft. wide, see the [Special Considerations](#) section for more information regarding the 3-piece head/sill detail. Contact your local DuPont Building Envelope Specialist for more information about the Certified Installer program.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Windows and Doors (Using “Wrap the Cavity” Method)



### STEP 4

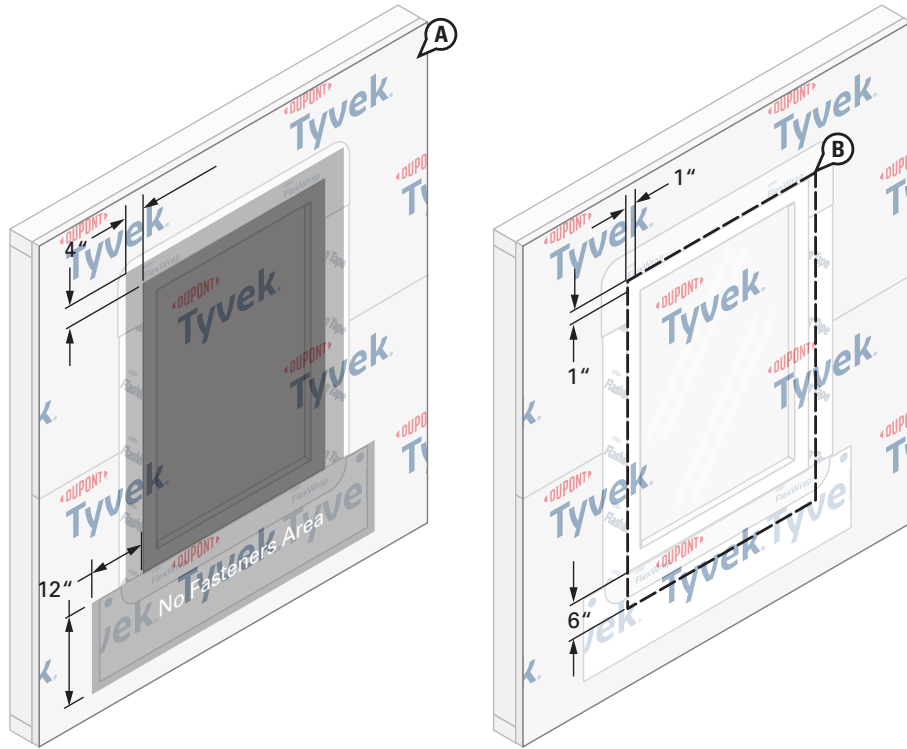
A. Install window/door per manufacturer's installation instructions. Apply an exterior perimeter seal using backer rod and a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) along the jambs and head of the window opening.

**NOTE:** Ensure window and sealant installation allows for drainage at the sill. If sealant is applied at the sill, as a best practice, ensure that there are at least two (2) 2" gaps in the sealant bead for every 4" of window to allow for drainage.

### STEP 5

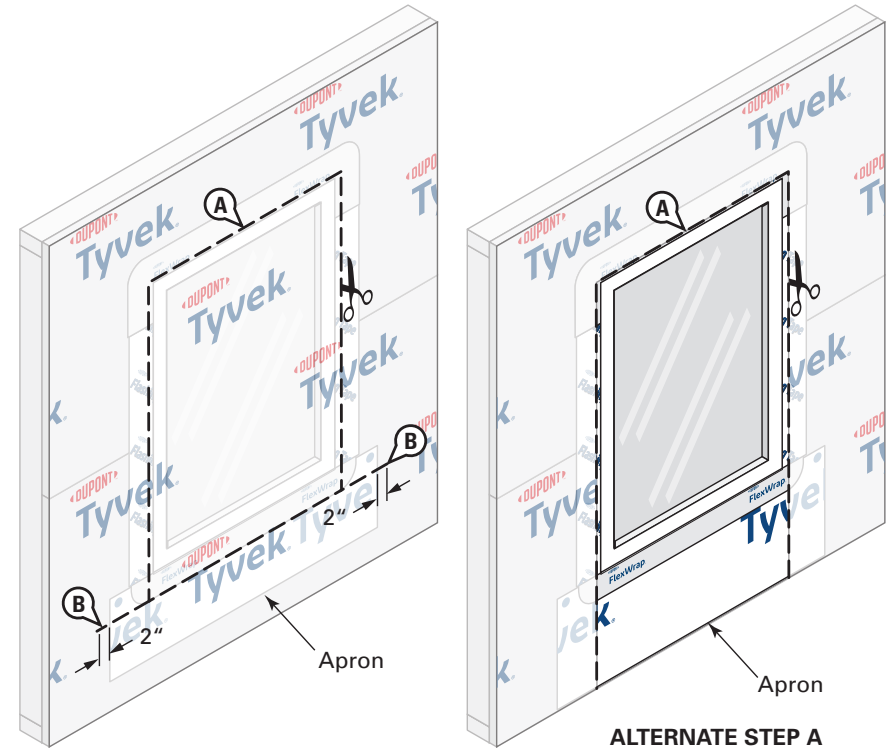
Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the DuPont™ FlexWrap™ around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Windows and Doors (Using “Wrap the Cavity” Method)



### STEP 6

- Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4” of the window frame at jambs and head and within 12” of the window frame at sill or location of apron.
- Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough opening a minimum of 1” from the jambs and head of the window frame, and 6” below the sill of the window frame.

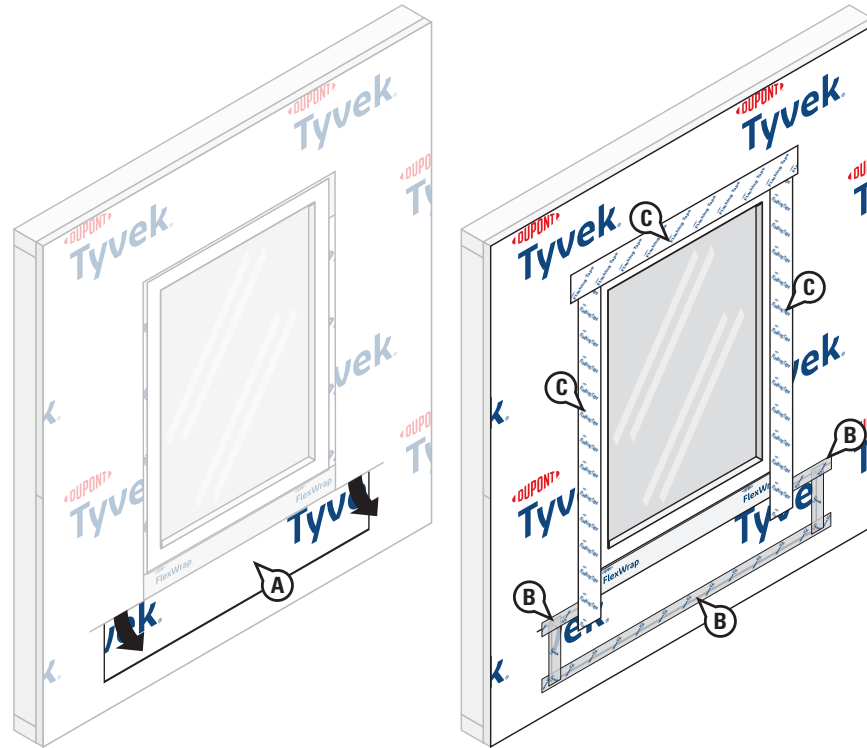


### STEP 7

- Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.
- Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend 1”– 2” **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.

**ALTERNATE STEP A:** If apron extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap apron.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Windows and Doors (Using “Wrap the Cavity” Method)



### STEP 8

#### Final Step

- A. Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- B. Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
- C. Starting at the jambs and then the head, terminate the **Tyvek® WRB** using **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, or **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.

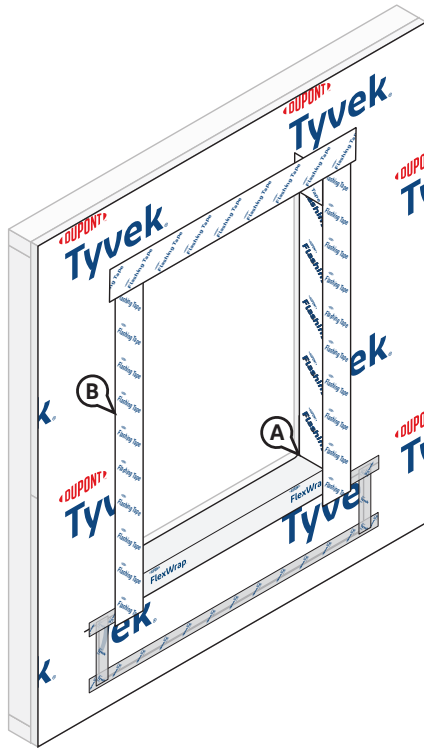
**NOTE:** For a more robust termination, seal with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™**. Install mechanical fasteners through flashing as needed for increased holding power. See the table in the [Applicable Structures and Performance Criteria](#) section for more information on air barrier requirements and terminations..

**OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap **AFTER** the **Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed, see [Drip Cap Installation](#) section and refer to [Option 3](#).

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Window with Floating Lintel and Brick Facade

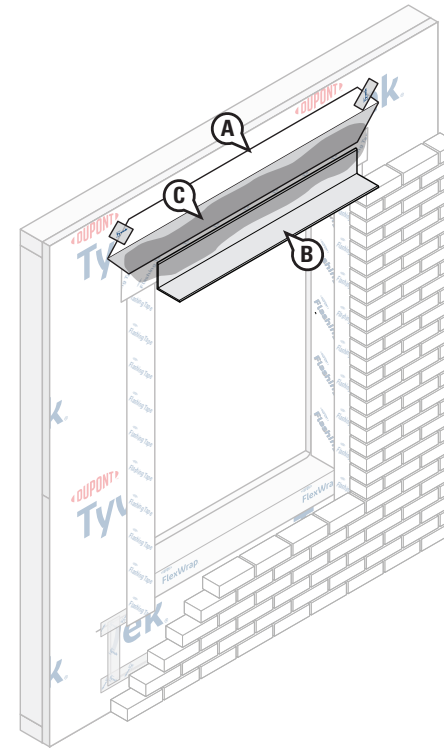
This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, and DuPont™ FlexWrap™

### Option 1: Floating Lintel and Flashing Sealed to Sheathing



#### STEP 1

- A. Install **Tyvek® WRB** apron and **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing** in accordance with the [Non-Flanged Windows and Doors \(Using “Wrap the Cavity” Method\)](#).
- B. Install **Tyvek® WRB** in accordance with the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section in this document. **NOTE:** For this detail, the window is not installed until the brick facade is completed. On the face of the wall, the **Tyvek® WRB** is shown terminated to the window flashing around the jambs and head with 4” **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**.



#### STEP 2

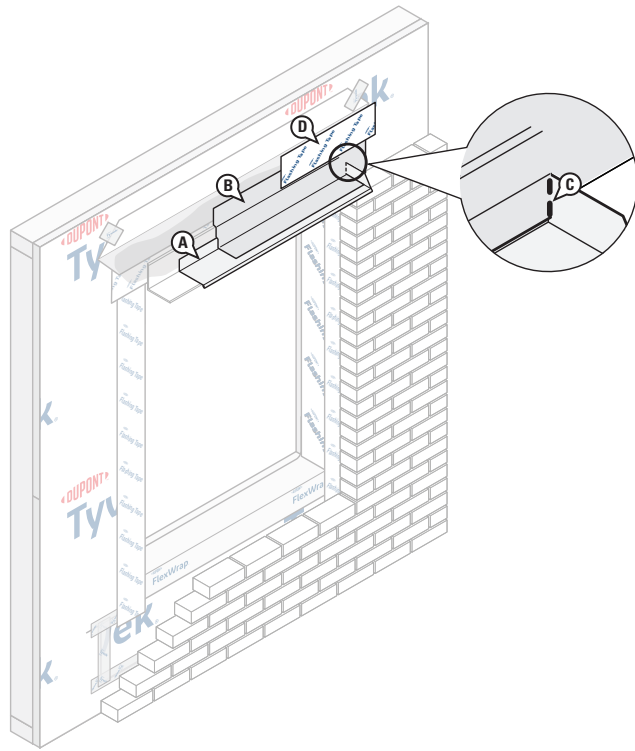
##### Create Head Flap and Install Floating Lintel

- A. Cut flap in the **Tyvek® WRB** above the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing** or **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** that was used to terminate the **Tyvek® WRB** above the window.
- B. Install lintel per plans and specifications.
- C. For exterior gypsum sheathing, apply a [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) to the top of the jambs and exposed sheathing.

**NOTE:** An adhesive/primer is not required for wood-based sheathing, except when applying flashing during adverse weather conditions.

# Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Window with Floating Lintel and Brick Facade

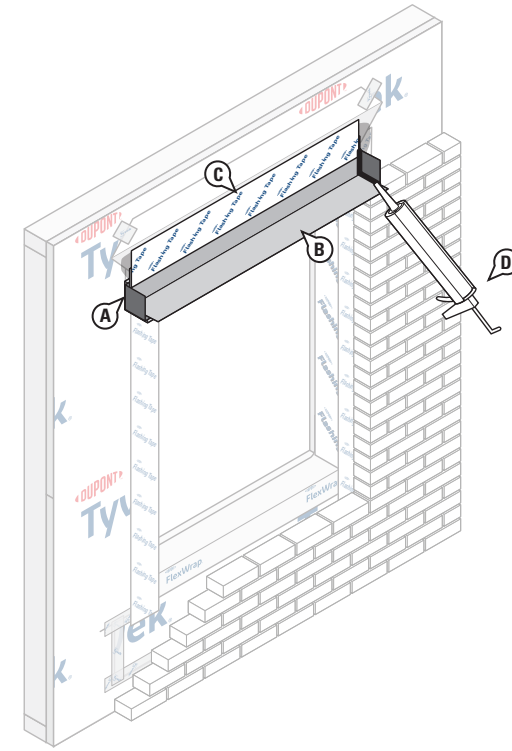
## Option 1: Floating Lintel and Flashing Sealed to Sheathing



### STEP 3

#### Head Detail Using Metal Pan and Mechanically Attached Through Wall Flashing

- Install corrosion-resistant metal pan with drip and soldered/sealed end dams above lintel. Extend flashing **BEYOND** the end of lintel.
- Install through wall flashing a minimum of 3" onto the wall sheathing, overlapping the lintel, and extending onto the horizontal surface of the metal pan leaving minimum 1" of metal drip exposed.
- Cut a vertical slit in the through wall flashing to accommodate the vertical edge of the metal pan.
- Install 4" **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** along the top edge of through wall flashing to achieve the 2" minimum contact to the exposed exterior sheathing.



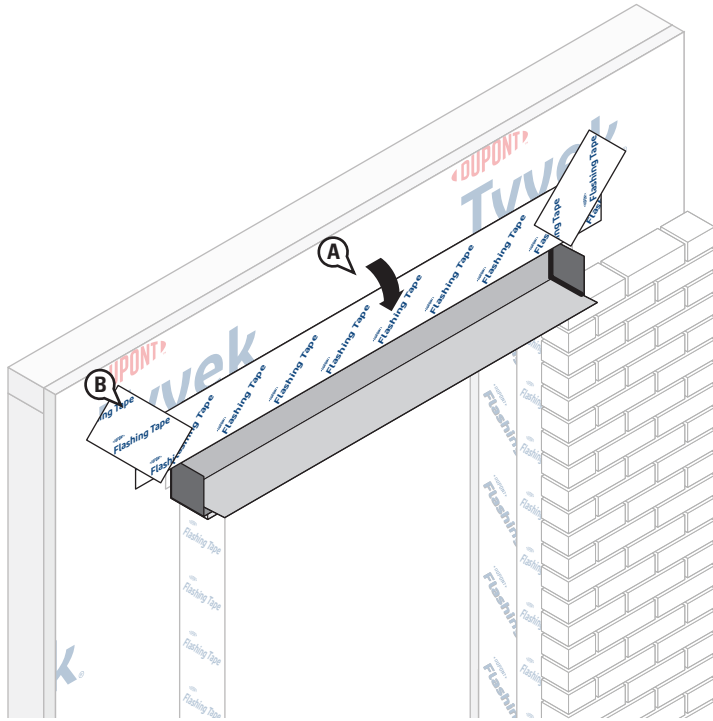
### STEP 3 (ALTERNATE)

#### Head Detail Using Self-Adhered Through Wall Flashing

- Embed through wall flashing end dams in a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) and install along outer edge of lintel.
- Install self-adhered through wall flashing with a minimum of 3" adhering to the wall sheathing, then overlapping the lintel. Extend the through wall flashing a minimum of 1/4" **BEYOND** the outside edge of the lintel to form a drip edge.
- OPTIONAL:** Install 4" **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** along the top edge of through wall flashing to achieve the 2" minimum contact to the exposed exterior sheathing.
- Apply sealant along the edges of the through wall flashing.

# Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Window with Floating Lintel and Brick Facade

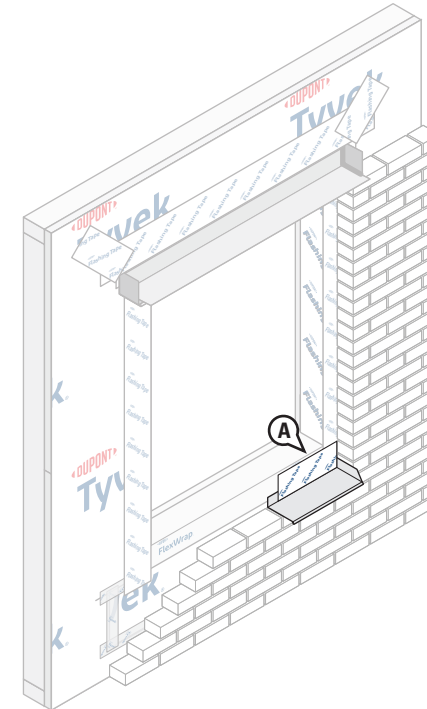
## Option 1: Floating Lintel and Flashing Sealed to Sheathing



### STEP 4

- A. Flip down the head flap and trim 1"– 2" above the window opening.
- B. Terminate head flap as shown by continuously sealing the horizontal and then the diagonal seams with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, or **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.

**NOTE:** For a more robust head flap termination, seal with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** and install additional mechanical fasteners through the flashing at the head flap. See the table in the [Applicable Structures and Performance Criteria](#) section for more information on air barrier requirements and terminations.



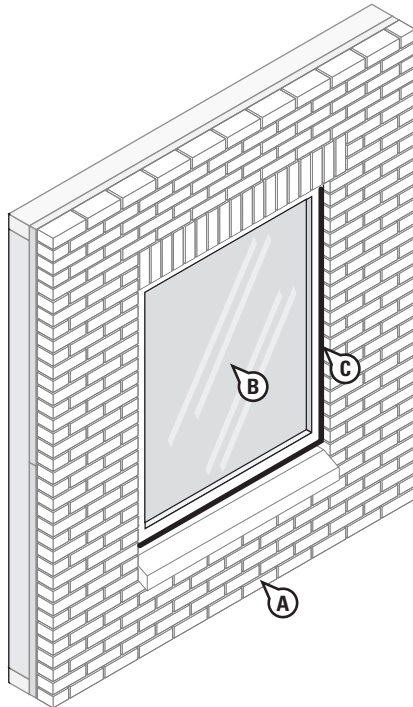
### STEP 5

#### Install Metal Sill Pan

- A. Anchor the non-corrosive metal sill pan flashing to the wall and integrate to the **Tyvek® WRB** with 4" **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™**.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Window with Floating Lintel and Brick Facade

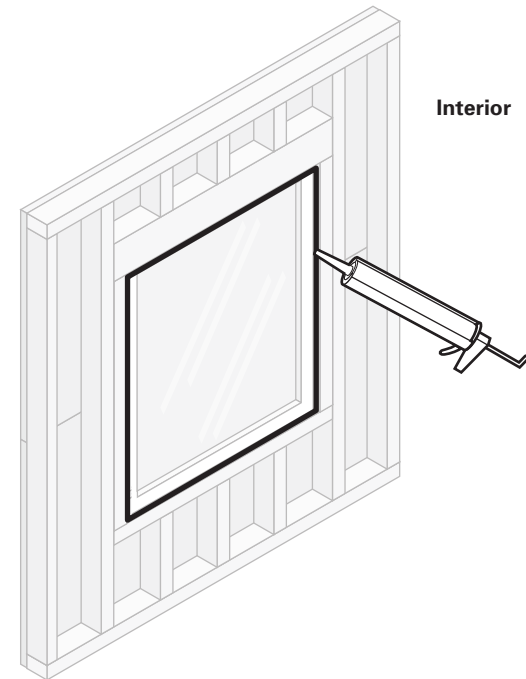
### Option 1: Floating Lintel and Flashing Sealed to Sheathing



#### STEP 6

- A. Install remaining masonry with weeps along flashing.
- B. Install window per manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Seal all four sides of the perimeter of the window.

**DO NOT SEAL ANY WEEPS OF WINDOW FRAME.**



#### STEP 7

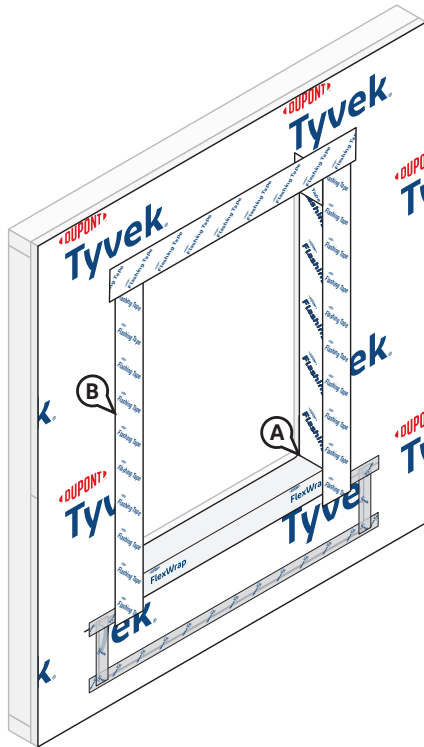
##### Final Step

Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the window opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Window with Floating Lintel and Brick Facade

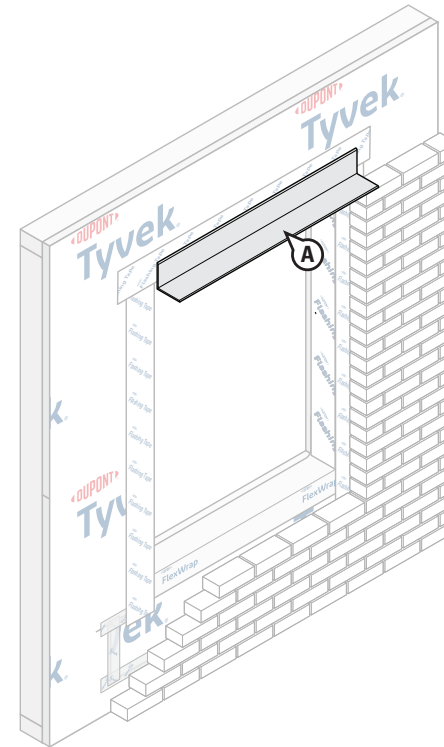
This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, and DuPont™ FlexWrap™

### Option 2: Floating Lintel and Flashing Sealed to the Tyvek® WRB



#### STEP 1

- A. Install **Tyvek® WRB** apron and **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing** in accordance with the [Non-Flanged Windows and Doors \(Using “Wrap the Cavity” Method\)](#).
- B. Install **Tyvek® WRB** in accordance with the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section in this document. **NOTE:** For this detail, the window is not installed until the brick facade is completed. On the face of the wall, the **Tyvek® WRB** is shown terminated to the window flashing around the jambs and head with 4” **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**.



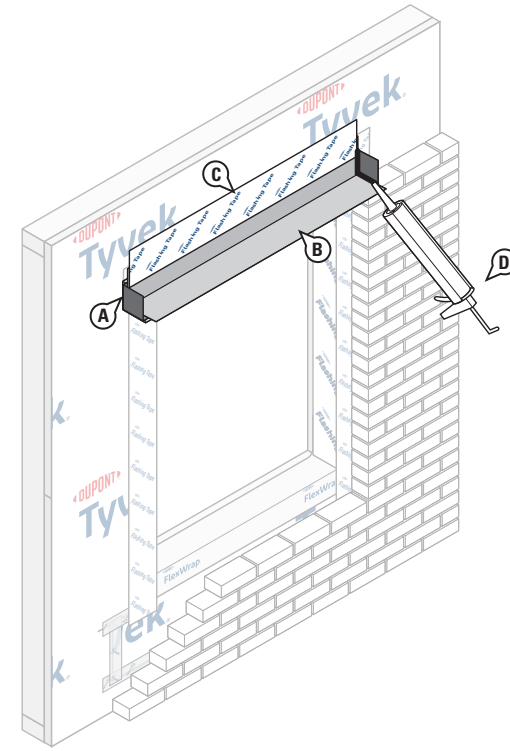
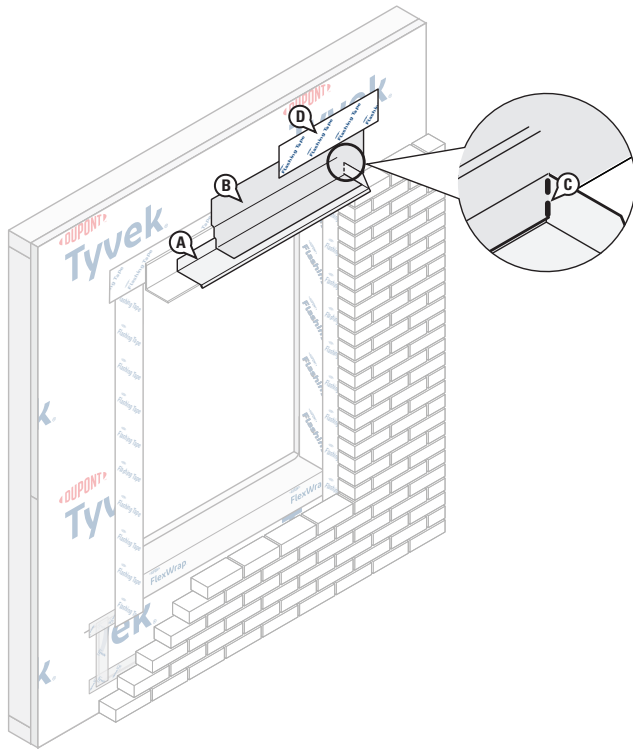
#### STEP 2

##### Install Floating Lintel

- A. Install lintel per plans and specifications.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Window with Floating Lintel and Brick Facade

### Option 2: Floating Lintel and Flashing Sealed to Tyvek® WRB



### STEP 3

#### Head Detail Using Metal Pan and Mechanically Attached Through Wall Flashing

- Install corrosion-resistant metal pan with drip and soldered/sealed end dams above lintel. Extend flashing **BEYOND** the end of lintel.
- Install through wall flashing a minimum of 3" onto the **Tyvek® WRB**, overlapping the lintel, and extending onto the horizontal surface of the metal pan leaving minimum 1" of metal drip exposed.
- Cut a vertical slit in the through wall flashing to accommodate the vertical edge of the metal pan.
- Install 4" wide **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** along the top edge of through wall flashing to achieve the 2" minimum contact to the **Tyvek® WRB**.

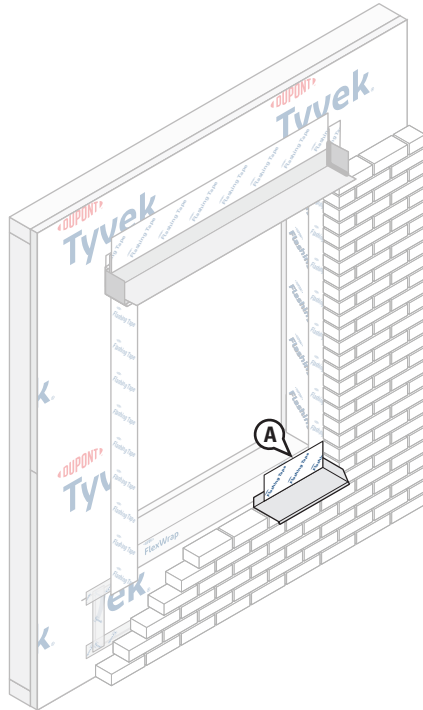
### STEP 3 (ALTERNATE)

#### Head Detail Using Self-Adhered Through Wall Flashing

- Embed through wall flashing end dams in a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) and install along outer edge of lintel.
- Install self-adhered through wall flashing with a minimum of 3" adhering to the **Tyvek® WRB**, then overlapping the lintel. Extend the through wall flashing a minimum of 1/4" **BEYOND** the outside edge of the lintel to form a drip edge.
- OPTIONAL:** Install 4" **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** along the top edge of through wall flashing to achieve the 2" minimum contact to the **Tyvek® WRB**.
- Apply sealant along the edges of the through wall flashing.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Window with Floating Lintel and Brick Facade

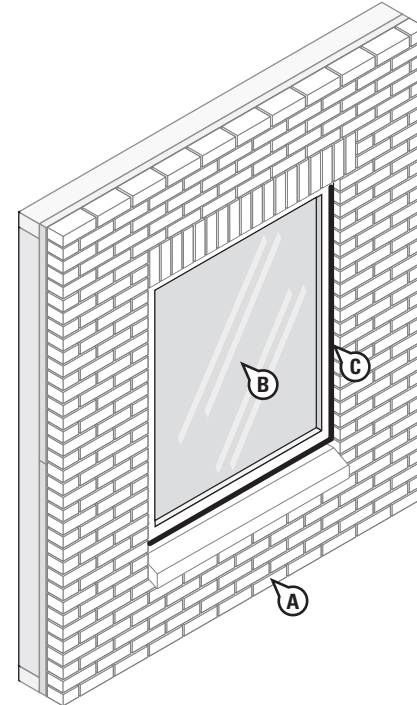
### Option 2: Floating Lintel and Flashing Sealed to Tyvek® WRB



#### STEP 4

##### Install Metal Sill Pan

- A. Anchor the non-corrosive metal sill pan flashing to the wall and integrate to the Tyvek® WRB with 4" DuPont™ Flashing Tape or DuPont™ StraightFlash™.



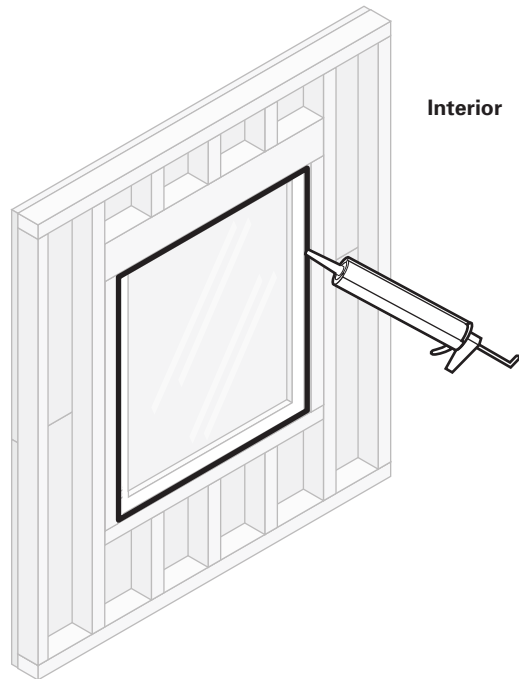
#### STEP 5

- A. Install remaining masonry with weeps along flashing.  
B. Install window per manufacturer's instructions.  
C. Seal all four sides of the perimeter of the window.

**DO NOT SEAL ANY WEEPS OF WINDOW FRAME.**

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Window with Floating Lintel and Brick Facade

### Option 2: Floating Lintel and Flashing Sealed to Tyvek® WRB



---

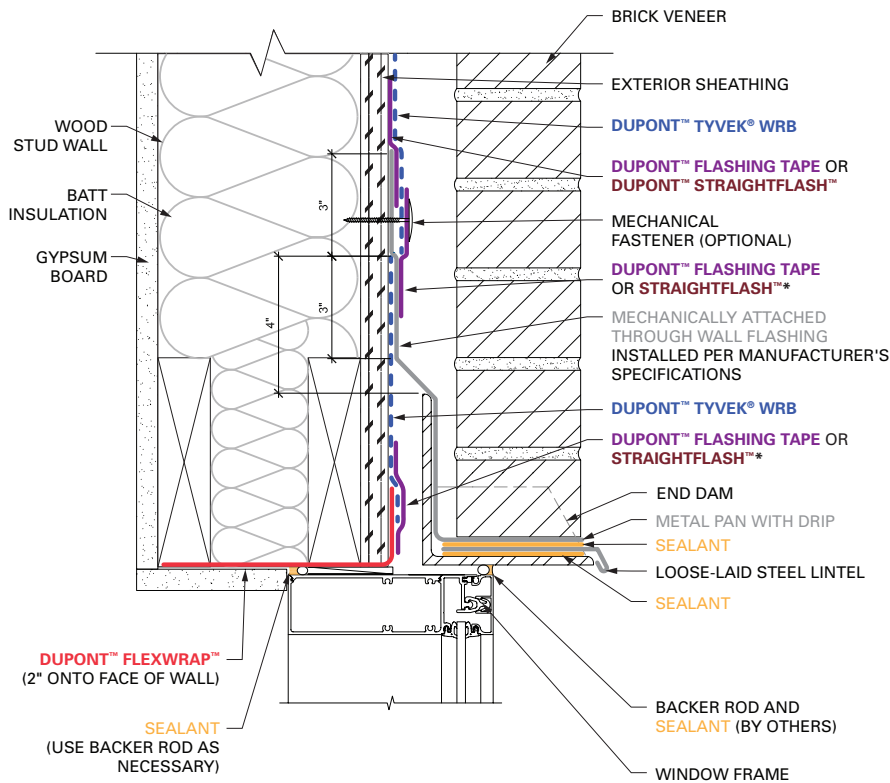
## STEP 6

### Final Step

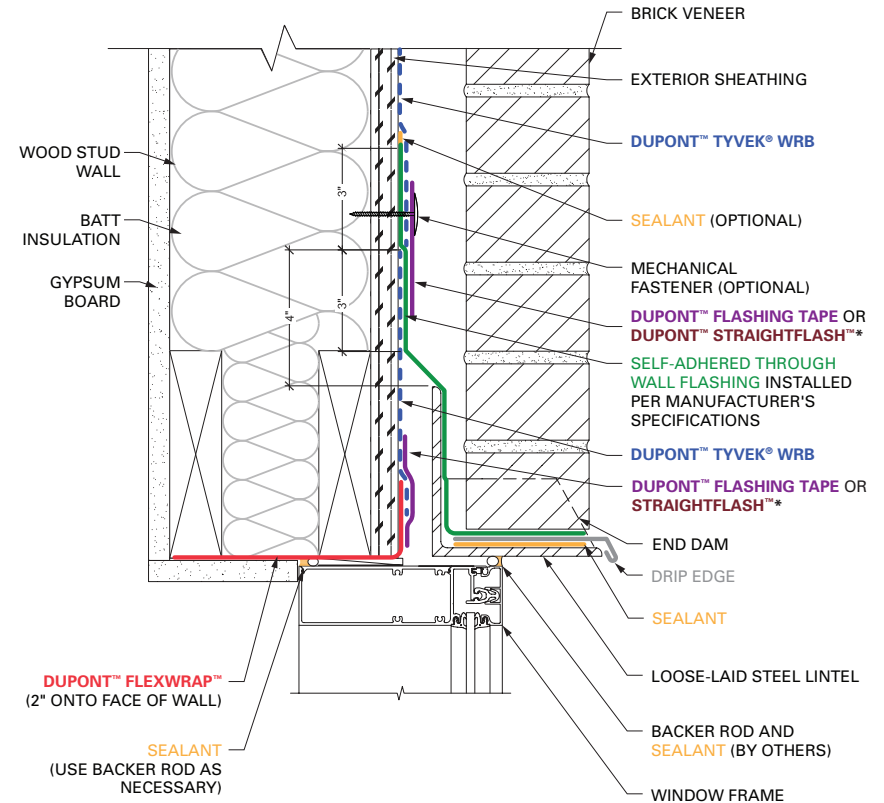
Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the window opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

# Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

## Non-Flanged Window with Floating Lintel and Brick Facade



FLOATING LINTEL WITH METAL PAN AND MECHANICALLY ATTACHED THROUGH WALL FLASHING SEALED TO SHEATHING (SIDE VIEW — ALIGNED WITH OPTION 1)



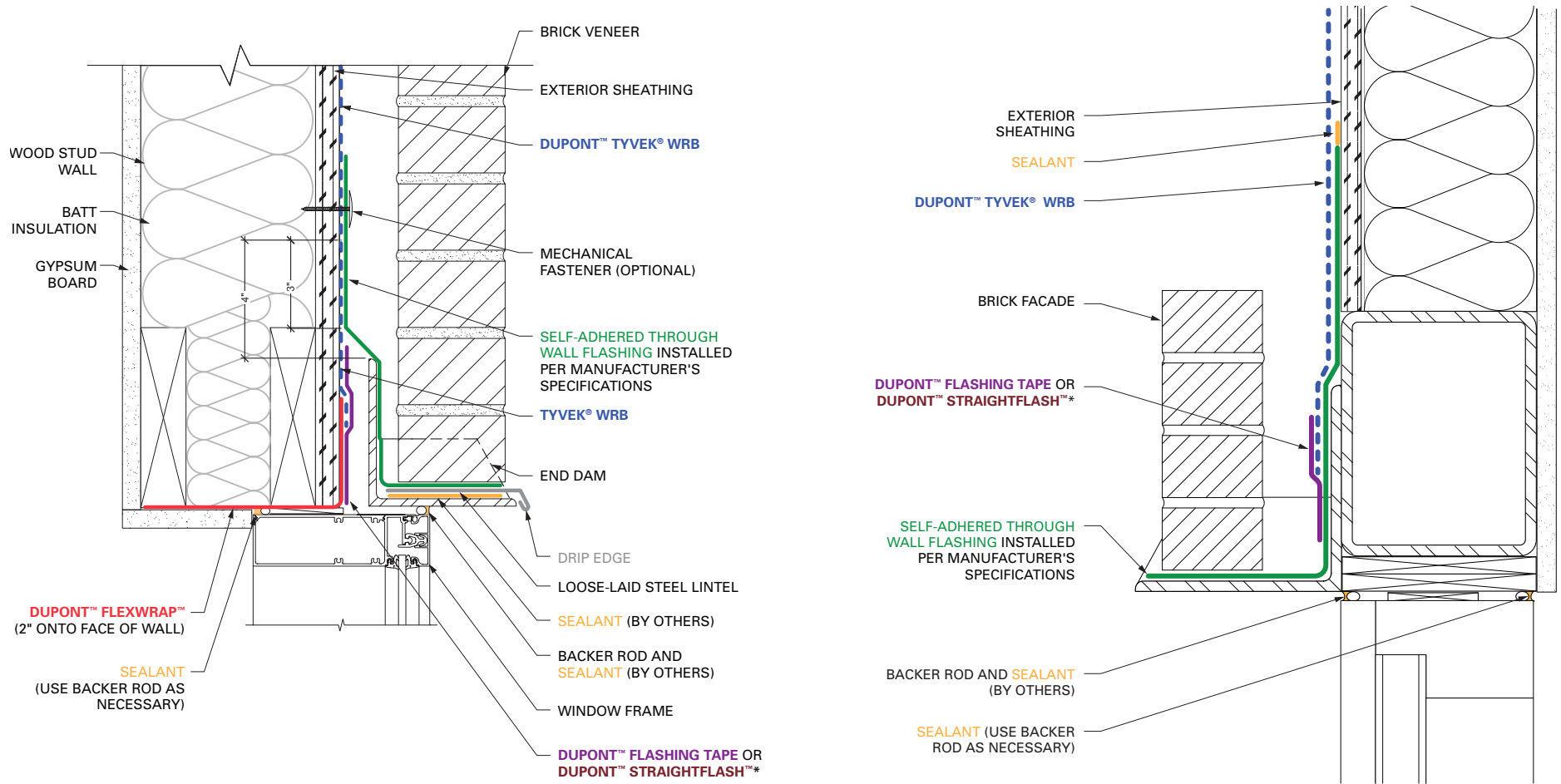
FLOATING LINTEL WITH SELF-ADHERED THROUGH WALL FLASHING SEALED TO SHEATHING (SIDE VIEW — ALIGNED WITH OPTION 1)

**\*NOTE:** For a more robust termination of the Tyvek® WRB, seal with DuPont™ Flashing Tape or StraightFlash™. If a more robust termination is not desired, DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape may be used. See the table in the [Applicable Structures and Performance Criteria](#) section for more information on air barrier requirements and Tyvek® WRB terminations.

**NOTE:** CAD details not to scale. For additional CAD details, visit [building.dupont.com](http://building.dupont.com)

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Non-Flanged Window with Floating Lintel and Brick Facade



FLOATING LINTEL WITH THROUGH WALL FLASHING ADHERED TO DUPONT™ TYVEK® WRB (SIDE VIEW — ALIGNED WITH OPTION 2)

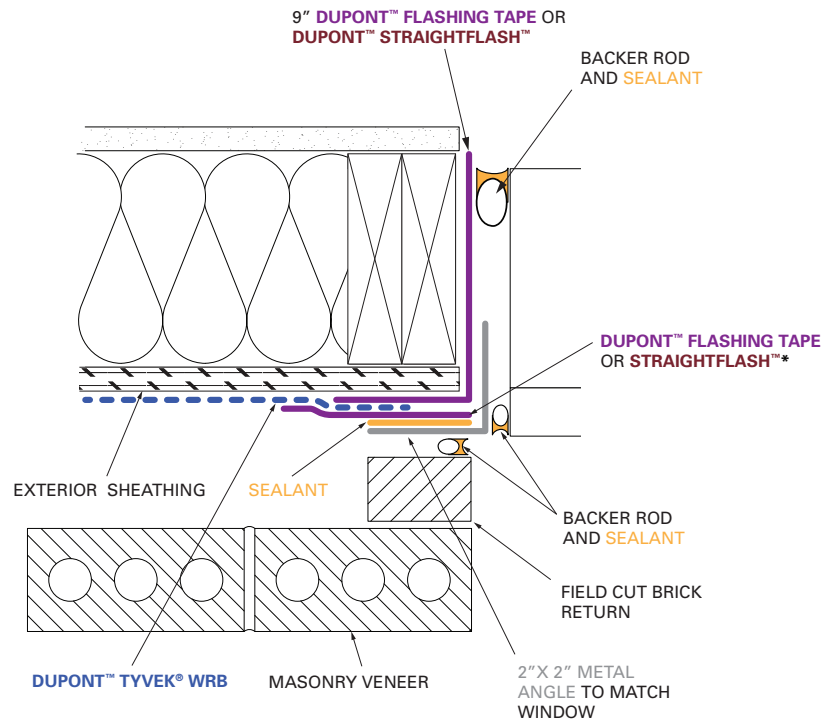
HEAD DETAIL FOR ATTACHED LINTEL WITH SELF-ADHERED THROUGH WALL FLASHING (SIDE VIEW)

**\*NOTE:** For a more robust termination of the Tyvek® WRB, seal with DuPont™ Flashing Tape or StraightFlash™. If a more robust termination is not desired, DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape may be used. See the table in the [Applicable Structures and Performance Criteria](#) section for more information on air barrier requirements and Tyvek® WRB terminations.

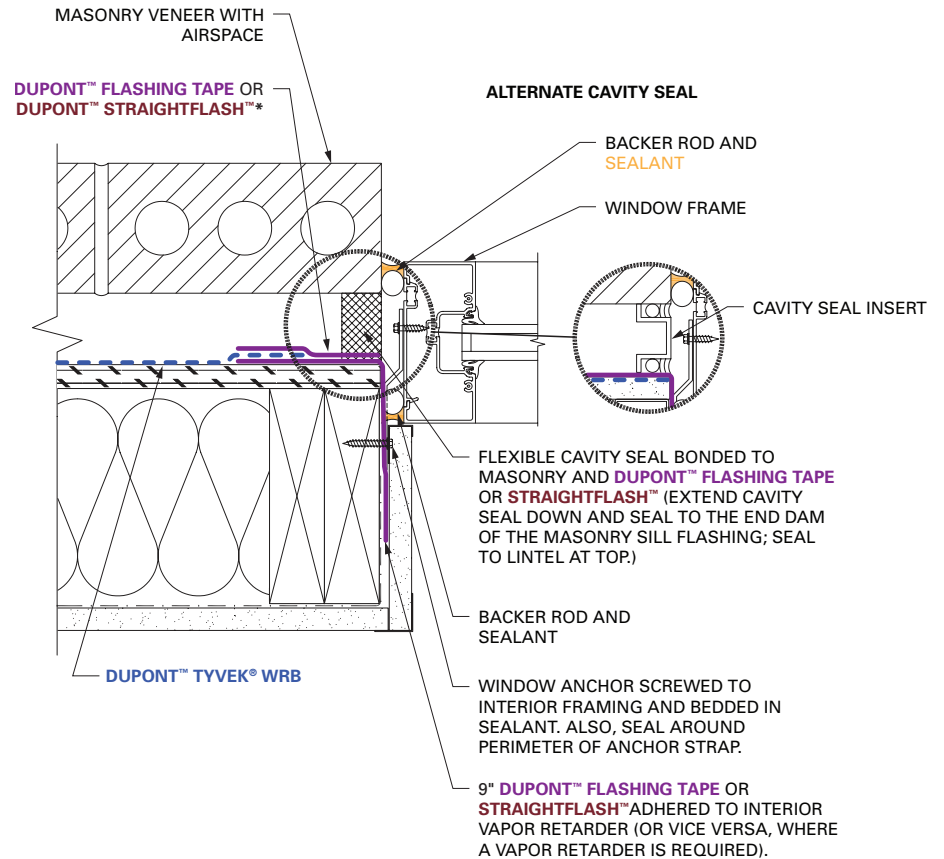
**NOTE:** CAD details not to scale. For additional CAD details, visit [building.dupont.com](http://building.dupont.com)

# Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

## Non-Flanged Window with Floating Lintel and Brick Facade



OPTIONAL JAMB DETAIL (TOP VIEW)



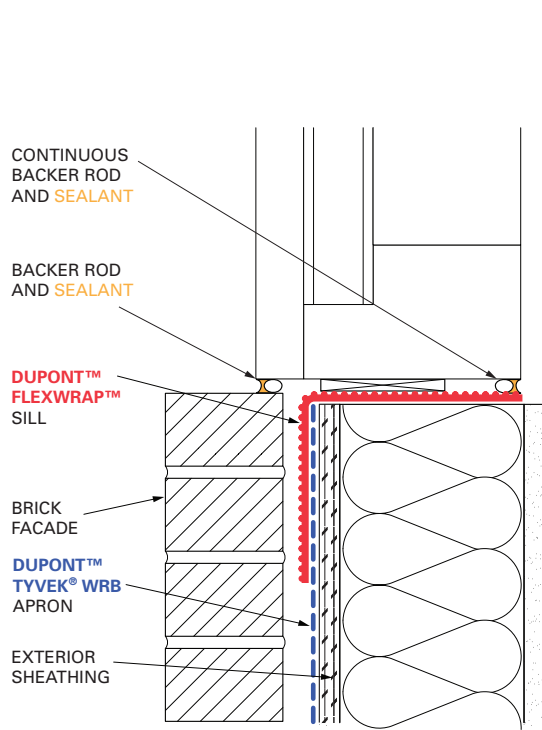
OPTIONAL JAMB DETAIL (TOP VIEW)

**\*NOTE:** For a more robust termination of the Tyvek® WRB, seal with DuPont™ Flashing Tape or StraightFlash™. If a more robust termination is not desired, DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape may be used. See the table in the [Applicable Structures and Performance Criteria](#) section for more information on air barrier requirements and Tyvek® WRB terminations.

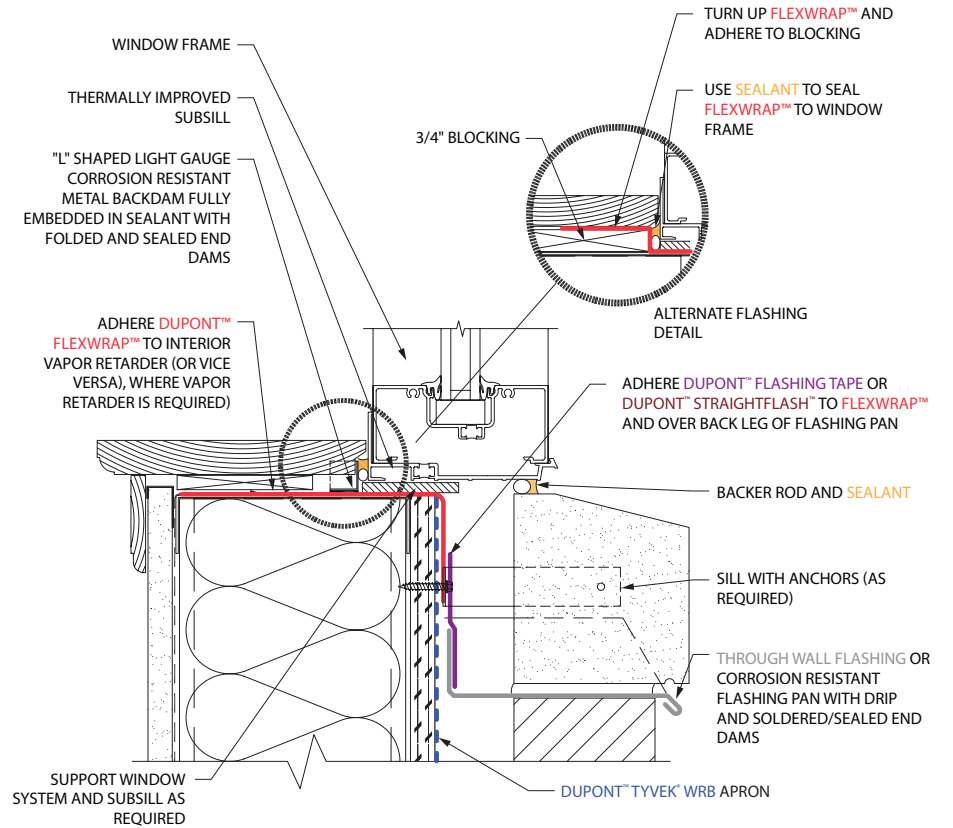
**NOTE:** CAD details not to scale. For additional CAD details, visit [building.dupont.com](http://building.dupont.com)

# Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

## Non-Flanged Window with Floating Lintel and Brick Facade



SILL DETAIL (SIDE VIEW)

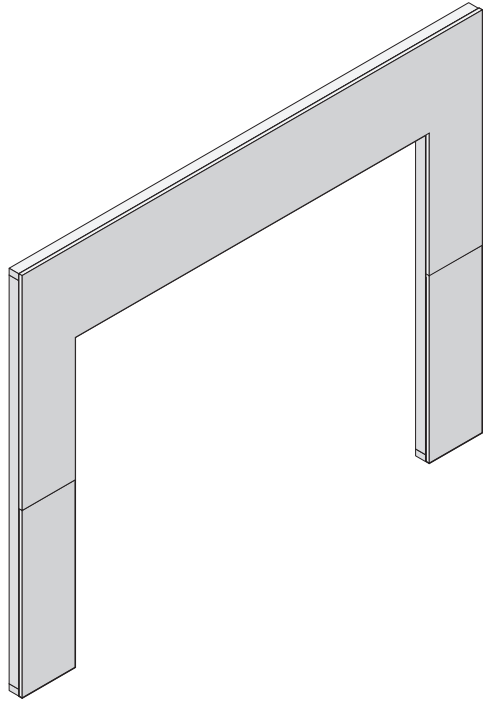


SILL DETAIL (SIDE VIEW) METAL THROUGH WALL FLASHING

**NOTE:** CAD details not to scale. For additional CAD details, visit [building.dupont.com](http://building.dupont.com)

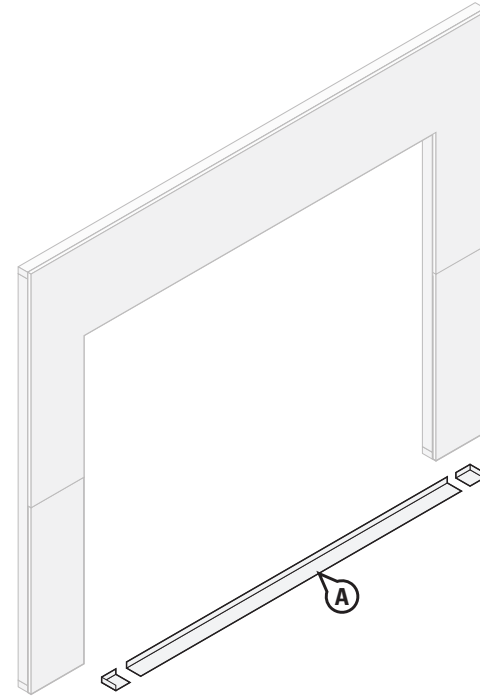
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Door on Slab

This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, and DuPont™ FlexWrap™



### STEP 1

A. Cut rough opening in sheathing for window.

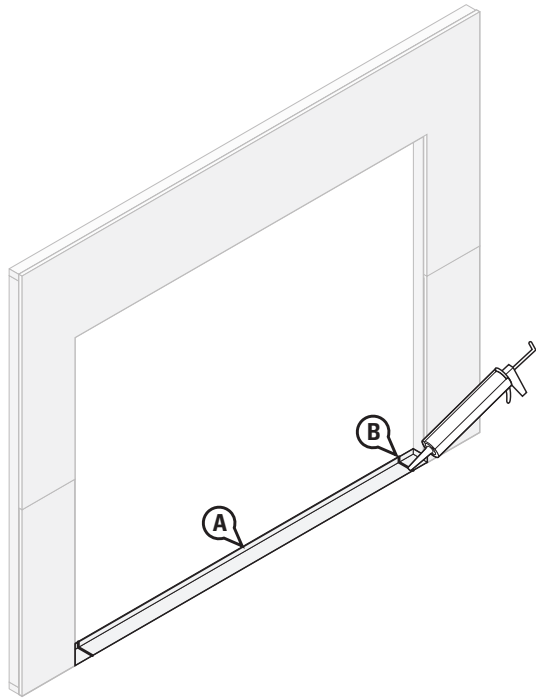


### STEP 2

- A. Prepare the sill flashing per manufacturer's recommendation and seal the corner pan flashing with sealant.
- B. Inspect installation surface to ensure surface is free of dirt or other substances that could affect sill flashing installation, as well as any sharp protrusions.

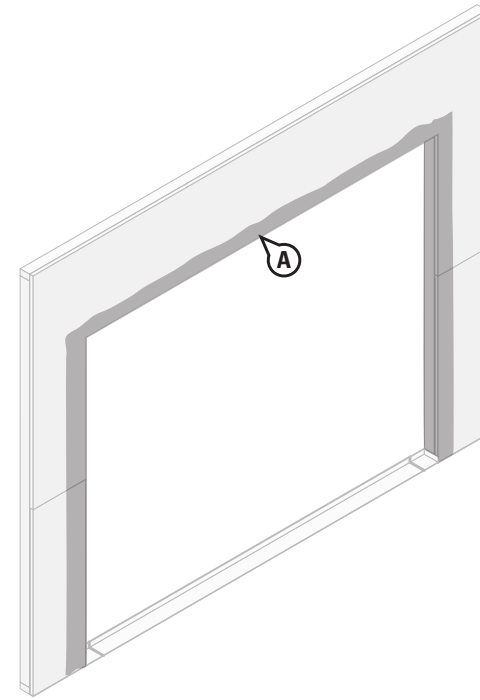
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Non-Flanged Door on Slab



#### STEP 3

- A. Shim, level and anchor pan per manufacturer's instructions for flashing to concrete.
- B. Seal corner pan flashing seams with sealant.

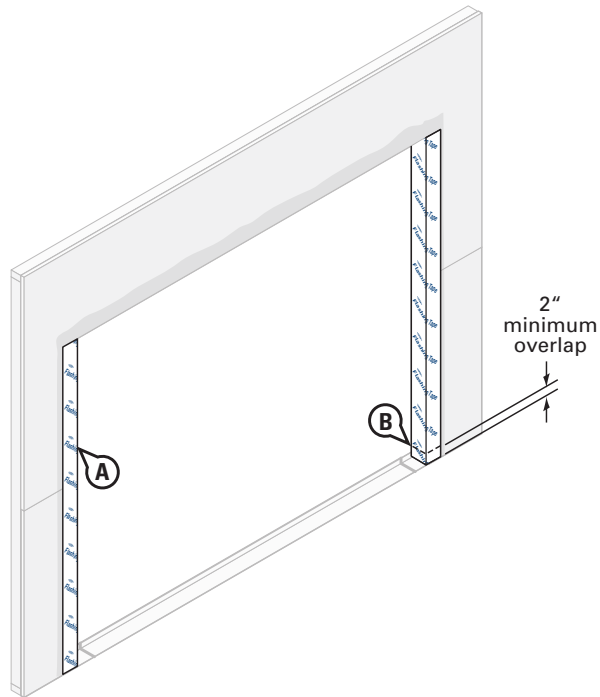


#### STEP 4

- A. For exterior gypsum sheathing, apply a [\*chemically-compatible adhesive/primer\*](#) to the sheathing at the jambs and head.

**NOTE:** An adhesive/primer is not required for wood-based sheathing, except when applying flashing during adverse weather conditions.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Door on Slab

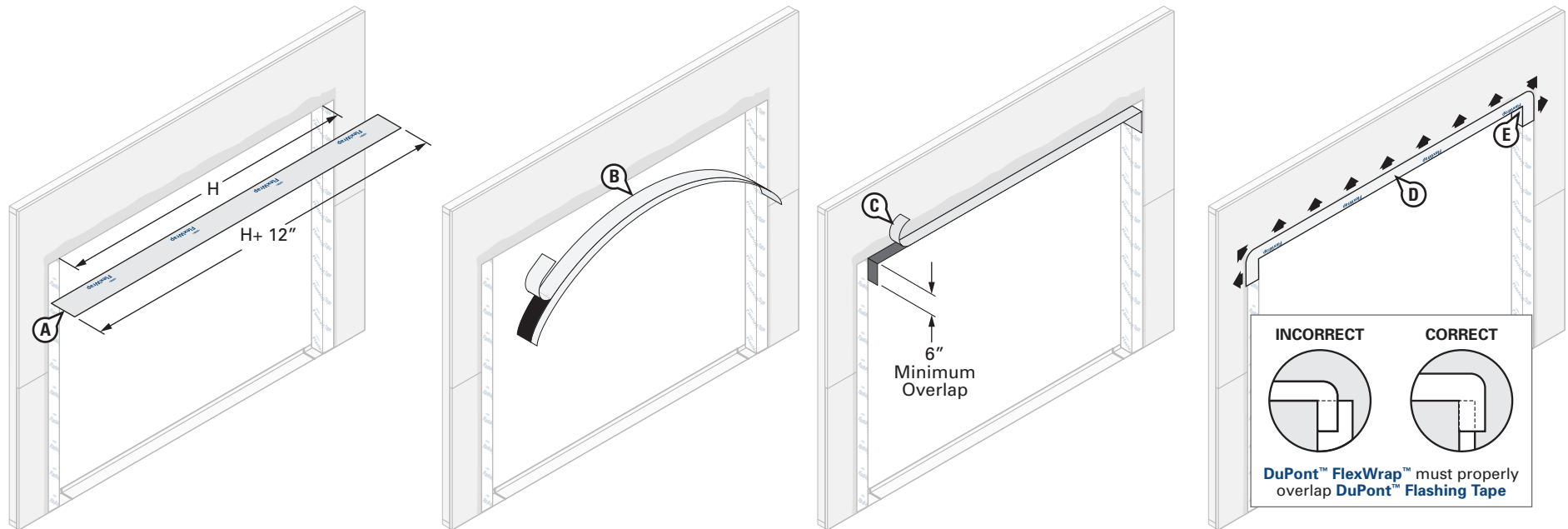


### STEP 5

- A. Wrap 9" **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** into the rough opening at each jamb and onto wall face. The flashing should align with the interior edge of the jamb framing. Cut the jamb flashing the vertical length of the rough opening.
- B. Jamb flashing should be long enough to overlap the sill flashing by at least 2" and be overlapped by future head flashing by at least 2".

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Non-Flanged Door on Slab



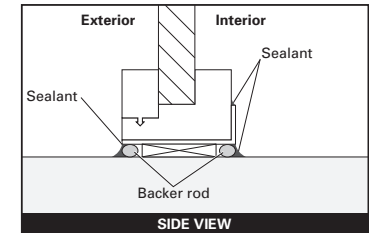
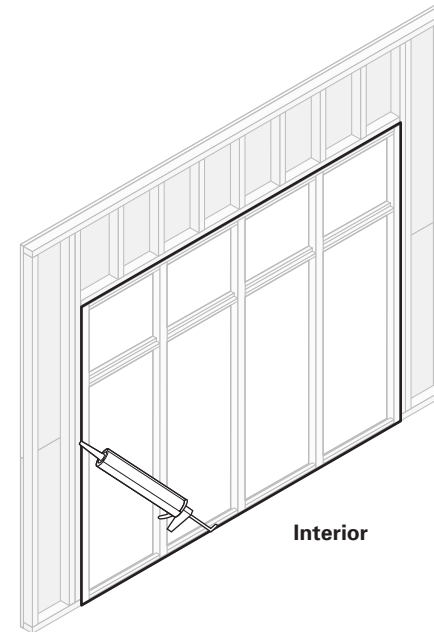
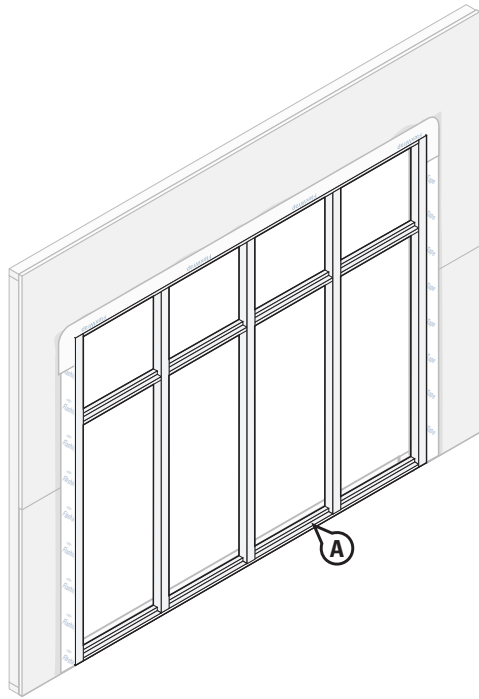
## STEP 6

### Install DuPont™ FlexWrap™ at Head

- A. Cut **FlexWrap™** at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening head (H). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- B. Fold the **FlexWrap™** in half lengthwise to create a slight crease at the center. Remove the wide piece of release paper on one side of the fold. Align the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2"– 3" of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall. Starting at the crease, adhere the **FlexWrap™** at the center of the horizontal portion of the head framing to ensure a minimum of 6" down each jamb. Adhere into rough opening at one corner and down the jamb. Remove the remaining release paper, and repeat at opposite corner.
- C. Remove narrow release paper.
- D. Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along the head.
- E. Use sufficient width of **FlexWrap™** to avoid reverse shingling of flashing at the jamb and head interface. See detail above.

**NOTE:** DuPont™ Tyvek® Certified Installers may install a 3-piece head (and sill) detail for window openings less than 6 ft. wide. For windows greater than 6 ft. wide, see the [Special Considerations](#) section for more information regarding the 3-piece head/sill detail. Contact your local DuPont Building Envelope Specialist for more information about the Certified Installer program.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Door on Slab



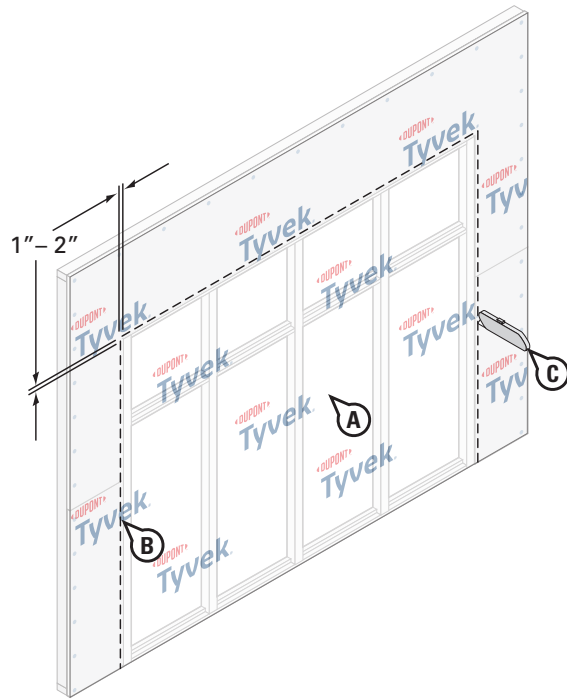
### STEP 7

- A. Install storefront window per manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Glaze windows per manufacturer's instructions.

### STEP 8

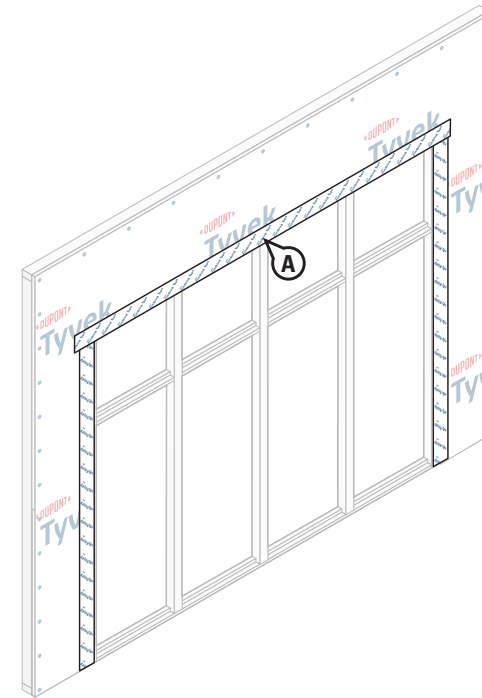
Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the window opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Door on Slab



### STEP 9

- Install the **Tyvek® WRB** according to the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section in this guide. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the window frame at jambs and head.
- Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough opening 1"– 2" from the jambs and head of the window frame.
- Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window. **Do not** cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** underneath.



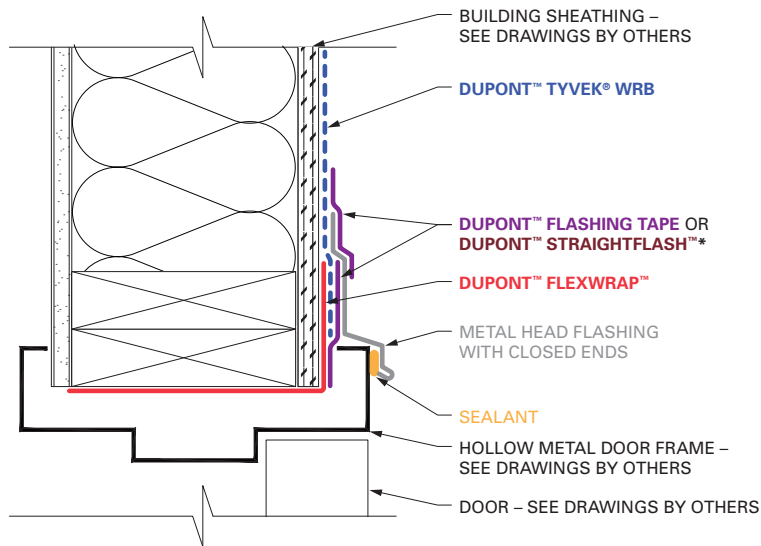
### STEP 10

#### Final Step

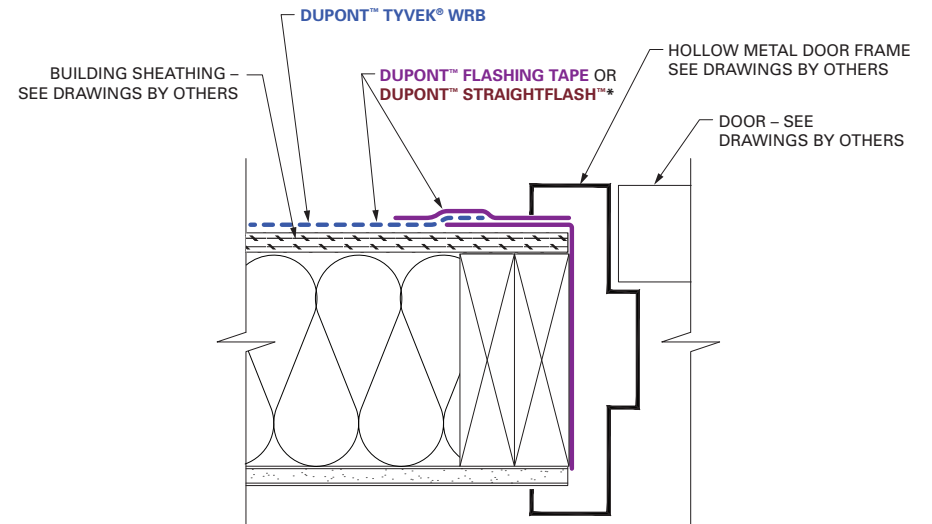
- Starting at the jambs and then the head, terminate the **Tyvek® WRB** using **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, or **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.

**NOTE:** For a more robust termination, seal with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™**. Install mechanical fasteners through flashing as needed for increased holding power. See the table in the [Applicable Structures and Performance Criteria](#) section for more information on air barrier requirements and terminations.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Door on Slab



HEAD DETAIL (SIDE VIEW) – HOLLOW METAL DOOR



JAMB DETAIL (TOP VIEW) – HOLLOW METAL DOOR

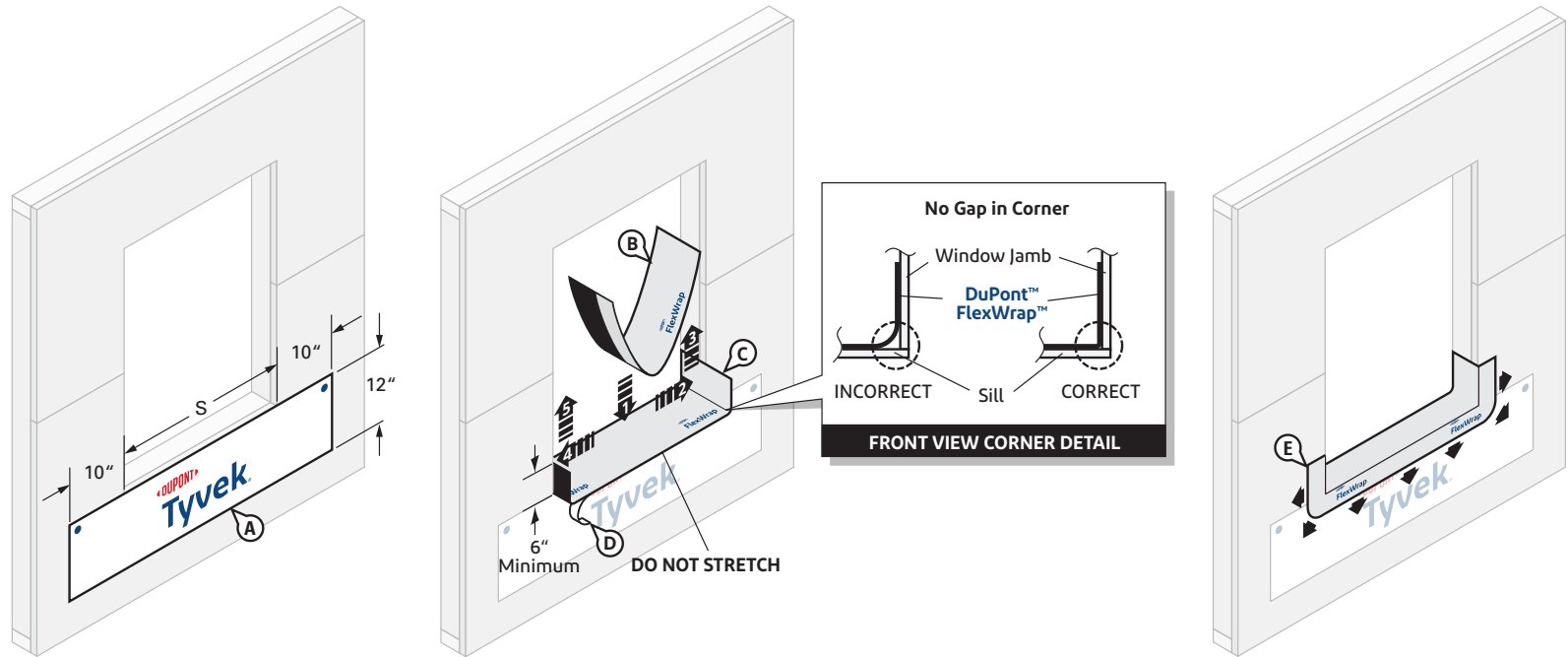
**\*NOTE:** For a more robust termination of the **Tyvek® WRB**, seal with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™**. If a more robust termination is not desired, **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** may be used. See the table in the [Applicable Structures and Performance Criteria](#) section for more information on air barrier requirements and **Tyvek® WRB** terminations.

**NOTE:** CAD details not to scale. For additional CAD details, visit [building.dupont.com](http://building.dupont.com)

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

Ensure **VersaFlange™** logo side faces the exterior. Use of **VersaFlange™** requires a smooth-framed window for proper adhesion to the frame.

This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, DuPont™ VersaFlange™, DuPont™ FlexWrap™, and DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ



### STEP 1

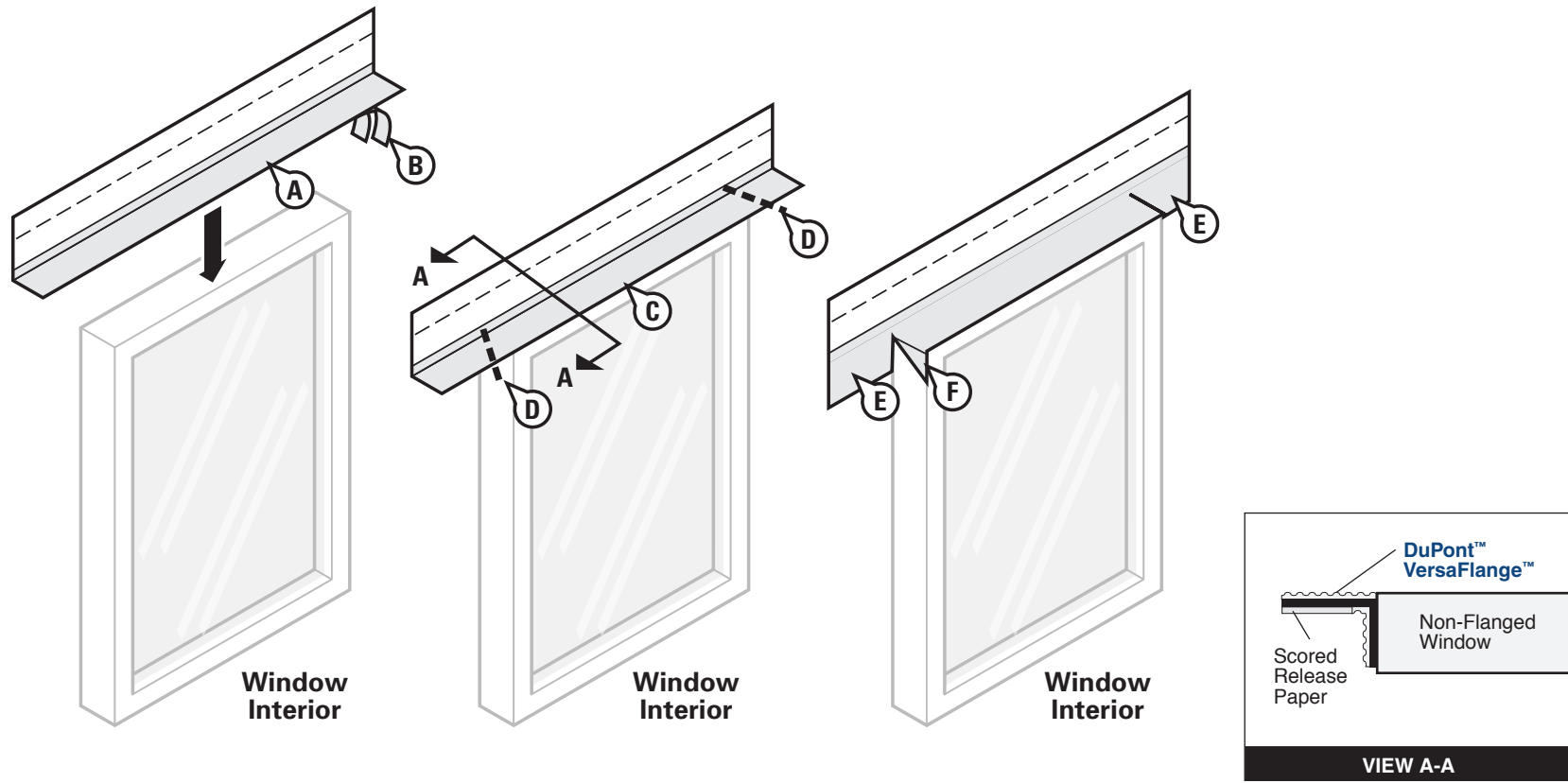
#### Prepare Tyvek® WRB Apron

**OPTIONAL:** Refer to the [Alternative Installation Considerations](#) section for guidance for using DuPont™ Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™ in lieu of a Tyvek® WRB apron if desired.

- Cut an apron made of Tyvek® WRB for attachment under sill of rough opening. Apron should extend at least 10" **BEYOND** the sides of rough opening jambs (or to first stud in open stud construction) and at least 12" below sill of rough opening, or extend far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the Tyvek® WRB below. The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall and the bottom of the apron should be left unsecured so it can overlap the Tyvek® WRB which will be installed after the window. Avoid placing DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners where DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products will be installed.
- Cut FlexWrap™ at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening sill (S). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"- 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.

- Remove wide piece of release paper. Position on horizontal sill by aligning the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2"- 3" of the FlexWrap™ will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6" up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening.
- Remove narrow release paper.
- Fan out the FlexWrap™ at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill.

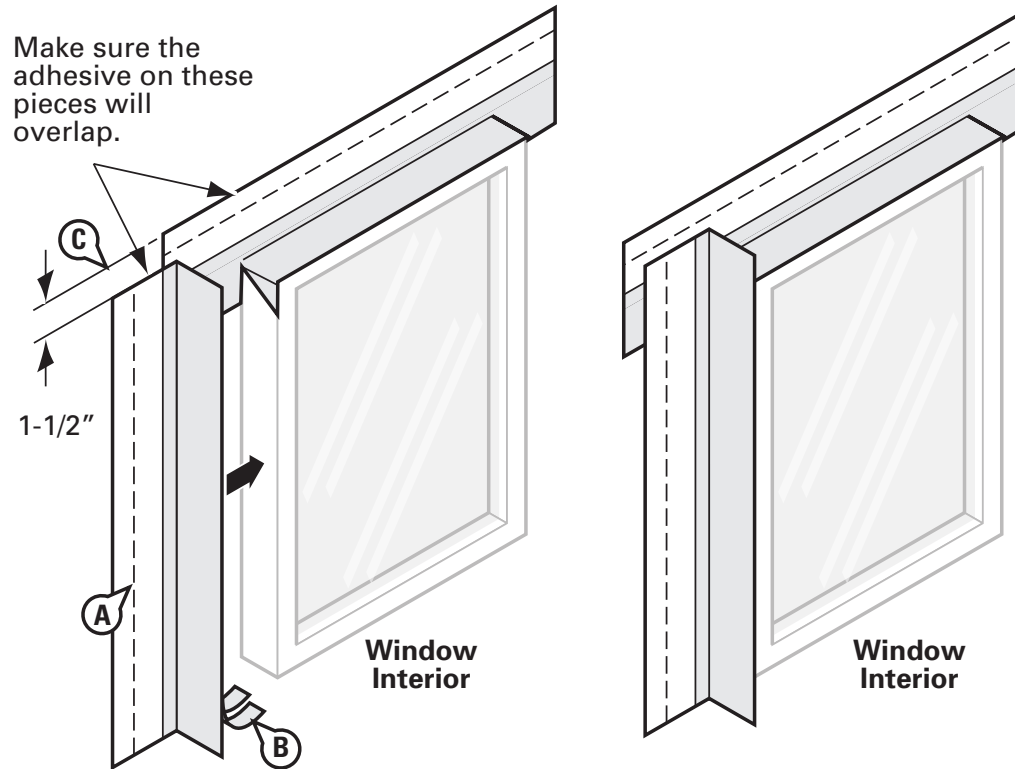
Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB  
Non-Flanged Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



STEP 2

- A. Prepare head flashing by cutting a piece of **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** at least 12" **LONGER** than the head length.
- B. Remove the release paper from one side of the **VersaFlange™**.
- C. Center the **VersaFlange™** along the length of the window and position so that it contacts the window frame.
- D. Beginning at the junction of the jamb and head and away from the corners, cut the **VersaFlange™** at a 45° angle.
- E. Fold the newly created flashing flaps down parallel to the window frame.
- F. Fold remaining head flashing flaps down onto the jamb.

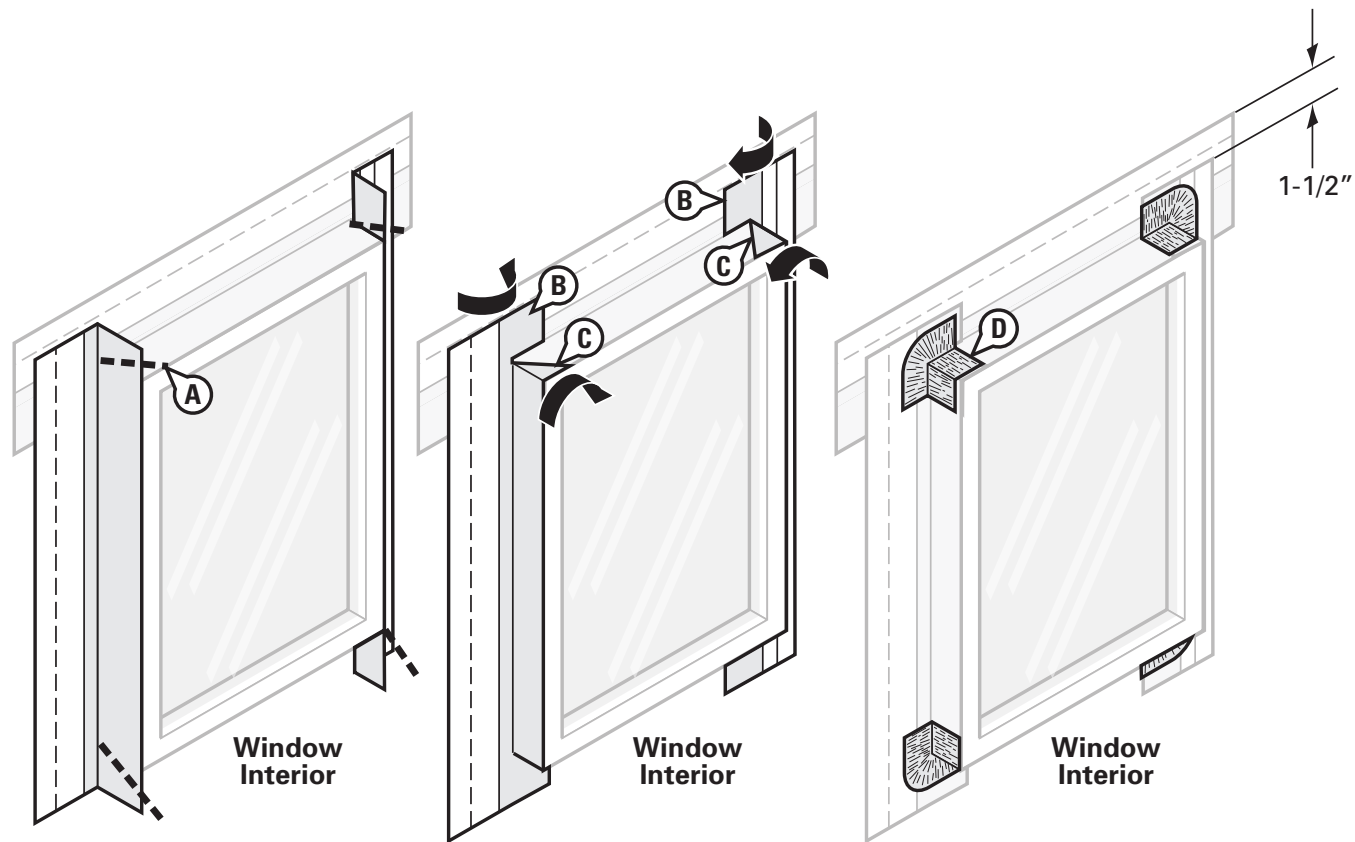
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



### STEP 3

- A. Prepare jamb flashing by cutting a piece of **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** at least 6" **LONGER** than the jamb length.
- B. Remove the release paper from one side of the **VersaFlange™**.
- C. Position the **VersaFlange™** so that it contacts the window frame up to the exterior face of the window. Ensure that the jamb flashing is positioned 1-1/2" below top of head flashing. **Jamb flashing adhesive must come in contact with head flashing adhesive and overlap by 1"**.
- D. Repeat on opposite jamb.

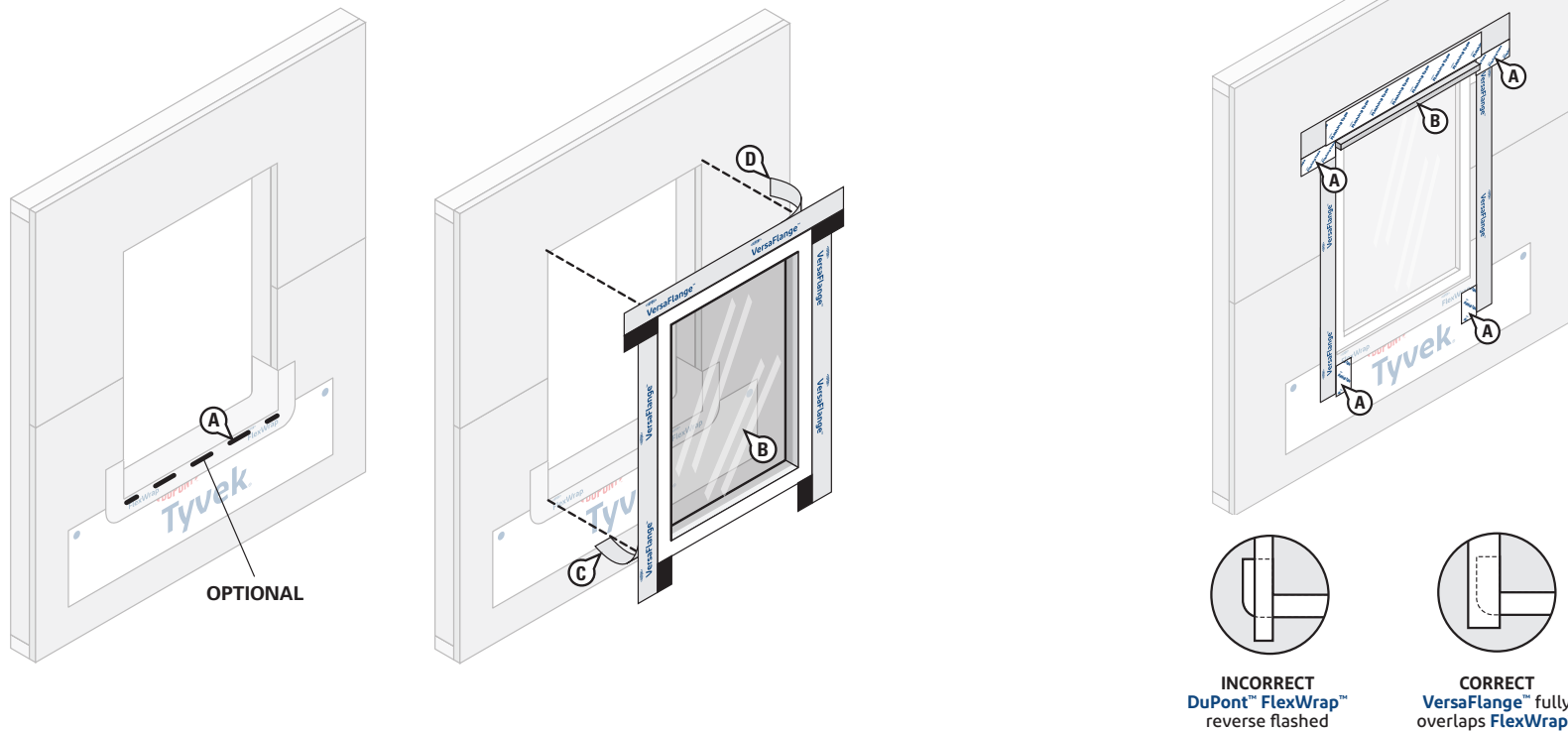
Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB  
Non-Flanged Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



STEP 4

- A. Beginning at the junction of the jambs and the head, and away from the corners, cut the **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** at a 45° angle. Repeat the procedure at the junction of the sill and jambs.
- B. In order to overlap jamb adhesive to the head flashing adhesive, temporarily pull back release liner on the head flashing. Fold cut jamb flashing parallel to the window frame so that the jamb flashing lies flat onto the head flashing. Fold the head flashing release liner back down to protect any remaining exposed butyl along the head flashing prior to installation of the window.
- C. Fold remaining jamb flashing flaps down at all corners and adhere to the window frame.
- D. Cut four 3" x 3" pieces of **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** or four 3" pieces of **DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ** and add patches to corners of the window.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



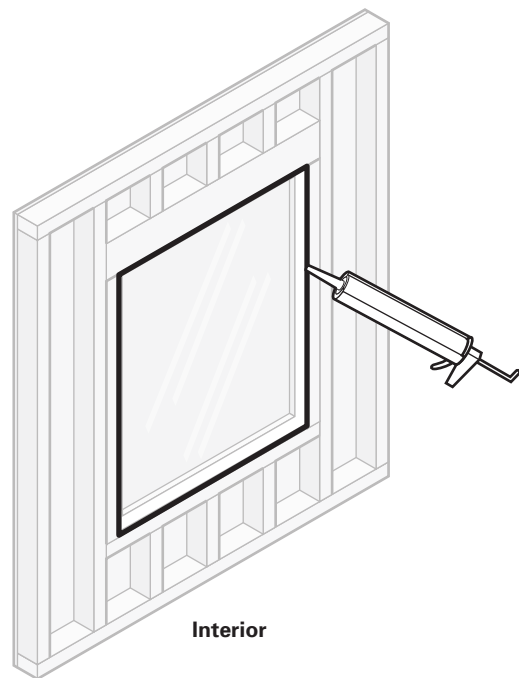
### STEP 5

- OPTIONAL:** Apply a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) along the sill as shown above. **To allow for drainage, do not apply continuous sealant bead along sill.** Ensure a minimum 2" wide drainage gap in the sealant bead within 4" from **each corner** of the jamb-sill interface. Continue applying sealant along the sill with additional 2" wide (min.) drainage gaps for every 6"- 12" (on center) of sill width.
- Install window according to manufacturer's installation instructions.
- Remove the remaining release paper from the DuPont™ VersaFlange™ jamb flashing and press firmly to adhere the butyl adhesive to the exterior sheathing or framing members. **Do not reverse shingle. VersaFlange™ must overlap DuPont™ FlexWrap™** and adhere to the substrate.
- Remove the release paper at the head and adhere the VersaFlange™ to the exterior sheathing or framing members.

### STEP 6

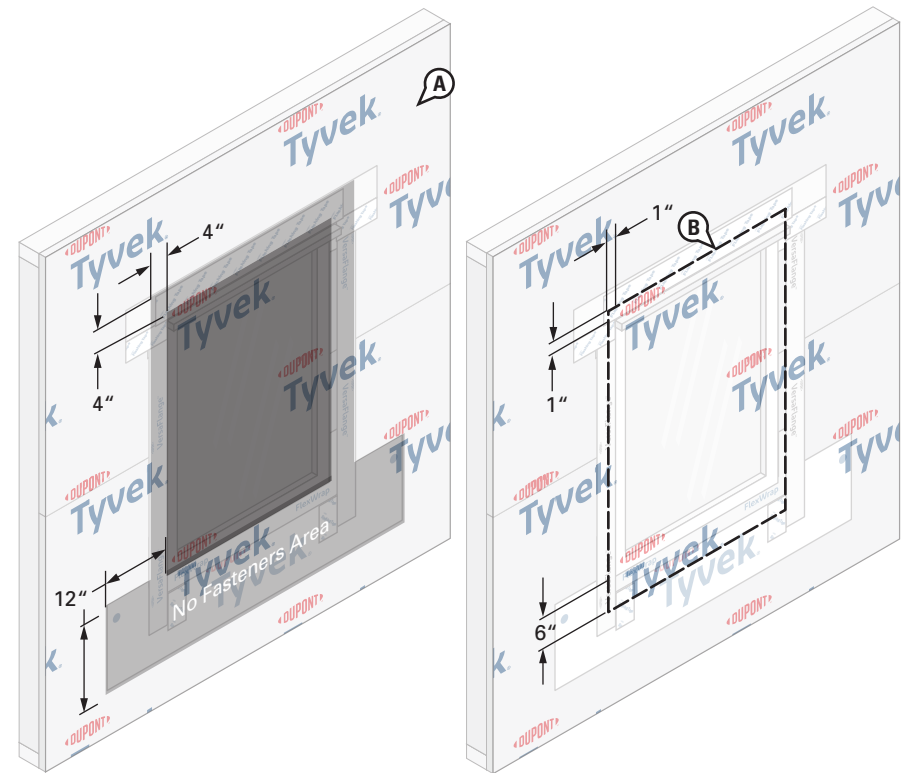
- OPTIONAL:** Cover exposed butyl with DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, or DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape.
- OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the window installation **BEFORE** the Tyvek® WRB is installed and sealed, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 2](#).

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



### STEP 7

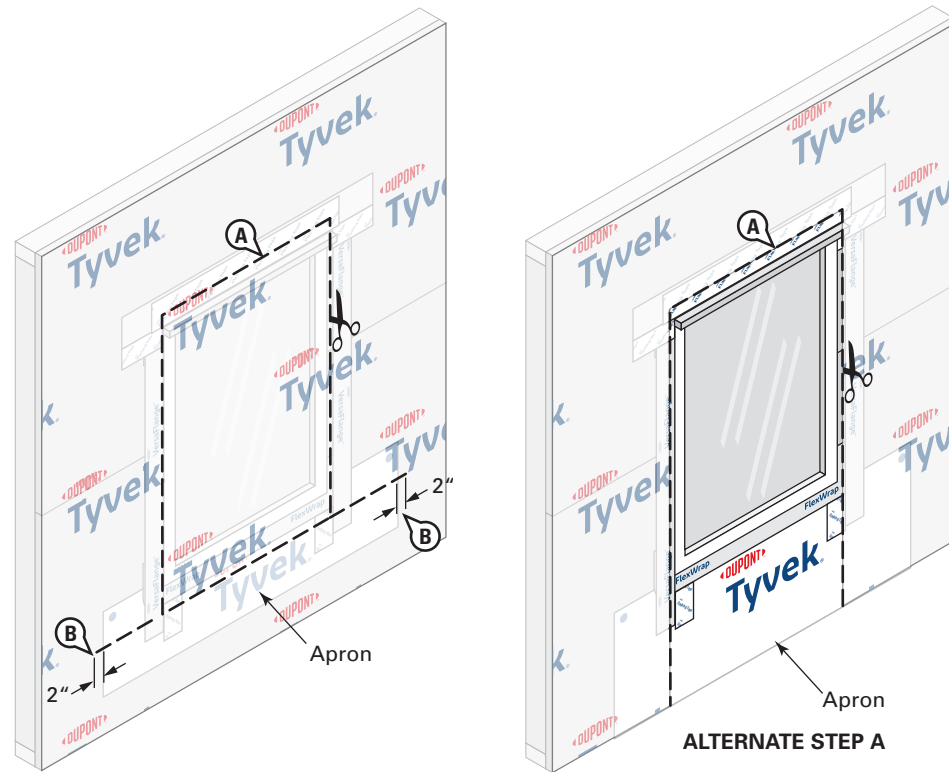
Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the window opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.



### STEP 8

- Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the window frame at jambs and head and within 12" of the window frame at sill or location of apron.
- Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough opening a minimum of 1" from the jambs and head of the window frame, and 6" below the sill of the window frame.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

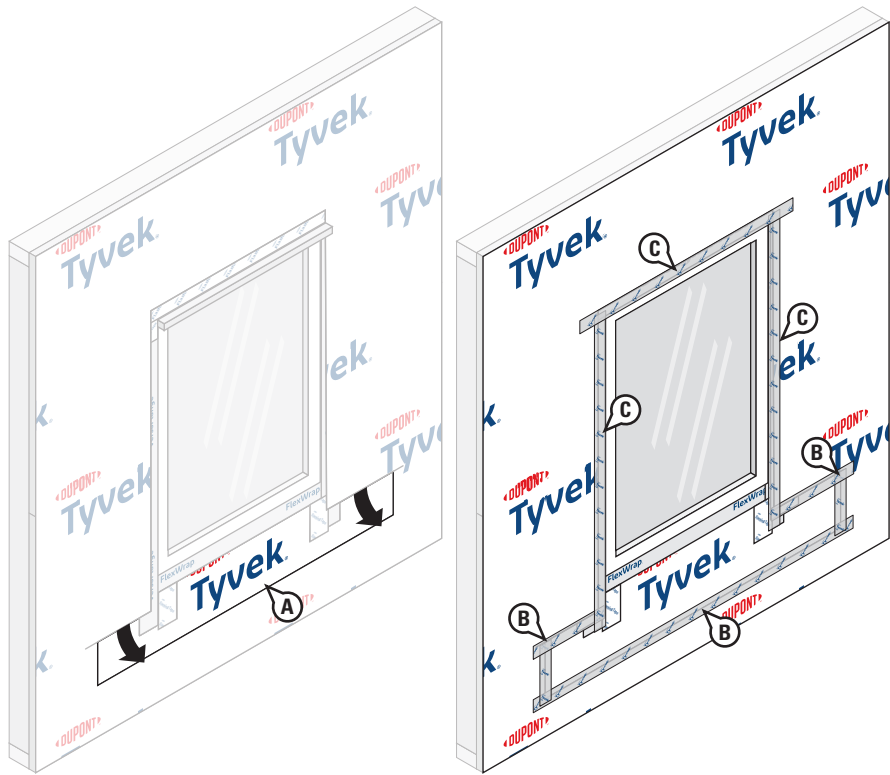


### STEP 9

- A. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.
- B. Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend 1"– 2" **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.

**ALTERNATE STEP A:** If apron extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap apron.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Window (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



### STEP 10

#### Final Step

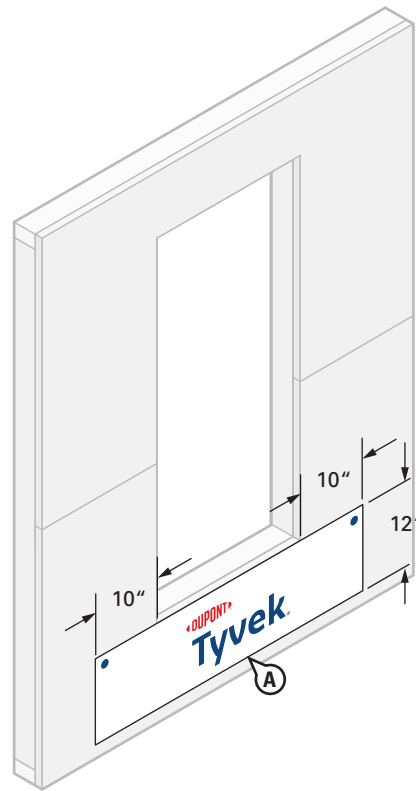
- A. Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- B. Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
- C. Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jamb and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around window. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap **AFTER** the **Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 3](#).

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Non-Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

This installation guide is intended for doors installed above grade and/or with wood floor construction. Use of **VersaFlange™** requires a **smooth-framed door** for proper adhesion of the adhesive to the frame.

This method applies to the following products: **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, **DuPont™ VersaFlange™**, **DuPont™ FlexWrap™**, and **DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ**



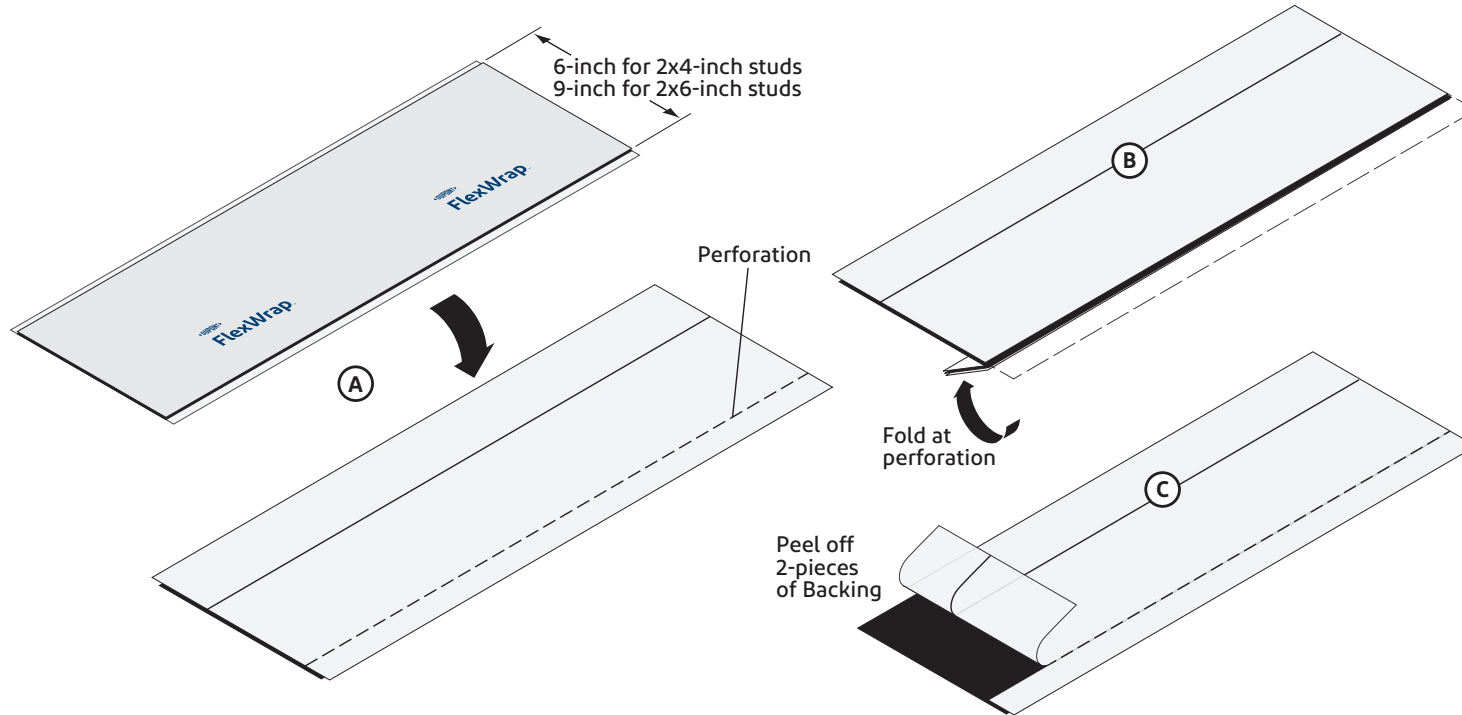
## STEP 1

### Prepare Tyvek® WRB Apron

**OPTIONAL:** Refer to the [Alternative Installation Considerations](#) section for guidance for using **DuPont™ Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™** in lieu of a **Tyvek® WRB** apron if desired.

- A. Cut an apron made of **Tyvek® WRB** for attachment under sill of rough opening. Apron should extend at least 10" **BEYOND** the sides of rough opening jambs (or to first stud in open stud construction) and at least 12" below sill of rough opening, or extend far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below. The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall and the bottom of the apron should be left unsecured so it can overlap the **Tyvek® WRB** which will be installed after the door. Avoid placing **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners** where **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** will be installed.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)

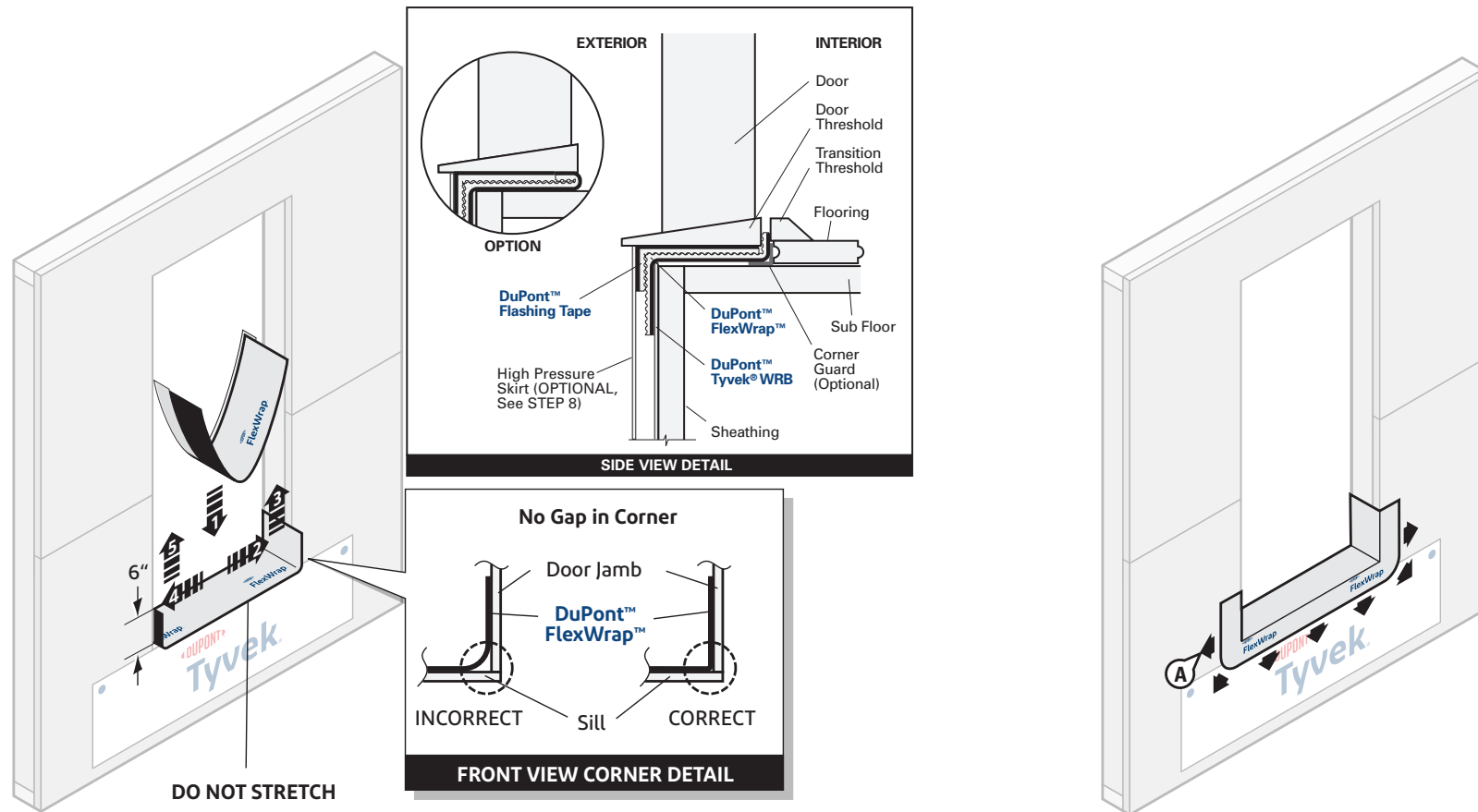


### STEP 2

#### Preparation of Sill Flashing

- Cut a piece of 9" wide DuPont™ FlexWrap™ at least 12" **LONGER** than the width of the sill (S). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the door frame will be located, ensuring 2"–3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- 9" FlexWrap™ has perforated release paper to help with the formation of a back dam. To ensure that the perforation tears cleanly, fold the perforation 180° and crease the flashing.
- Remove the two widest pieces of release paper leaving the narrowest release paper on the flashing. When the finished floor is applied, the release paper can be removed and the back dam can be completed.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



### STEP 3 (OPTIONAL BACK DAM)

Position the sill flashing as indicated so the section with the release paper still attached extends past the door threshold on the inside. Ensure that 2"– 3" of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6" up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening. When the narrow release paper is removed, the remaining section of **FlexWrap™** can be used to form a back dam.

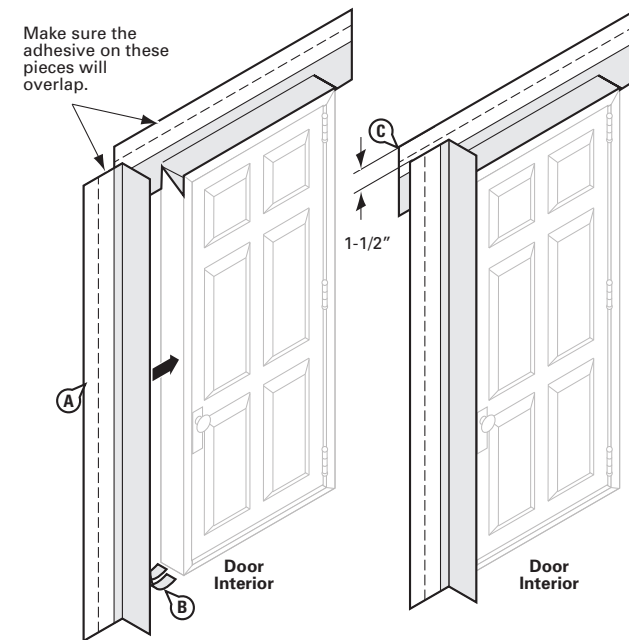
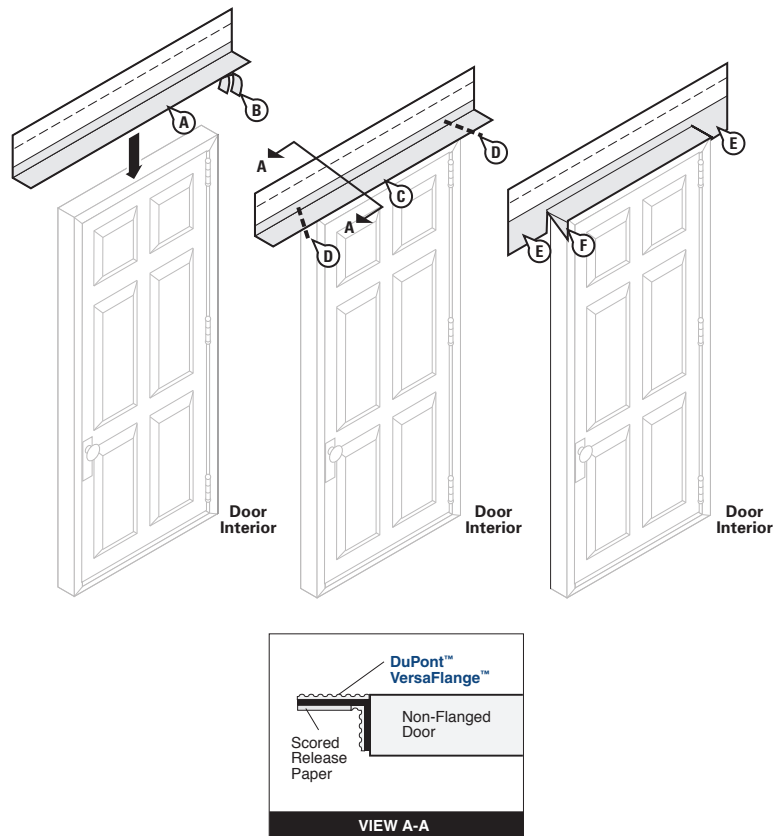
**OPTIONAL: Create back dam by folding back narrow section of FlexWrap™.** Some flooring cannot accommodate a back dam. In that case fold the back dam on top of **FlexWrap™** in the sill. The door will be installed on top of the fold to create a back dam (see Side View Detail above).

### STEP 4

- A. Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill. Coverage of **FlexWrap™** should be 2"– 3" onto the face of the wall.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Non-Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



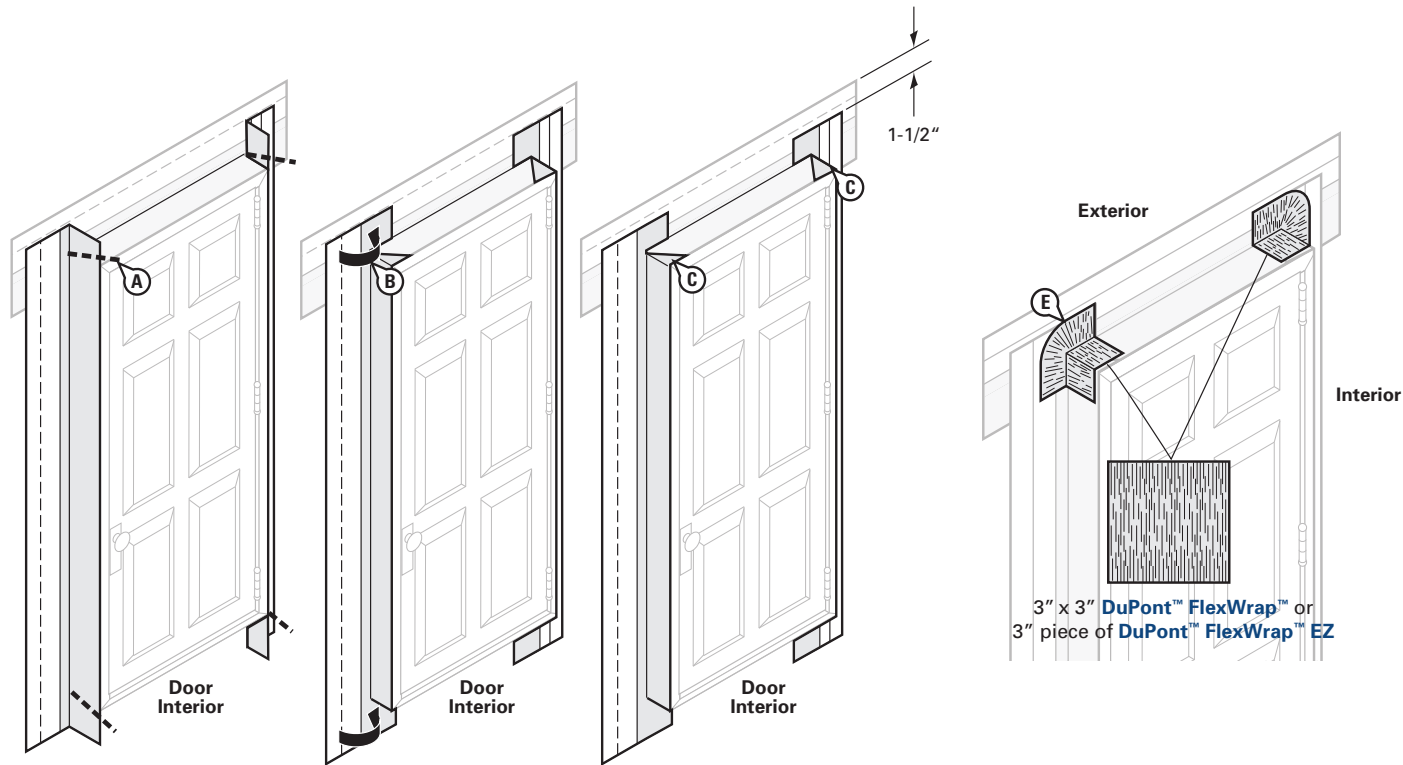
#### STEP 5

- Prepare head flashing by cutting a piece of **VersaFlange™** at least 12" **LONGER** than the head length.
- Remove the release paper from one side of the **VersaFlange™**.
- Center the **VersaFlange™** along the length of the door and position so that it contacts the door frame.
- Beginning at the junction of the jamb and head and away from the corners, cut the **VersaFlange™** at a 45° angle.
- Fold the newly created flashing flaps down parallel to the door frame.
- Fold the remaining head flashing flaps down and adhere to the jamb frame.

#### STEP 6

- Prepare jamb flashing by cutting a piece of **VersaFlange™** at least 6" **LONGER** than the jamb length.
- Remove the release paper from one side of the **VersaFlange™**.
- Position so that the **VersaFlange™** contacts the door frame up to the exterior face of the door. Ensure that the jamb flashing is positioned 1-1/2" below top of head flashing. **Jamb flashing adhesive must come in contact with head flashing adhesive and overlap by 1"**.
- Repeat on opposite jamb.

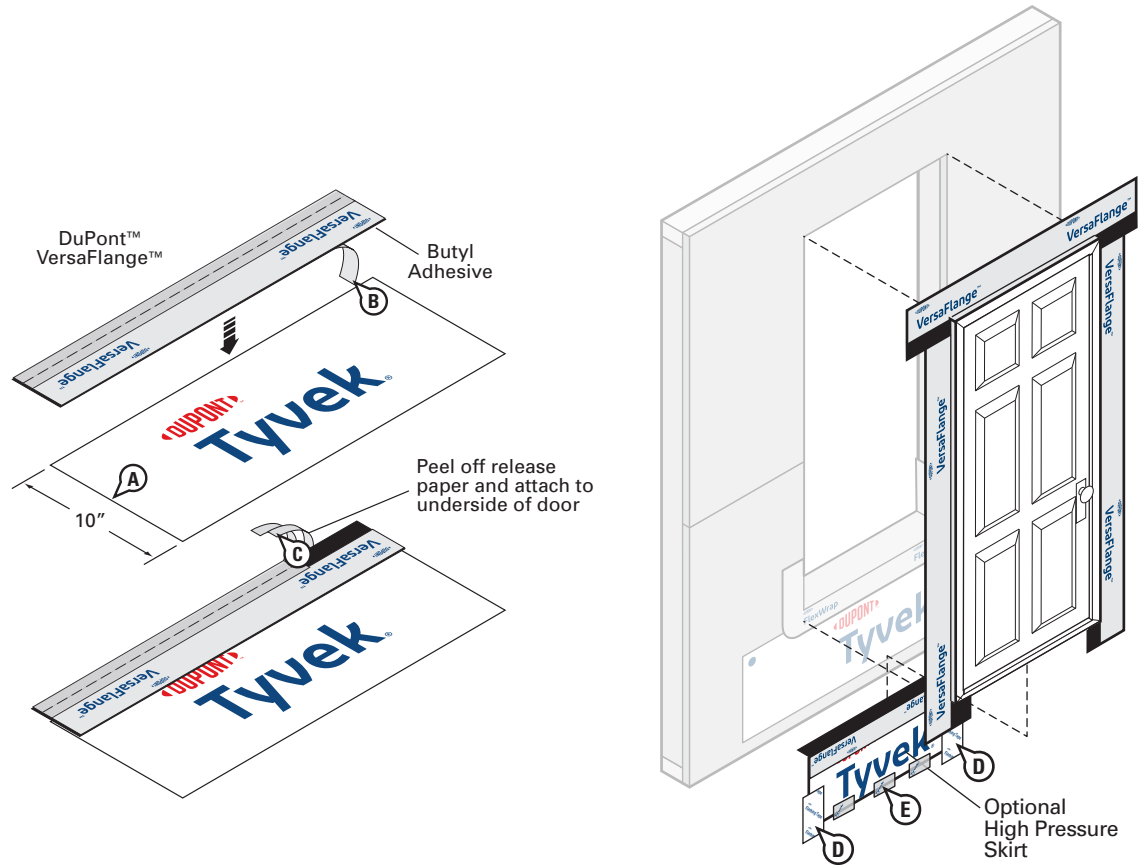
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



### STEP 7

- A. Beginning at the junction of the jamb and the head, and away from the corner, cut the **VersaFlange™** at a 45° angle. Repeat the procedure at the junction of the sill and jambs.
- B. In order to overlap jamb adhesive to the head flashing adhesive, temporarily pull back release liner on the head flashing. Fold cut jamb flashing parallel to the door frame so that the jamb flashing lies flat onto the head flashing. Fold the head flashing release liner back down to protect any remaining exposed butyl along the head flashing prior to installation of the door.
- C. Fold remaining jamb flashing flaps down at all corners and adhere to the door frame.
- D. Repeat on opposite jamb.
- E. Cut two 3" x 3" pieces of **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** or two 3" pieces of **DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ** and add patches to corner of the door.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



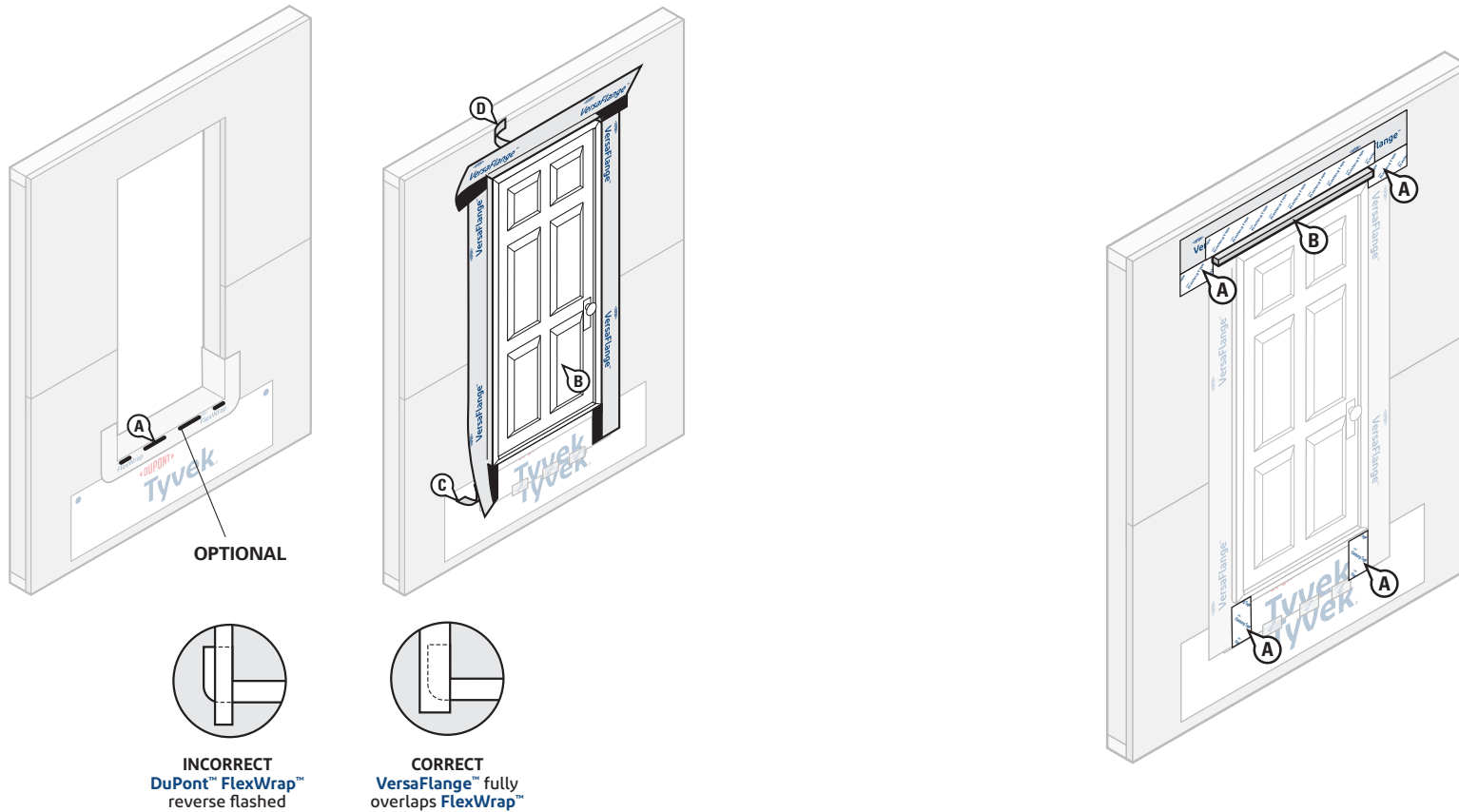
### STEP 8 (OPTIONAL - HIGH PRESSURE SKIRT)

For extreme/coastal exposures, installation of a high-pressure skirt is recommended to help prevent water intrusion at the sill or threshold.

- A. Create the high pressure skirt by cutting a piece of **Tyvek® WRB** 1" **WIDER** than the width of the door opening and approximately 10" in height.
- B. Cut a piece of **VersaFlange™** to the same width of skirt. Remove release paper from one side of the **VersaFlange™** and adhere to the **Tyvek® WRB**. The skirt may be made with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **VersaFlange™**, or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**.

- C. Remove the release paper from the other side of the **VersaFlange™** and adhere the butyl adhesive at the sill skirt to the underside of the door threshold behind the jamb flashing.
- D. After installation of door in Step 9, secure edges of the optional skirt with two 4" pieces of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™**.
- E. Tape the bottom of the optional skirt to allow for drainage and to minimize wind damage during construction.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



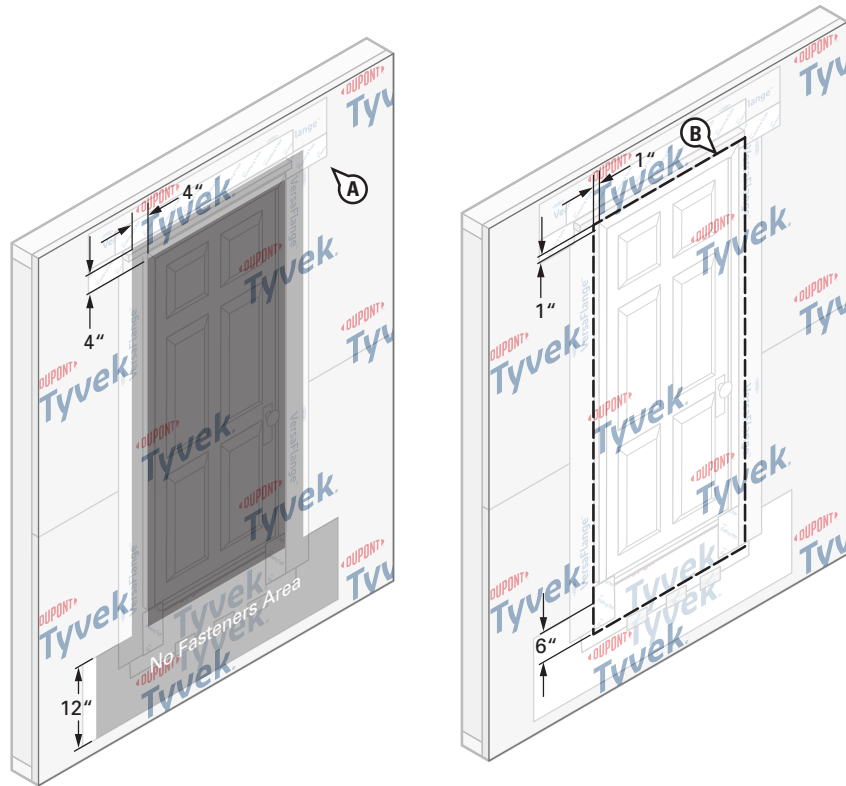
### STEP 9

- A. **OPTIONAL:** Apply a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) along the sill as shown above. **To allow for drainage, do not apply continuous sealant bead along sill.** Ensure a minimum 2" wide drainage gap in the sealant bead within 4" from **each corner** of the jamb-sill interface. Continue applying sealant along the sill with additional 2" wide (min.) drainage gaps for every 6"– 12" (on center) of sill width.
- B. Install door according to manufacturer's installation instructions.
- C. Remove the remaining release paper from the **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** jamb flashing and press firmly to adhere the butyl adhesive to the exterior sheathing or framing members. **Do not reverse shingle.** VersaFlange™ must overlap **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** and adhere to the substrate.
- D. Remove the release paper at the head and adhere the **VersaFlange™** to the exterior sheathing or framing members.

### STEP 10

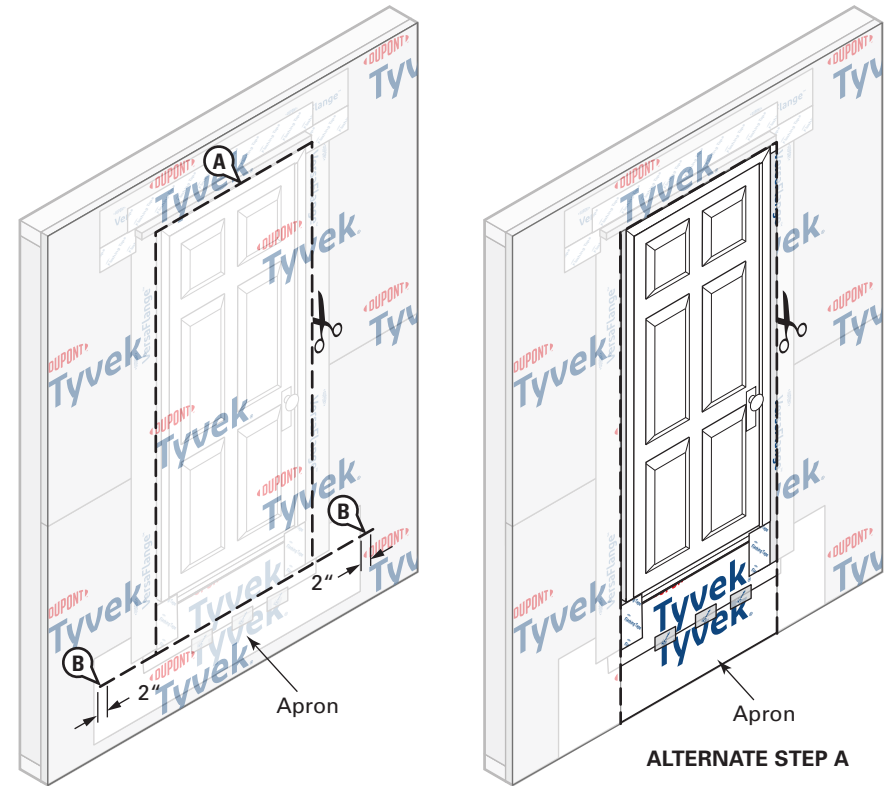
- A. **OPTIONAL:** Cover exposed butyl with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, or **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.
- B. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap as part of the door installation **BEFORE** the **Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed, see [Drip Cap Installation](#) section and refer to [Option 2](#).

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



### STEP 11

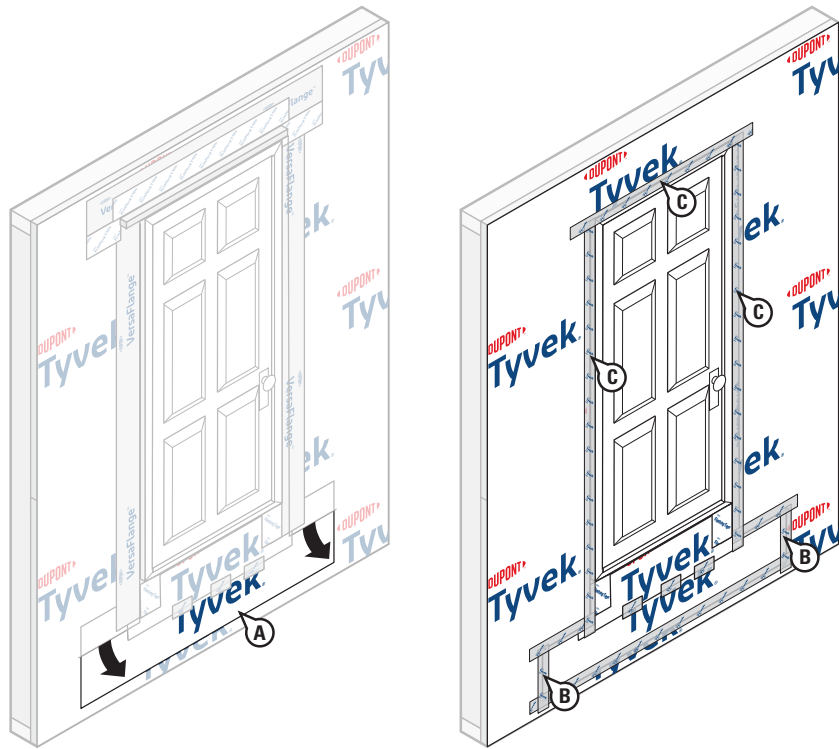
- A. Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the door frame at jambs and head and within 12" of the door frame at sill or location of apron.
- B. Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough opening a minimum of 1" from the jambs and head of the door frame, and 6" below the sill of the door frame.



### STEP 12

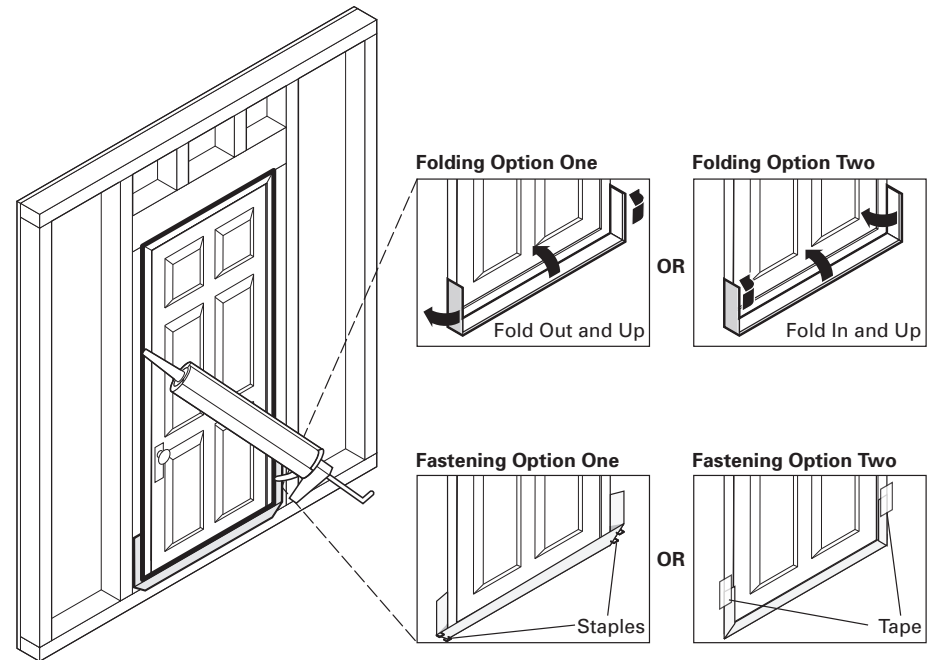
- A. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose door. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.
- ALTERNATE STEP A:** If apron extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap apron.
- B. Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend 1"– 2" **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Non-Flanged Door (Using DuPont™ VersaFlange™)



### STEP 13

- Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
- Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jambs and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around door. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used. **OPTIONAL:** If installing a drip cap **AFTER** the **Tyvek® WRB** is installed and sealed, see *Drip Cap Installation* section and refer to [Option 3](#).



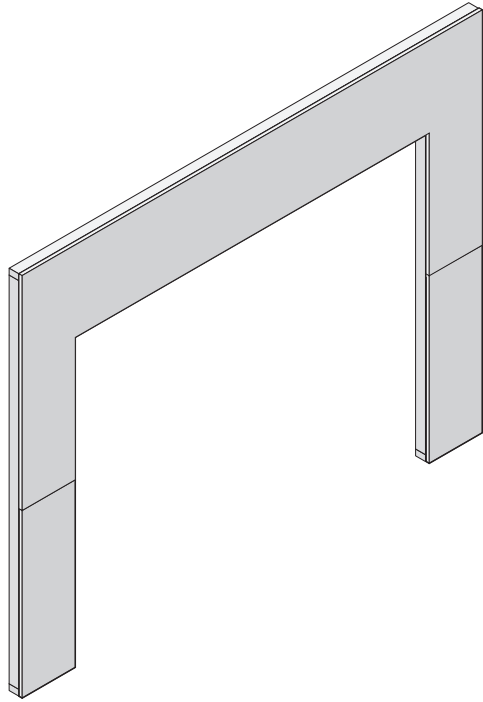
### STEP 14

#### Final Step

- When the interior flooring is ready to install, remove release paper and use Folding Option One or Two (shown above) to form back dam.
- Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the window opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

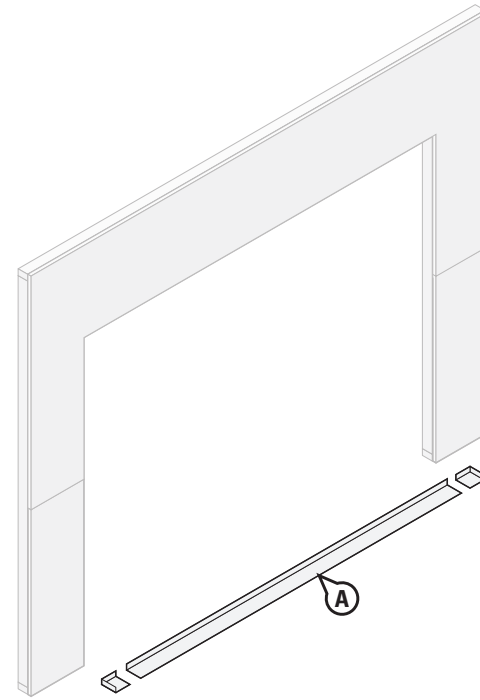
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed **BEFORE** the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Storefront Window on Slab

This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, and DuPont™ FlexWrap™



### STEP 1

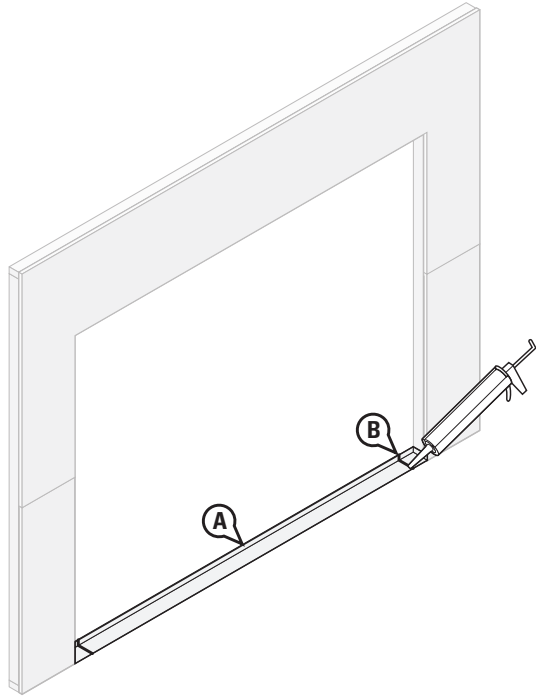
- A. Cut rough opening in sheathing for window.



### STEP 2

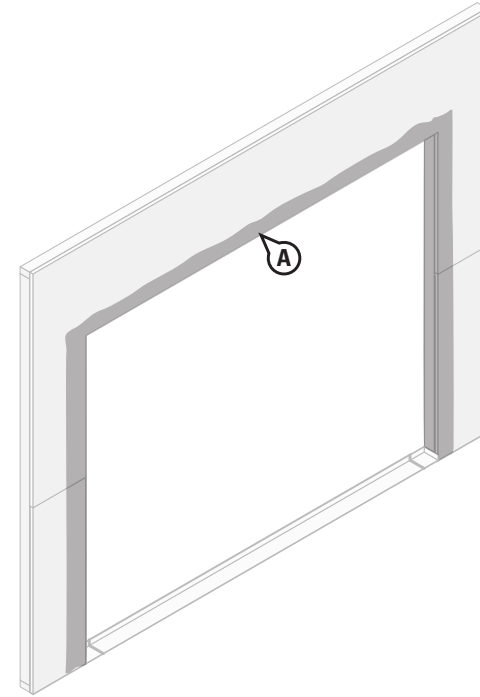
- A. Prepare the sill flashing per manufacturer's recommendation and seal the corner pan flashing with sealant.
- B. Inspect installation surface to ensure surface is free of dirt or other substances that could affect sill flashing installation, as well as any sharp protrusions.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Storefront Window on Slab



### STEP 3

- A. Shim, level and anchor pan per manufacturer's instructions for flashing to concrete.
- B. Seal corner pan flashing seams with sealant.

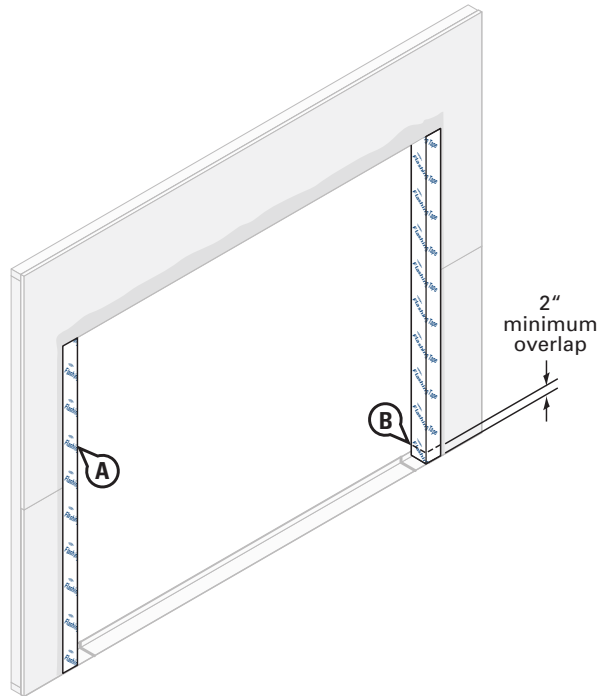


### STEP 4

- A. For exterior gypsum sheathing, apply a [\*chemically-compatible adhesive/primer\*](#) to the sheathing at the jambs and head.

**NOTE:** An adhesive/primer is not required for wood-based sheathing, except when applying flashing during adverse weather conditions.

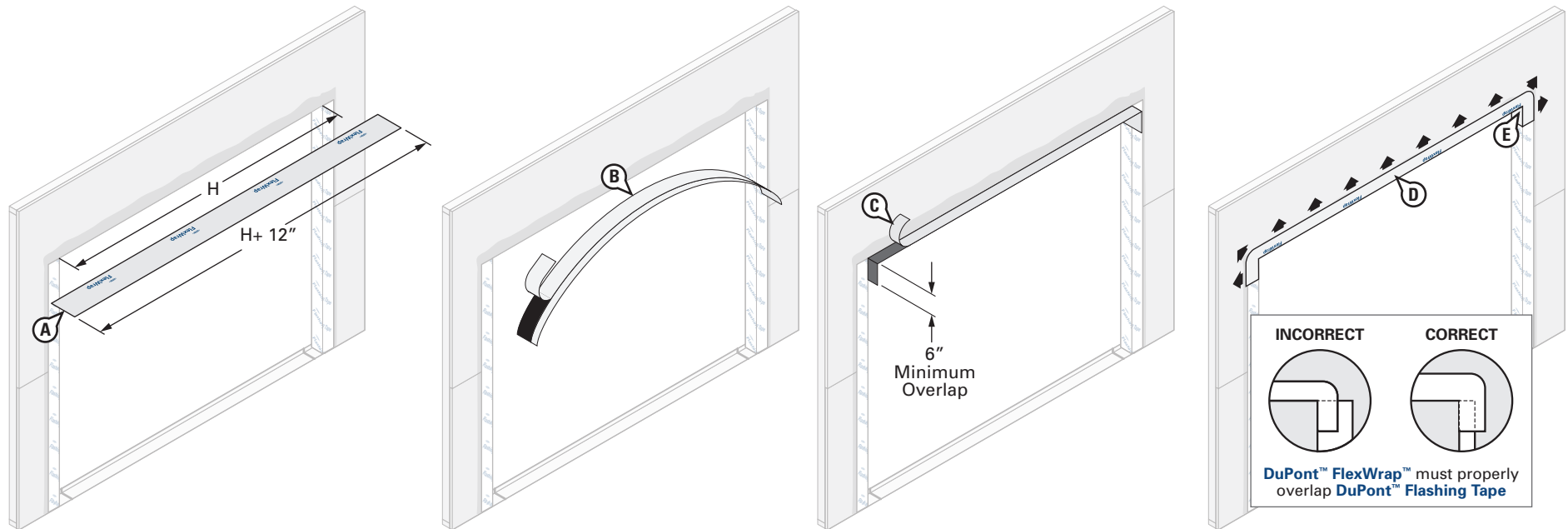
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Storefront Window on Slab



### STEP 5

- A. Wrap 9" **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** into the rough opening at each jamb and onto wall face. The flashing should align with the interior edge of the jamb framing. Cut the jamb flashing the vertical length of the rough opening.
- B. Jamb flashing should be long enough to overlap the sill flashing by at least 2" and be overlapped by future head flashing by at least 2".

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Storefront Window on Slab



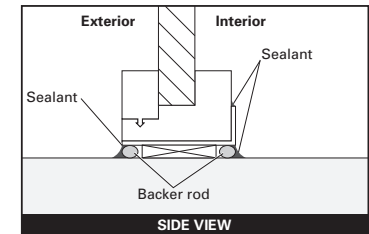
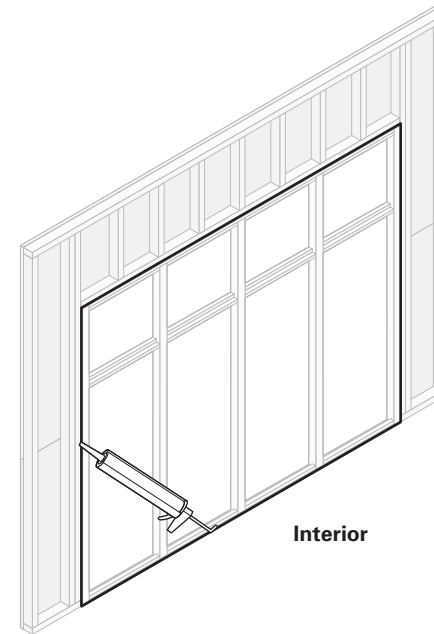
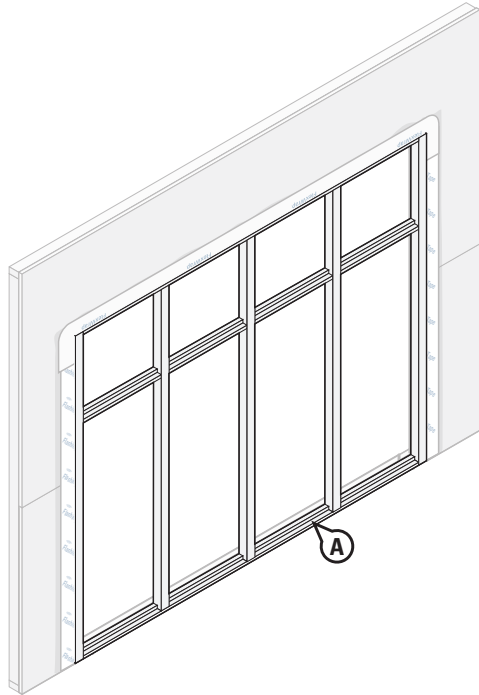
### STEP 6

#### Install DuPont™ FlexWrap™ at Head

- A. Cut **FlexWrap™** at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening head (H). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- B. Fold the **FlexWrap™** in half lengthwise to create a slight crease at the center. Remove the wide piece of release paper on one side of the fold. Align the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2"– 3" of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall. Starting at the crease, adhere the **FlexWrap™** at the center of the horizontal portion of the head framing to ensure a minimum of 6" down each jamb. Adhere into rough opening at one corner and down the jamb. Remove the remaining release paper, and repeat at opposite corner.
- C. Remove narrow release paper.
- D. Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along the head.
- E. Use sufficient width of **FlexWrap™** to avoid reverse shingling of flashing at the jamb and head interface. See detail above.

**NOTE:** DuPont™ Tyvek® Certified Installers may install a 3-piece head (and sill) detail for window openings less than 6 ft. wide. For windows greater than 6 ft. wide, see the [Special Considerations](#) section for more information regarding the 3-piece head/sill detail. Contact your local DuPont Building Envelope Specialist for more information about the Certified Installer program.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Storefront Window on Slab



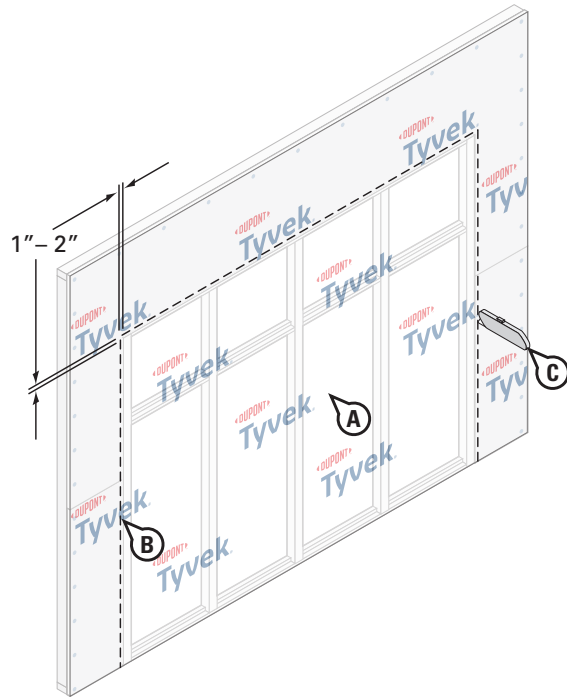
### STEP 7

- A. Install storefront window per manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Glaze windows per manufacturer's instructions.

### STEP 8

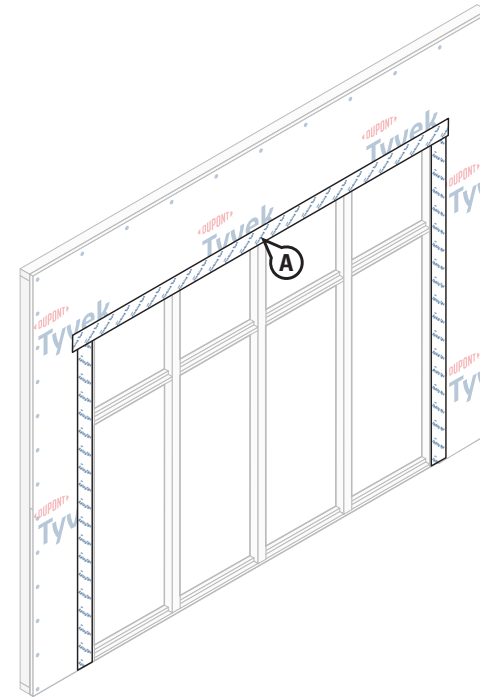
Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the window opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Storefront Window on Slab



### STEP 9

- Install the **Tyvek® WRB** according to the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section in this guide. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the window frame at jambs and head.
- Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough opening 1"–2" from the jambs and head of the window frame.
- Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window. **Do not** cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** underneath.



### STEP 10

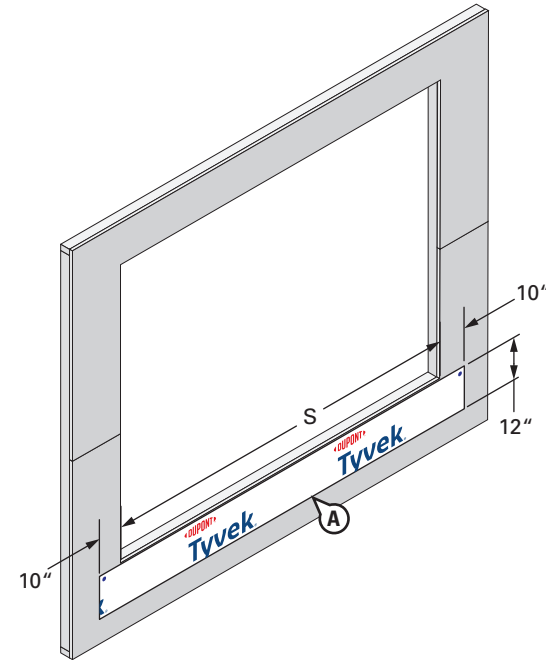
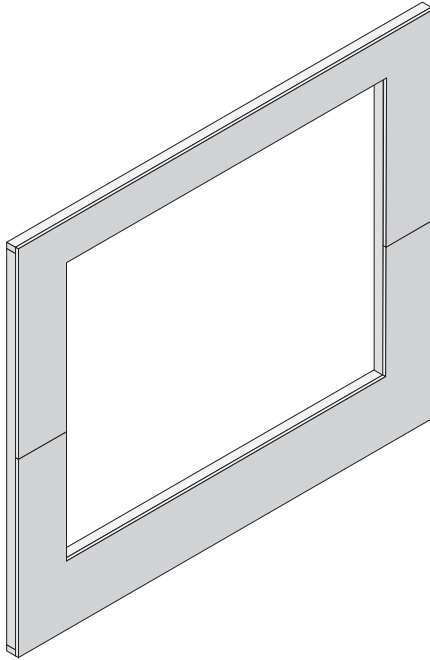
#### Final Step

- Starting at the jambs and then the head, terminate the **Tyvek® WRB** using **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, or **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.

**NOTE:** For a more robust termination, seal with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™**. Install mechanical fasteners through flashing as needed for increased holding power. See the table in the [Applicable Structures and Performance Criteria](#) section for more information on air barrier requirements and terminations.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Storefront Window on Knee Wall

This method applies to the following products: DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, and DuPont™ FlexWrap™



### STEP 1

A. Cut rough opening in sheathing for window.

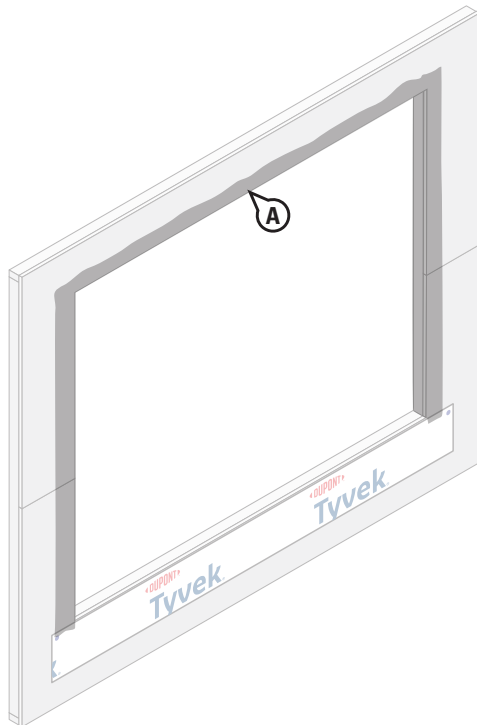
### STEP 2

#### Prepare Tyvek® WRB Apron

**OPTIONAL:** Refer to the [Alternative Installation Considerations](#) section for guidance for using DuPont™ Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™ in lieu of a Tyvek® WRB apron if desired.

A. Cut an apron made of Tyvek® WRB for attachment under sill of rough opening. Apron should extend at least 10" **BEYOND** the sides of rough opening jambs (or to first stud in open stud construction) and at least 12" below sill of rough opening, or extend far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the Tyvek® WRB below. The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall and the bottom of the apron should be left unsecured so it can overlap the Tyvek® WRB which will be installed after the window. Avoid placing DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners, or recommended fasteners, where DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products will be installed.

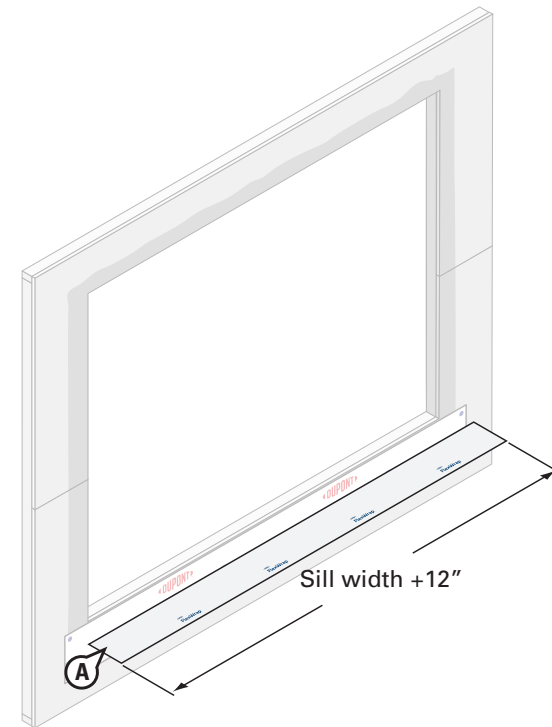
## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Storefront Window on Knee Wall



### STEP 3

A. For exterior gypsum sheathing, apply a [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) to the sheathing at the jambs and head.

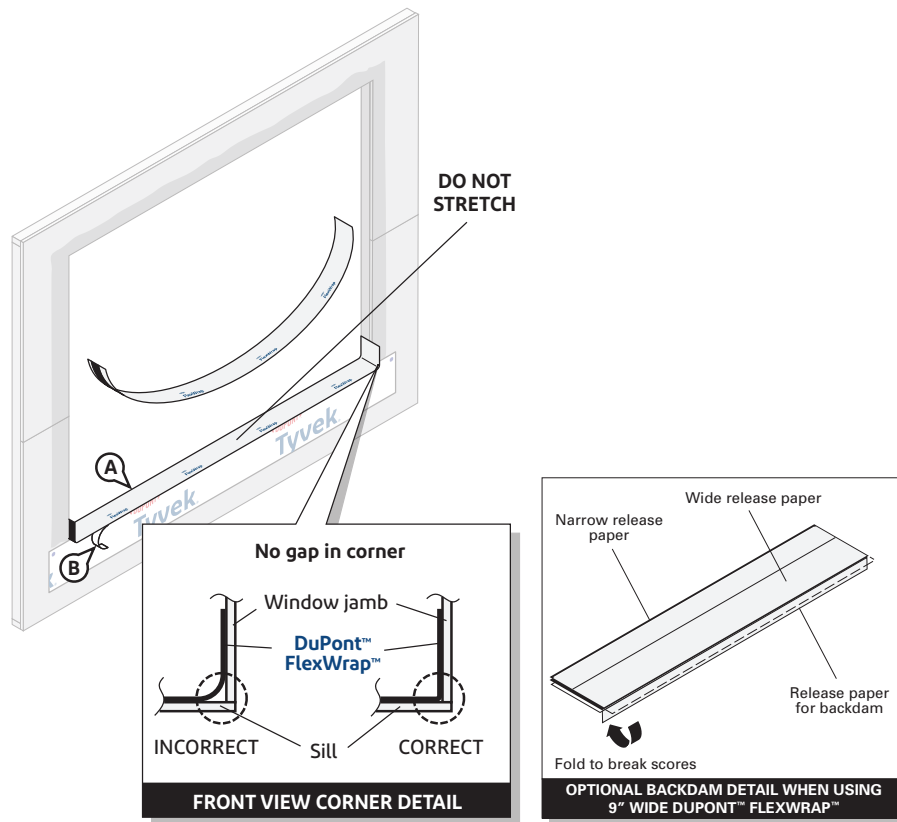
**NOTE:** An adhesive/primer is not required for wood-based sheathing, except when applying flashing during adverse weather conditions.



### STEP 4

- A. Cut **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening sill (S). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"- 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- B. Inspect installation surface to ensure surface is free of dirt or substances that could interfere with adhesion as well as any sharp protrusions.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Storefront Window on Knee Wall



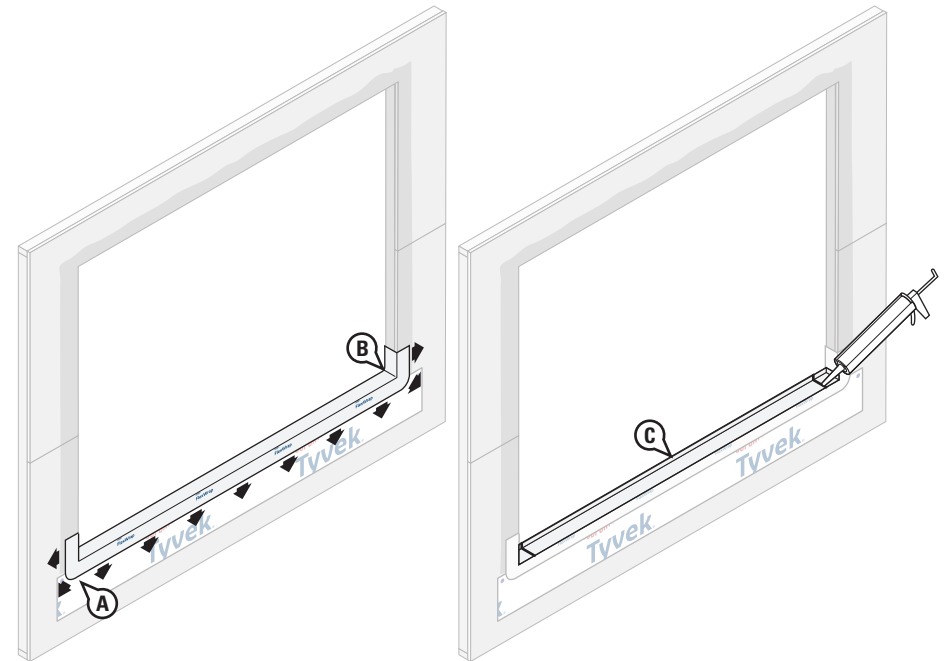
### STEP 5

A. Remove wide piece of release paper. Position on horizontal sill by aligning the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2"– 3" of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6" up each jamb. Adhere into rough opening.

**Optional Back Dam:** Fold 9" **FlexWrap™** to break perforation. Remove center piece of release paper. Cover horizontal sill to accommodate back dam as appropriate, and adhere into rough opening along sill and up jambs (a minimum of 6" on each side). Leave 1" release paper on **FlexWrap™** inside rough opening to finish back dam after window installation.

B. Remove narrow release paper.

C. Firmly press **FlexWrap™** into the corners



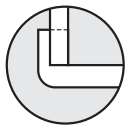
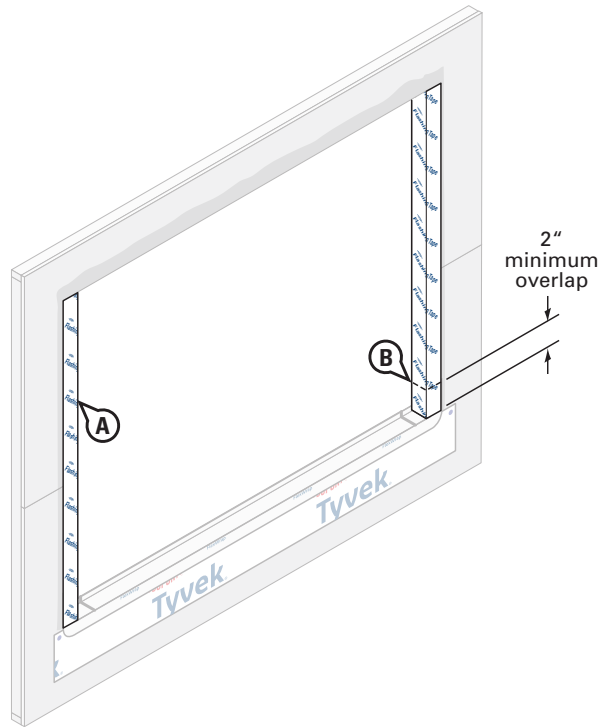
### STEP 6

A. Fan out the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill. Coverage of **FlexWrap™** should be 2"– 3" onto the face of the wall.

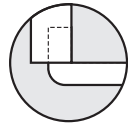
B. Firmly press **FlexWrap™** to ensure full adhesion on all surfaces. Eliminate wrinkles and bubbles by smoothing surface and repositioning as necessary.

C. Shim, level and anchor sill pan flashing and seal corner seams per manufacturer's instructions with a [chemically-compatible sealant](#).

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Storefront Window on Knee Wall



**INCORRECT**  
DuPont™ FlexWrap™  
reverse flashed

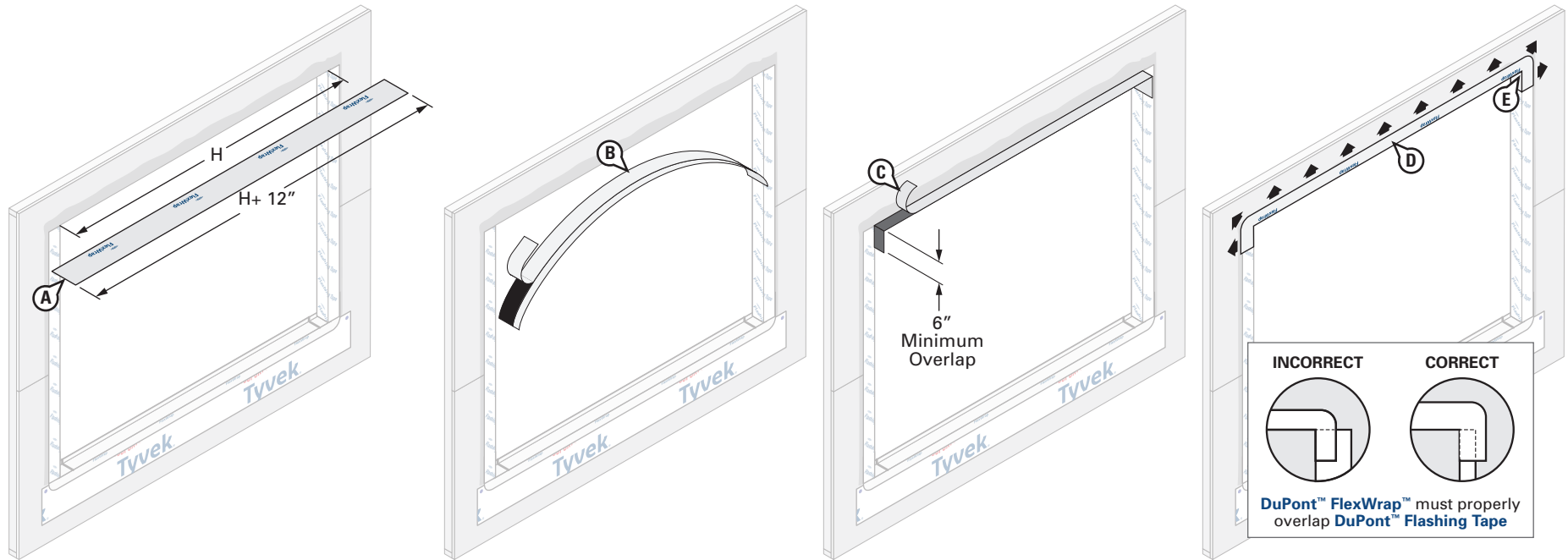


**CORRECT**  
DuPont™ Flashing Tape  
fully overlaps FlexWrap™

### STEP 7

- A. Wrap 9" **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** into the rough opening at each jamb and onto wall face. The flashing should align with the interior edge of the jamb framing. Cut the jamb flashing the vertical length of the rough opening.
- B. Jamb flashing should be long enough to overlap the sill flashing by at least 2" and be overlapped by future head flashing by at least 2".

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Storefront Window on Knee Wall



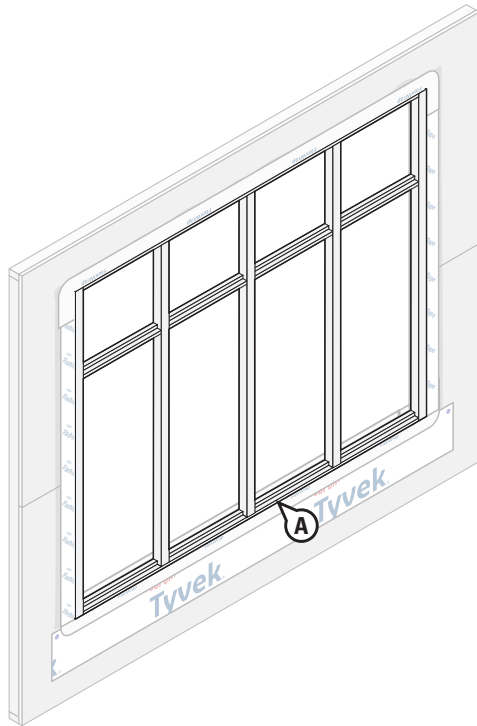
### STEP 8

#### Install DuPont™ FlexWrap™ at Head

- A. Cut **FlexWrap™** at least 12" **LONGER** than width of rough opening head (H). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve a minimum of 1" adhesion **BEYOND** where the window frame will be located, ensuring 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- B. Fold the **FlexWrap™** in half lengthwise to create a slight crease at the center. Remove the wide piece of release paper on one side of the fold. Align the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2"– 3" of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall. Starting at the crease, adhere the **FlexWrap™** at the center of the horizontal portion of the head framing to ensure a minimum of 6" down each jamb. Adhere into rough opening at one corner and down the jamb. Remove the remaining release paper, and repeat at opposite corner.
- C. Remove narrow release paper.
- D. Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along the head.
- E. Use sufficient width of **FlexWrap™** to avoid reverse shingling of flashing at the jamb and head interface. See detail above.

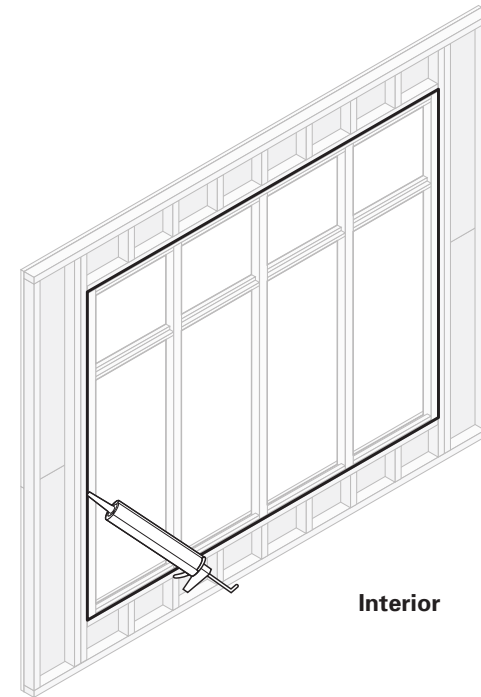
**NOTE:** DuPont™ Tyvek® Certified Installers may install a 3-piece head (and sill) detail for window openings less than 6 ft. wide. For windows greater than 6 ft. wide, see the [Special Considerations](#) section for more information regarding the 3-piece head/sill detail. Contact your local DuPont Building Envelope Specialist for more information about the Certified Installer program.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Storefront Window on Knee Wall



### STEP 9

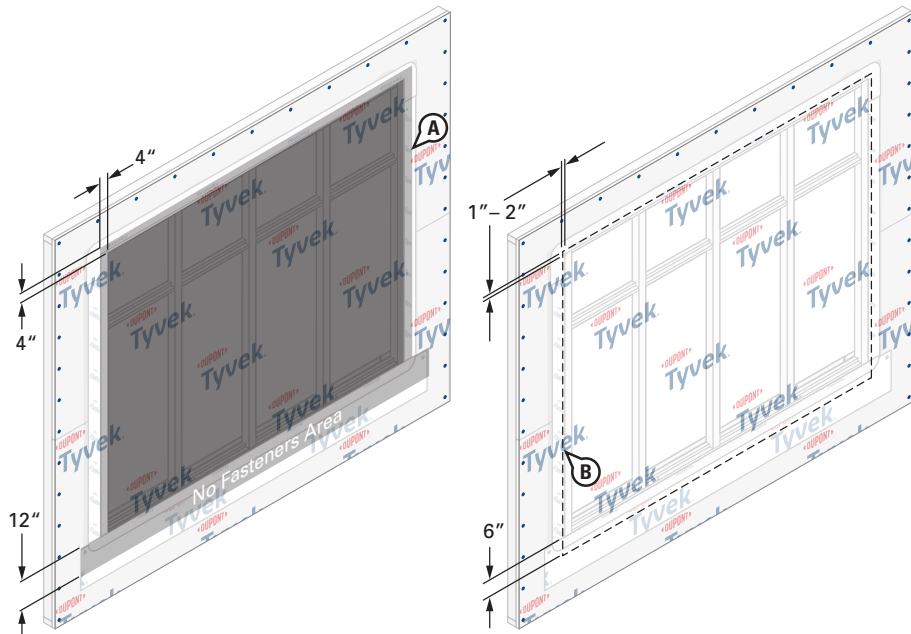
- A. Install storefront window per manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Glaze windows per manufacturer's instructions.



### STEP 10

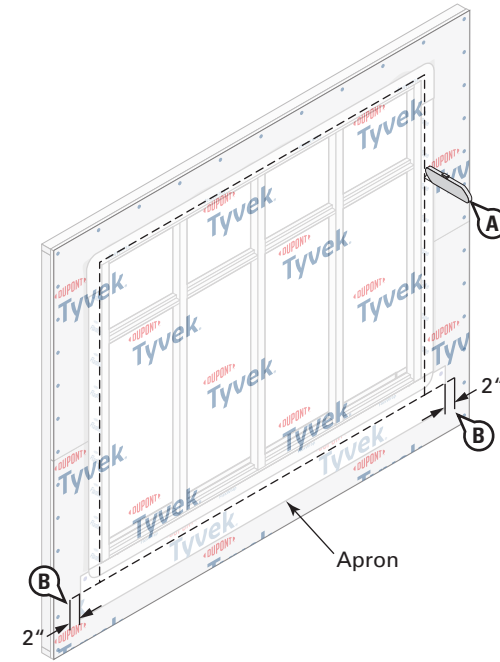
Apply a continuous bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary) around the window opening at the interior. Be sure that the sealant penetrates the grooves of the **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** around the sill. It is also acceptable to use **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam. When using **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** in perimeter openings less than 1/2", apply using the plastic extension tip for the **Great Stuff Pro™ Dispensing Gun** during installation.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Storefront Window on Knee Wall



### STEP 11

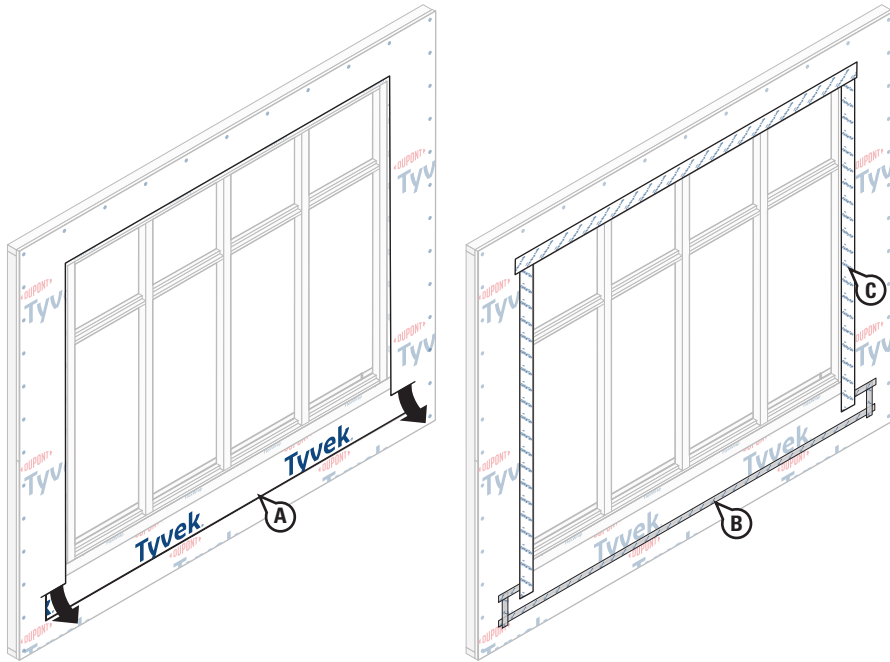
- A. Install the **Tyvek® WRB** according to the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section in this guide. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the window frame at jambs and head and within 12" of the window frame at sill or location of apron.
- B. Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough opening a minimum of 1" from the jambs and head of the window frame, and 6" below the sill of the window frame.



### STEP 12

- A. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.
- B. Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend a 1"– 2" **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Storefront Window on Knee Wall



### STEP 13

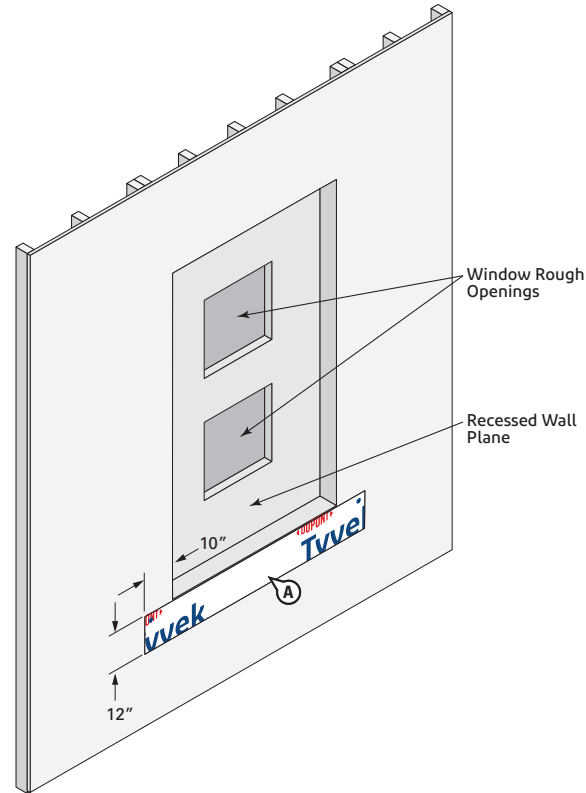
#### Final Step

- A. Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- B. Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
- C. Starting at the jambs and then the head, terminate the **Tyvek® WRB** around the window frame using **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, or **Tyvek® Tape**.

**NOTE:** For a more robust termination, seal the **Tyvek® WRB** at the jambs and head of the window with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™**. Install mechanical fasteners through flashing as needed for increased holding power. See the table in the [Applicable Structures and Performance Criteria](#) section for more information on air barrier requirements and terminations.

## Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Hybrid Condition – DuPont™ Tyvek™ WRB Terminated with DuPont™ StraightFlash™ and/or DuPont™ FlexWrap™ and Integrated with DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products

Complex wall and window flashing conditions may require the use of **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** for part of a wall or window and/or door flashing. While there are many variations of this condition, it is important to properly integrate the **Tyvek® WRB** with the **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** using **StraightFlash™** and **FlexWrap™**. The following example shows a recessed wall plane treated with **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™** with a window flashed with **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** and integrated with the **Tyvek® WRB** on the face of the wall. Refer to the [DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Flashing Installation Guidelines](#) for more information.



### STEP 1

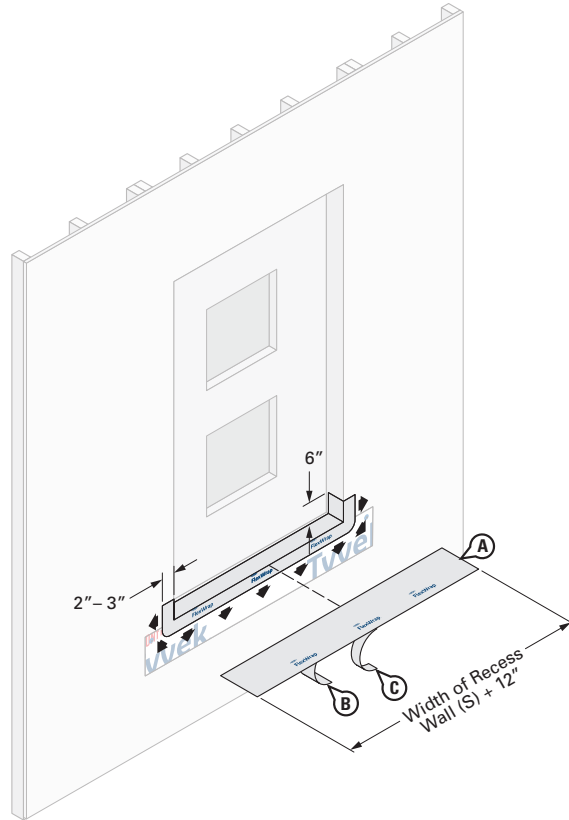
#### Prepare Tyvek® WRB Apron

**OPTIONAL:** Refer to the [Alternative Installation Considerations](#) section for guidance for using **DuPont™ Tyvek® IntegrationWrap™** in lieu of a **Tyvek® WRB** apron if desired.

- A. Cut an apron made of **Tyvek® WRB** for attachment under sill of recess wall plane. Apron should extend at least 10" **BEYOND** the sides of recessed wall plane jambs (or to first stud in open stud construction) and at least 12" below sill of rough opening, or extend far enough below the sill of the recessed wall plane to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below.

The top of the apron should be securely attached to the wall and the bottom of the apron should be left unsecured so it can overlap the **Tyvek® WRB** which will be installed after the window. Avoid placing **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners** where **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** will be installed.

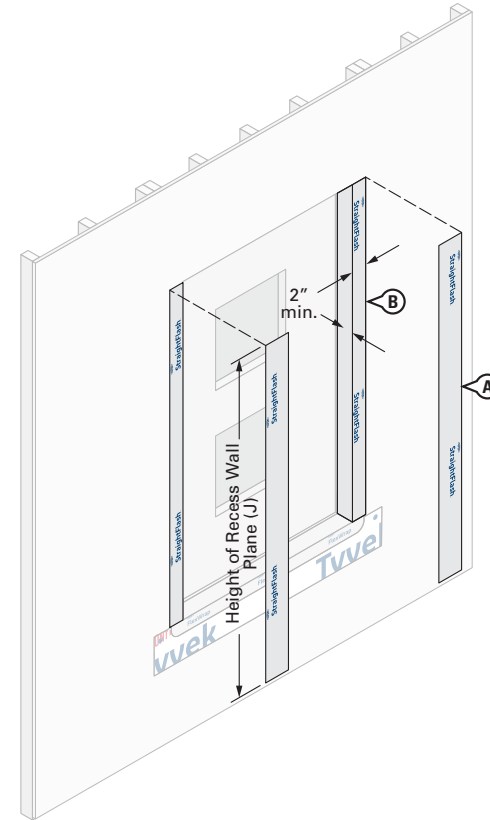
**Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Hybrid Condition – DuPont™ Tyvek™ WRB Terminated with DuPont™ StraightFlash™ and/or DuPont™ FlexWrap™ and Integrated with DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products**



**STEP 2**

**Install FlexWrap™ at Recessed Wall Sill**

- A. Cut the **FlexWrap™** at least 12" **LONGER** than width of recessed wall plane (S).
- B. Remove wide piece of release paper and adhere on horizontal ledge by aligning the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2"–3" of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall with a minimum of 6" up each side.
- C. Remove narrow piece of release paper. Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along sill. Coverage of **FlexWrap™** should be 2"–3" onto the face of the wall.\*

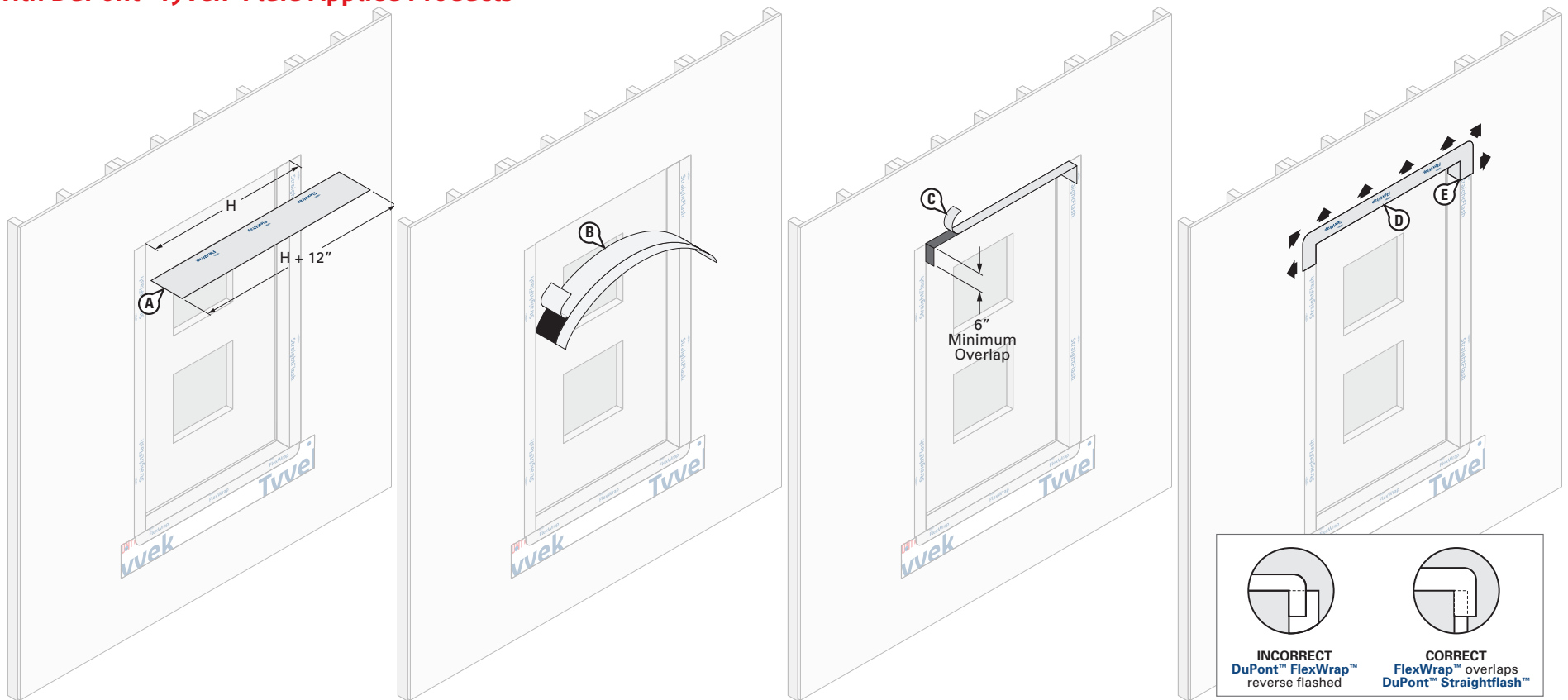


**STEP 3**

- A. Cut (2) pieces of **StraightFlash™** the height of the recessed wall plane (J) or long enough to overlap the bottom of recessed wall flashing by at least 2" and be overlapped by future top of recess wall flashing by at least 2".
- B. Install the **StraightFlash™** pieces along each side of recessed wall, ensuring the **StraightFlash™** extends 2" onto the face of the wall and 2" into the recess.

\*A 3-piece transition flashing method can also be used with **StraightFlash™** in combination with **FlexWrap™** corners. The **StraightFlash™** is installed the width of the bottom or top of recessed wall plane prior to placing the **FlexWrap™** corners. The **FlexWrap™** corners should be at least 12" long allowing for 6" overlap onto the **StraightFlash™** at bottom, top, and sides of recessed wall plane.

**Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Hybrid Condition – DuPont™ Tyvek™ WRB Terminated with DuPont™ StraightFlash™ and/or DuPont™ FlexWrap™ and Integrated with DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products**



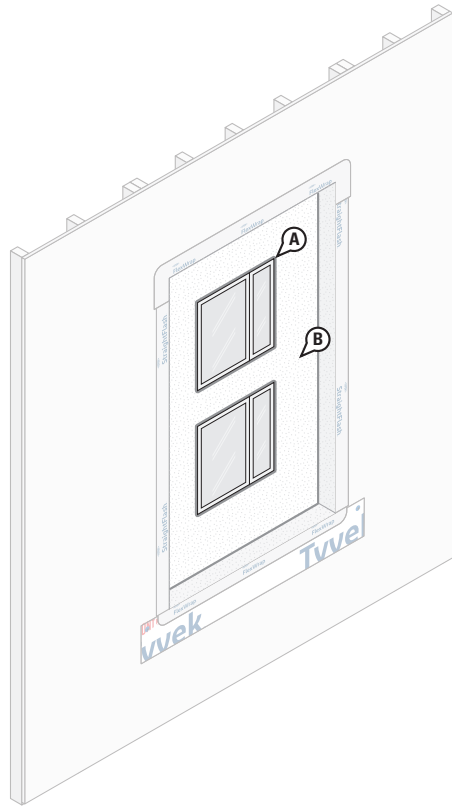
**STEP 4**

**Install DuPont™ FlexWrap™ at Top of Recessed Wall**

- A. Cut **FlexWrap™** at least 12" **LONGER** than width of recessed wall plane (H). Use roll widths sufficient to achieve 2"– 3" adhesion onto the face of the wall.
- B. Fold the **FlexWrap™** in half lengthwise to create a slight crease at the center. Remove the wide piece of release paper on one side of the fold. Align the inside edge of the narrow release paper with the face of the wall to ensure 2"– 3" of the **FlexWrap™** will be adhered to the face of the wall. Starting at the crease, adhere the **FlexWrap™** at the center of the horizontal portion of the head framing to ensure a minimum of 6" down each jamb. Adhere into rough opening at one corner and down the jamb. Remove the remaining release paper, and repeat at opposite corner.
- C. Remove narrow release paper.
- D. Fan out the **FlexWrap™** at corners and adhere onto face of wall. Continue adhering onto face of wall along the head.
- E. Use sufficient width of **FlexWrap™** to avoid reverse shingling of flashing at the jamb and head interface. See detail above.

\*A 3-piece transition flashing method can also be used with **StraightFlash™** in combination with **FlexWrap™** corners. The **StraightFlash™** is installed the width of the bottom or top of recessed wall plane prior to placing the **FlexWrap™** corners. The **FlexWrap™** corners should be at least 12" long allowing for 6" overlap onto the **StraightFlash™** at bottom, top, and sides of recessed wall plane.

**Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Hybrid Condition – DuPont™ Tyvek™ WRB Terminated with DuPont™ StraightFlash™ and/or DuPont™ FlexWrap™ and Integrated with DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products**



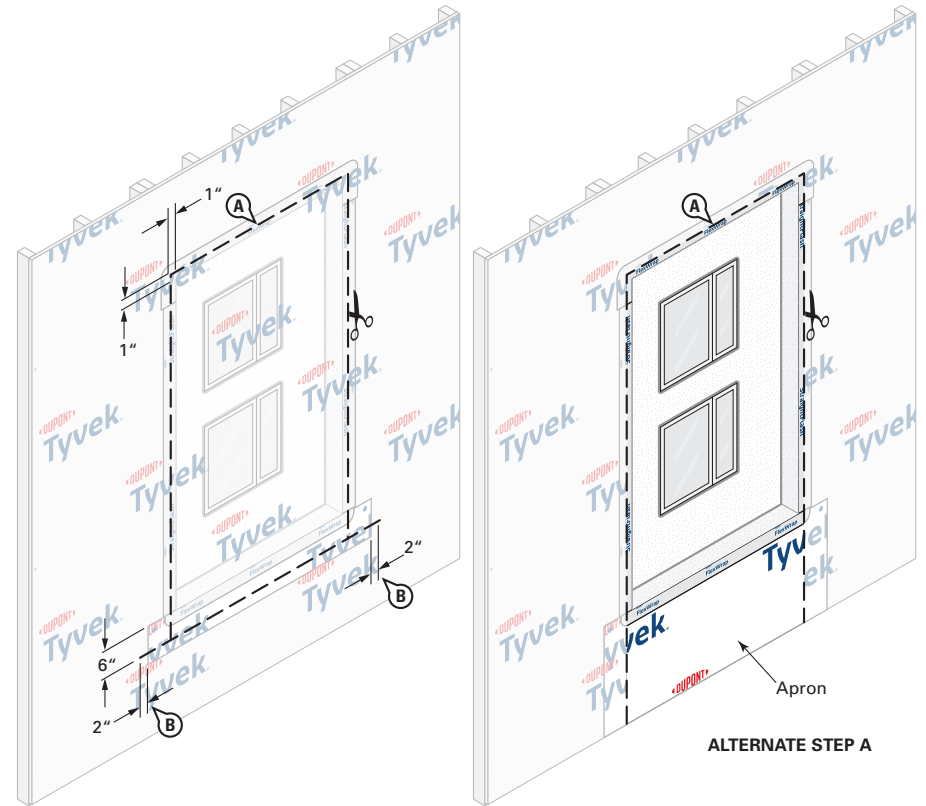
**STEP 5**

- A. Install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Flashing and Joint Compound+** and/or **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** and window per the [DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Flashing Installation Guidelines](#).

**NOTE:** Window/flashing installation sequence will vary by project and window type. All installations must allow for drainage at window sill.

- B. Install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™** per the [DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™ Wall and Substrate Guidelines](#). Overlap the **Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™** onto the **StraightFlash™** and **FlexWrap™** at recess wall transition by a minimum of 2”.

**NOTE:** Do not install **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** onto the face of the wall to ensure the **Tyvek® WRB** installed in subsequent steps can be sealed to the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** around the perimeter of the recessed wall plane.



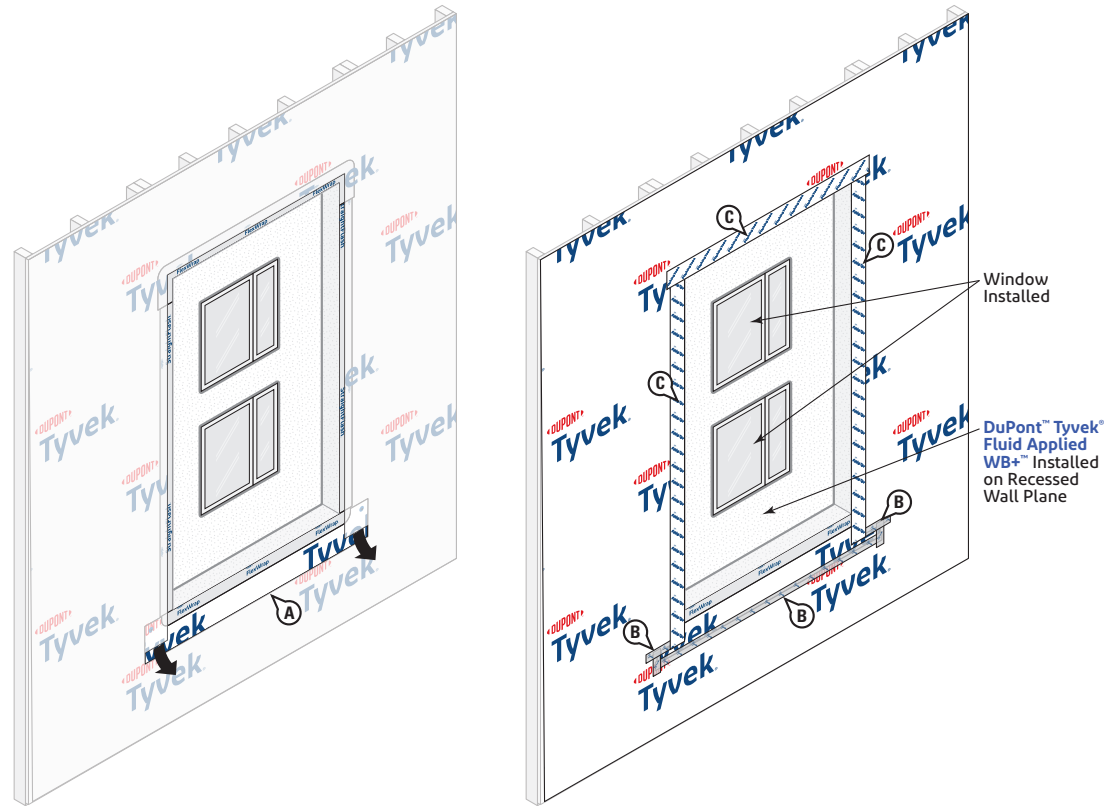
**STEP 6**

- A. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.

**ALTERNATE STEP A:** If apron extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap apron.

- B. Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend 1”– 2” **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.

**Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Hybrid Condition – DuPont™ Tyvek™ WRB Terminated with DuPont™ StraightFlash™ and/or DuPont™ FlexWrap™ and Integrated with DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products**



**STEP 7**

A. Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.

- B. Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
- C. Starting at the jambs and then the head, terminate the **Tyvek® WRB** using **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **StraightFlash™**, or **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.

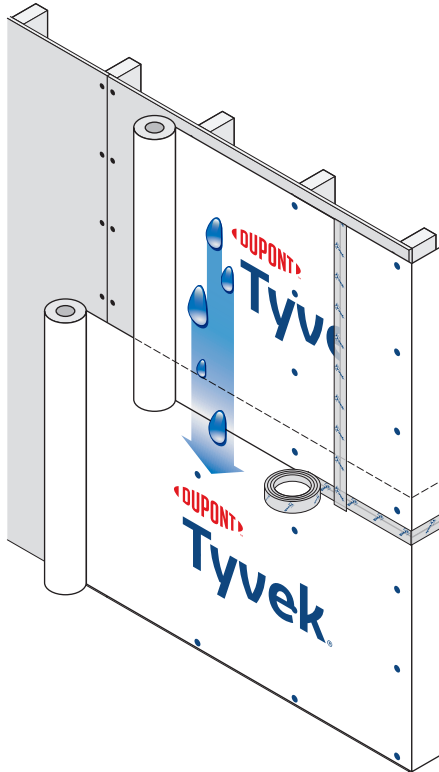
**NOTE:** For a more robust termination, seal with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™**. Install mechanical fasteners through flashing as needed for increased holding power. See the table in the [Applicable Structures and Performance Criteria](#) section for more information on air barrier requirements and terminations.

# DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

## Key Installation Requirements for DuPont™ Tyvek® WRBs

### Continuity

It is important to maintain the continuity of the **Tyvek® WRB** throughout the building envelope. The entire wall surface shall be wrapped, including unconditioned spaces. Special attention should be given to ensure a proper 6" overlap at all terminations, seams, penetrations, and transitions to maintain a continuous downward drainage plane and WRB. Installing the **Tyvek® WRB** as an air barrier is the preferred installation method. However, skip-taping terminations and untaped horizontal seams is allowed when the **Tyvek® WRB** is being installed as a water-resistive barrier only. All vertical seams must be taped for both air barrier and water-resistive barrier installations.



### Penetrations

Seal **Tyvek® WRBs** around all penetrations (electrical, HVAC and plumbing, etc.) with the appropriate **DuPont Flashing Product**. Products that have flanges should be integrated into the **Tyvek® WRB**.

The penetration rough opening can be sealed from the interior side using a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary), or **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, **Great Stuff Pro™ Gaps & Cracks Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or a [chemically-compatible foam](#).

### Overlap

Ensure proper shingling with a 6" minimum overlap of weather-resistive barrier components from the bottom to the top of the wall to help facilitate proper drainage.

### Sealants and Adhesives/Primers

Review the manufacturers' literature or label to confirm that the product(s) used have the chemical and adhesive properties necessary for use with **Tyvek® WRBs**, **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products**, and **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products**. Refer to [Chemical Compatibility of Representative Building Sealants and Adhesives/Primers](#) for more information about chemical compatibility.

### Fasteners

Use **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Fasteners**, TRUFAST® Walls Grip-Deck® screws with Thermal-Grip FastCap™ washers, or recommended alternates, per the fastening schedule included in this installation guideline. Temporary fasteners should not be relied upon to permanently attach **Tyvek® WRBs**, due to the limited holding power of these fastening methods. If temporary fasteners are used, permanent fastening (cladding fasteners) must be applied as soon as practically possible in order to maintain the integrity and performance of the **Tyvek® WRB** and to be in compliance with DuPont Installation Guidelines if making a claim under the DuPont Product and Labor component of the DuPont Building Envelope Solutions Products 10-Year Limited Warranty.

### Recommended Fasteners

For increased holding power and for higher air and water holdout performance, DuPont recommends fasteners of sufficient length to penetrate securely into the stud. Taller buildings are subjected to increased wind loads, and this should be taken into account when selecting fasteners for the **Tyvek® WRB**. Plastic cap screws provide the highest level of holding power. **The recommended fasteners for buildings between 70-85 ft. in height are 2" cap screws as listed below.** Secure **Tyvek® WRB** to the stud or other nail-base material, i.e., wood sheathing. Cap nail and/or cap staple fasteners should be placed no closer than 6" and no farther than 18" on vertical stud lines. Securing along stud lines will assist in maintaining fastening pattern. Penetrating bandboard or other horizontal members may be necessary to maintain fastening pattern. Do not install fasteners within 6" of the sills and jambs and within 9" of the head of the window rough openings. Use one or more of the recommended fasteners below for use with **Tyvek® WRBs**:

- **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Nails**
- **DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Staples** or other cap staples for Stinger® Cap Stapler<sup>2</sup>
- **2" DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Screws** (for steel frame construction, may also be used for wood frame)
- TRUFAST® Walls Grip-Deck® screws with Thermal-Grip FastCap™ washers installed at 16" vertical spacing along stud lines for 16" o.c. framing (approved for use with **Tyvek® WRBs**). Install fasteners with standard hand drill or Grip-Lok® Autofeed Fastening System<sup>3</sup> with modified nose adaptor.
- Tapcon® fasteners with 2" plastic caps (for masonry construction portion of podium only).

### Wood frame construction:

- 1-5/8" – 6" TRUFAST® Walls Grip-Deck® HiLo Thread Screws with 2" Thermal-Grip FastCap™ washer
  - 1-5/8", 2", 2-1/2", and 3" screws can be installed with standard hand drill or Grip-Lok® Autofeed Fastening System with modified nose adapter
  - 3-1/2" to 6" screws should be installed with standard hand drill.
- Other manufacturers' equivalent fasteners.

<sup>1</sup>TRUFAST® Walls formerly Rodenhouse

<sup>2</sup>Except when installing Tyvek® WRB over foam and other non-nail-base sheathings.

<sup>3</sup>For more information about the Grip-Lok® Autofeed Fastening System, refer to manufacturer's instructions and contact your local DuPont Building Envelope Specialist.

## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

### Temporary Fastening

Selection and use of temporary fastening methods is an option dependent on building schedule, cladding options, and local building practices. Temporary fasteners should not be relied upon to permanently attach **Tyvek® WRBs** due to the limited holding power of these fastening methods. If temporary fasteners are used, permanent fastening should be applied as soon as practically possible in order to maintain the integrity and performance of the **Tyvek® WRB**. Permanent fasteners include cladding fasteners such as brick ties, lath fasteners for traditional stucco, exterior foam board fasteners, or siding installed with nails. Cladding shall be installed according to applicable building codes and industry standards.

Temporary fastening methods:

- DuPont fasteners or equivalent alternate fasteners at a reduced schedule of 24" to 48".
- A [chemically-compatible adhesive](#) applied in vertical strips at 24" to 36" spacing or along every other stud line. Vertical strips may be applied to the outer face of the sheathing or directly to the studs for open stud construction. When using adhesives, care must be taken to avoid excessive surface coverage as this may impact the vapor permeability of the **Tyvek® WRB** in that area. Refer to [Chemical Compatibility of Representative Building Sealants and Adhesives/Primers](#) for more information about recommended adhesives.
- If staples without caps are used to temporarily fasten **Tyvek® WRBs** to OSB, plywood, or exterior gypsum sheathing, the fastening schedule must not exceed 24" to 36" vertically, with fasteners at every other stud for 16" o.c. framing. 24" o.c. framing will require horizontal fastening on every stud, with 24" to 36" fastener spacing vertically. Staples should not be used with fiberboard or foam sheathing. If installing as an air barrier, each staple must be covered with **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**. Covering the staples underneath a taped air and water barrier seam is also acceptable if installing the **Tyvek® WRB** as an air barrier.

**NOTE:** For buildings between 70-85 ft. in height, temporary fasteners include 4d nails with 1" plastic cap or 1" plastic cap staple with leg length sufficient to achieve 5/8" penetration into wood stud.

**NOTE:** These Temporary Fastening Methods are subject to change based on new technology or testing information and may be superseded at any time. It is always important to follow the latest guidelines which may be found on [building.dupont.com](http://building.dupont.com). For additional guidance, please consult your local DuPont Building Envelope Specialist.

## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

### Alternate Fasteners

When the building envelope design requirements **exceed** equivalent wind-driven rain water infiltration resistance of 15 mph per ASTM E1677, the following must be accounted for:

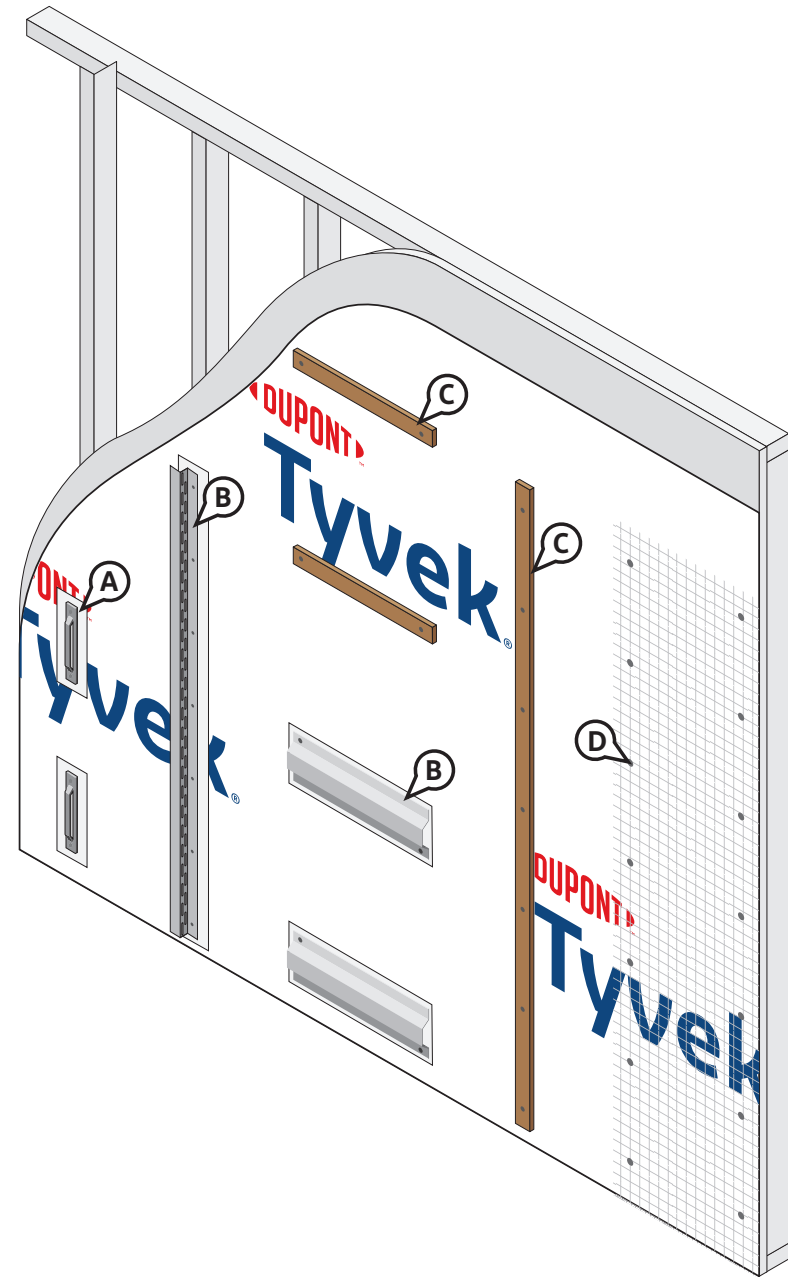
- A. **DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™** or alternate self-adhered flashing<sup>1</sup> **is required** behind standard brick tie base plates and metal plates<sup>2,3</sup>.
- B. **DuPont™ Flashing Tape, StraightFlash™** or alternate self-adhered flashing<sup>1</sup> **is required** behind metal channels, z-girts, hat channels, etc.<sup>2</sup>
- C. **DuPont™ Flashing Tape, StraightFlash™** or alternate self-adhered flashing<sup>1</sup> **is not required** behind unshimmed furring strips, but **is required** behind shimmed furring strips.
- D. **DuPont™ Flashing Tape, StraightFlash™** or alternate self-adhered flashing<sup>1</sup> is recommended along stud lines behind lath fasteners, but **is not required**.

#### NOTES:

<sup>1</sup>Where **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** are not used, alternate flashing must be chemically-compatible with the **Tyvek® WRB** and product should satisfy ASTM D1970, AAMA 711, or equivalent.

<sup>2</sup>When using cladding fasteners such as brick ties, metal plates, or hat channels, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be attached at a reduced fastener schedule. Refer to the [Temporary Fastening](#) section for information about reducing the recommended fastener schedule.

<sup>3</sup>**DuPont™ Flashing Tape, StraightFlash™** or alternate self-adhered flashing **is not required** behind Hohmann and Barnard 2-Seal™ Tie and/or Heckmann™ Pos-I-Tie® fasteners.



## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

### Installation Method for New Construction

Start at bottom corner of structure to ensure proper shingling throughout the installation. Proper shingling is required to shed water and to prevent water from entering the wall system. Printed stud marks are available on some Tyvek® WRBs to aid in aligning with the studs (e.g. studmarks are 8" apart for DuPont™ Tyvek® HomeWrap® and an 8" x 8" grid is printed on DuPont™ Tyvek® CommercialWrap®).

#### STEP 1

Align roll at bottom corner of structure. Roll should be plumb.

Bottom edge of roll must:

- extend over sill plate interface onto foundation by at least 1" (2" or greater is recommended)
- extend to bottom of sill plate for slab on grade foundations, or,
- be properly integrated with water drainage components such as kick out flashing or weep screed (for stucco exteriors).

When bottom edge of roll is less than 2" over the sill plate interface, it is recommended to seal or skip-seal the Tyvek® WRB at the bottom of the wall. See bottom of wall termination options on the next page.

#### STEP 2

Unwrap roll starting at corner. Unroll directly over windows and doors. Overlap all vertical seams by 6"– 12".

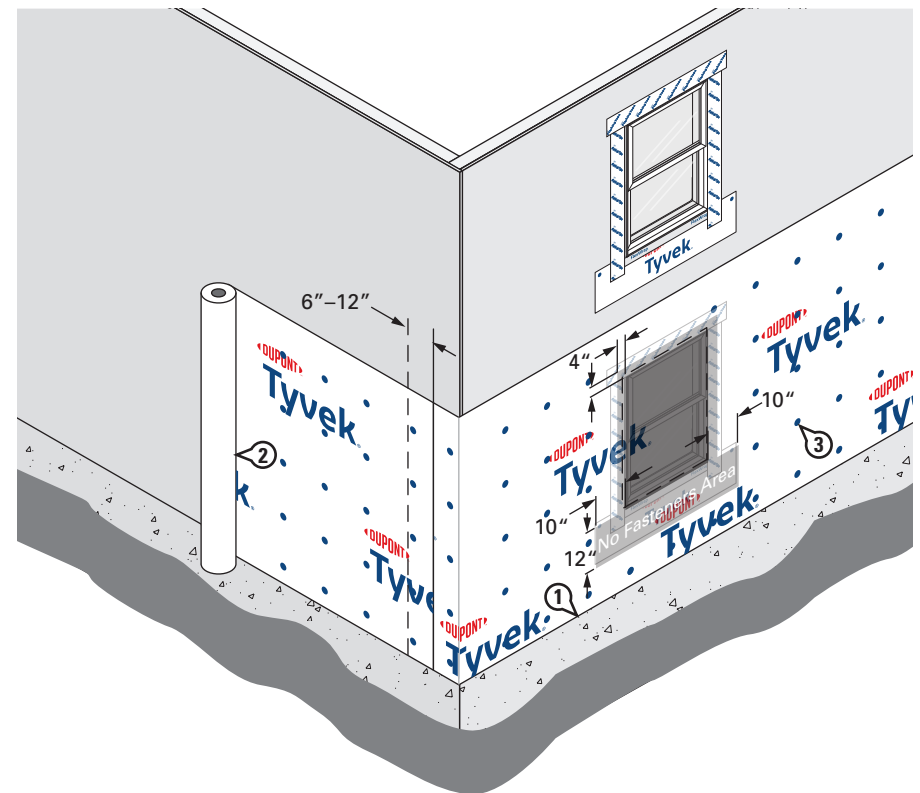
#### STEP 3

Secure Tyvek® WRB to the stud or other nail-base material, i.e., wood sheathing in accordance with the Recommended Fasteners section of [Key Installation Requirements for DuPont™ Tyvek® WRBs](#). Fasteners should be placed no closer than 6" and no farther than 18" on vertical stud lines. Securing along stud lines will assist in maintaining fastening pattern. When installing with fasteners that are longer than the thickness of the sheathing, the fasteners must be installed into the studs. Penetrating bandboard or other horizontal members may be necessary to maintain fastening pattern. For the windows **BEFORE Tyvek® WRB** installation method, do not install fasteners within 4" of the window frame at jambs and head and within 12" of the window frame at sill or location of apron.

Use one or more of the recommended fasteners below for use with Tyvek® WRBs:

- DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Nails
- DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Screws
- DuPont™ Tyvek® Wrap Cap Staples or other cap staples for Stinger® Cap Stapler\*
- TRUFast® Walls Grip-Deck® screws with Thermal-Grip FastCap™ washers (TRUFast® Walls formerly Rodenhouse)
- Other manufacturers' equivalent cap fasteners

**The recommended fasteners for buildings between 70-85 ft. in height are 2" cap screws as listed above.** Please see [Key Installation Requirements for DuPont™ Tyvek® WRBs](#) section for equivalent fastener requirements and [Temporary Fastening](#) section for more information on alternative fastening schedules and requirements.



\*Except when installing Tyvek® WRB over foam and other non-nail-base sheathings.

# DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

## Installation Method for New Construction

### STEP 4

Upper layer of **Tyvek® WRB** should overlap bottom layer by a minimum of 6".

**NOTE:** The **Tyvek® WRB** must be integrated with window flashing using proper shingling. If non-self-adhering sill flashing is used, install the **Tyvek® WRB** under the bottom of the sill flashing to maintain proper shingling. In either case, to tie the **Tyvek® WRB** into the flashing, follow the steps included in the [Installation Methods for DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Installed BEFORE the DuPont™ Tyvek®](#) section in this guide.

### STEP 5

Tape all vertical seams with **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**. If the **Tyvek® WRB** is not being installed as an air barrier, **Tyvek® Tape** is not required on horizontal seams but is considered a recommended best practice. Use 3" **Tyvek® Tape** for the vertical seams of **DuPont™ Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D**, **Tyvek® StuccoWrap®** and **Tyvek® DrainWrap™**. Use **DuPont™ Tyvek® Metalized Tape** when taping **DuPont™ Tyvek® ThermaWrap® LE**.

### STEP 6 (FOR AIR BARRIER INSTALLATIONS)

When installing as an air barrier, the horizontal seams must be taped. The use of 3" **Tyvek® Tape** is required for both vertical and horizontal seams of **Tyvek® StuccoWrap®**, **Tyvek® DrainWrap™**, and **Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D** for air barrier installations.

### STEP 7 (FOR AIR BARRIER INSTALLATIONS)

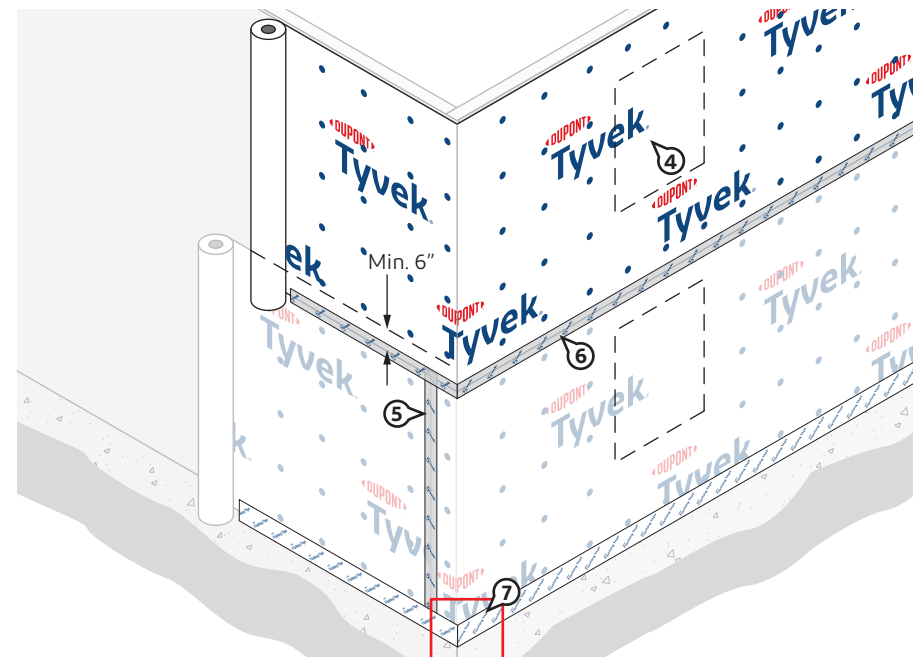
Taping or sealing all terminations of **Tyvek® WRBs** (including, but not limited to, top-of-wall and bottom-of-wall interfaces) using **Tyvek® Tape**, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** is required when installing as an air barrier.\*

**NOTE: DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** are the recommended method for terminating **Tyvek® WRB** at top and bottom of wall, and at other horizontal and vertical locations. **Tyvek® Tape** can be used as indicated in this Installation Guideline to seal the **Tyvek® WRB** to most plastic top sheets of self-adhered products and to thin metal flashings (e.g. drip caps or through wall kick out flashings). **Tyvek® Tape** should **NOT** be used to seal **Tyvek® WRBs** to wood framing/sheathing, exterior gypsum sheathing, or masonry.

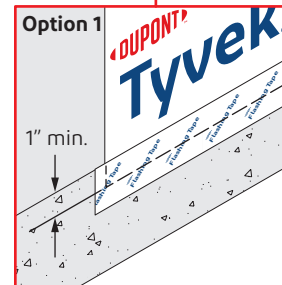
**NOTE:** See the table in the [Applicable Structures and Performance Criteria](#) section for more information on air barrier requirements.

For additional Installation Guidelines and more information about DuPont Performance Building Solutions, please visit [building.dupont.com](http://building.dupont.com) or call 1-833-338-7668.

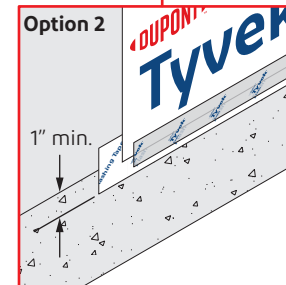
\*Use **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** with a [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) as applicable to seal the **Tyvek® WRB** directly to gypsum sheathing, concrete, wood, or other rough surfaces.



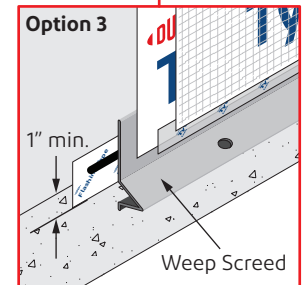
Examples of Sealing **Tyvek® WRB** at Bottom of Wall



Overlap **Tyvek® WRB** onto foundation by a minimum of 1" and terminate with **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product**.\*



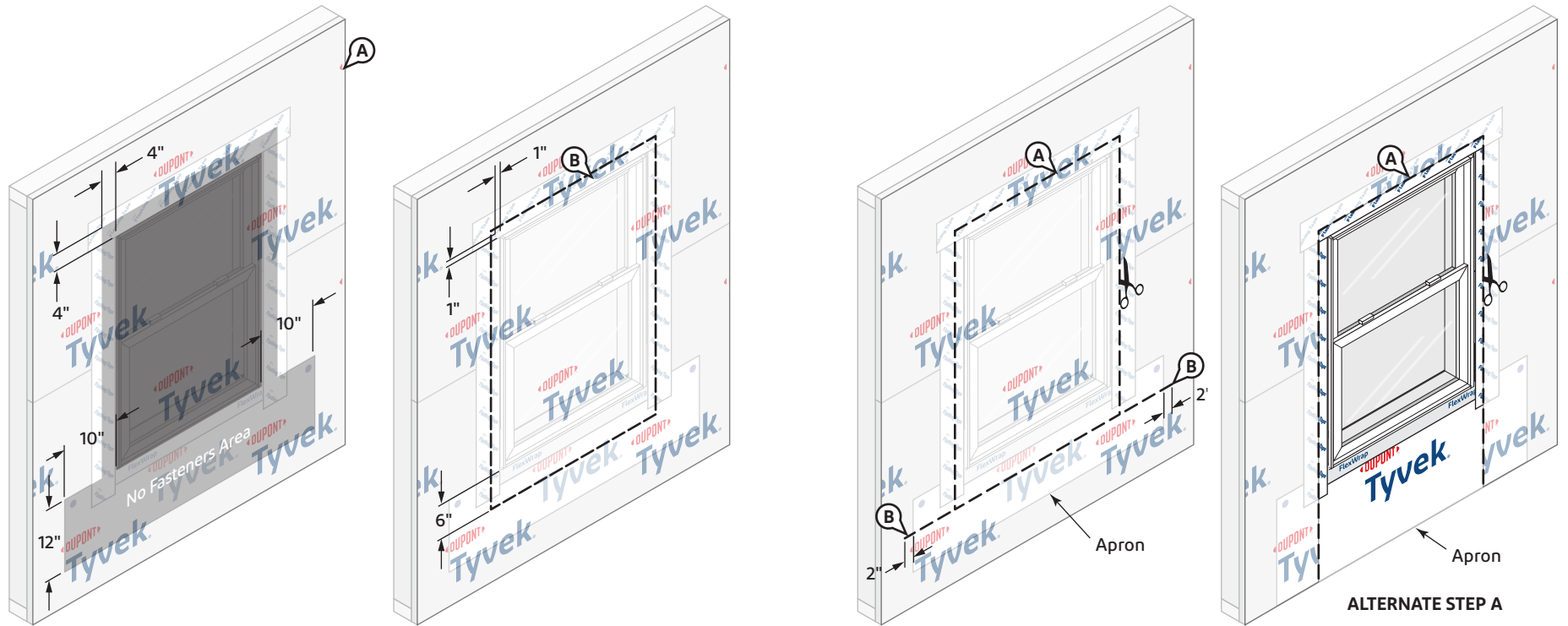
Seal interface of sheathing and foundation using **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product**. Overlap **Tyvek® WRB** onto **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product** by a minimum of 1" and seal using **Tyvek® Tape**.



If bottom of wall includes a weep screed or kick-out flashing, seal sheathing-to-foundation interface using a **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product**. Install the weep screed with a bead of a [chemically-compatible sealant](#). Overlap **Tyvek® WRB** onto weep screed and seal with **Tyvek® Tape** or **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product**.

Refer to the [Bottom of Wall Using Through Wall Flashing](#) detail in the [Continuity](#) section if through wall flashing is used.

**DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)**  
**DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Integration**



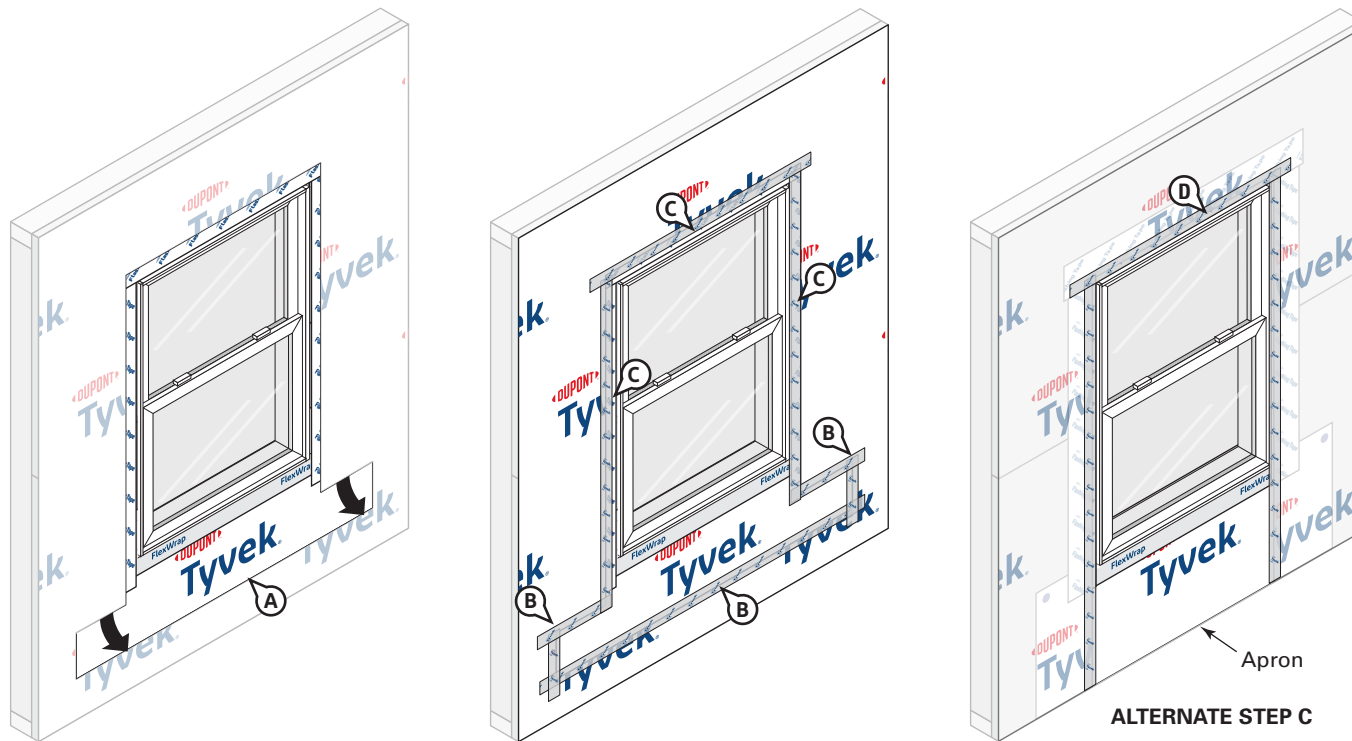
**STEP 1**

- A. Install the **Tyvek® WRB** as shown in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section of this document. Do not install fasteners within 4" of the window frame at jambs and head and within 12" of the window frame at sill or location of apron.
- B. Mark a perimeter on the **Tyvek® WRB** around the rough opening a minimum of 1" from the jambs and head of the window frame, and 6" below the sill of the window frame.

**STEP 2**

- A. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** along perimeter marking to expose window. Do not cut through the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or **Tyvek® WRB** apron underneath.
- ALTERNATE STEP A:** If apron extends far enough below the sill rough opening to overlap the sill plate, base of wall flashing, or the **Tyvek® WRB** below, the **Tyvek® WRB** can be cut along jambs and head only to overlap apron.
- B. Create horizontal slits in the **Tyvek® WRB** at each lower corner of the perimeter cut that extend 1"– 2" **BEYOND** the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.

## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB) DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products Integration



### STEP 3

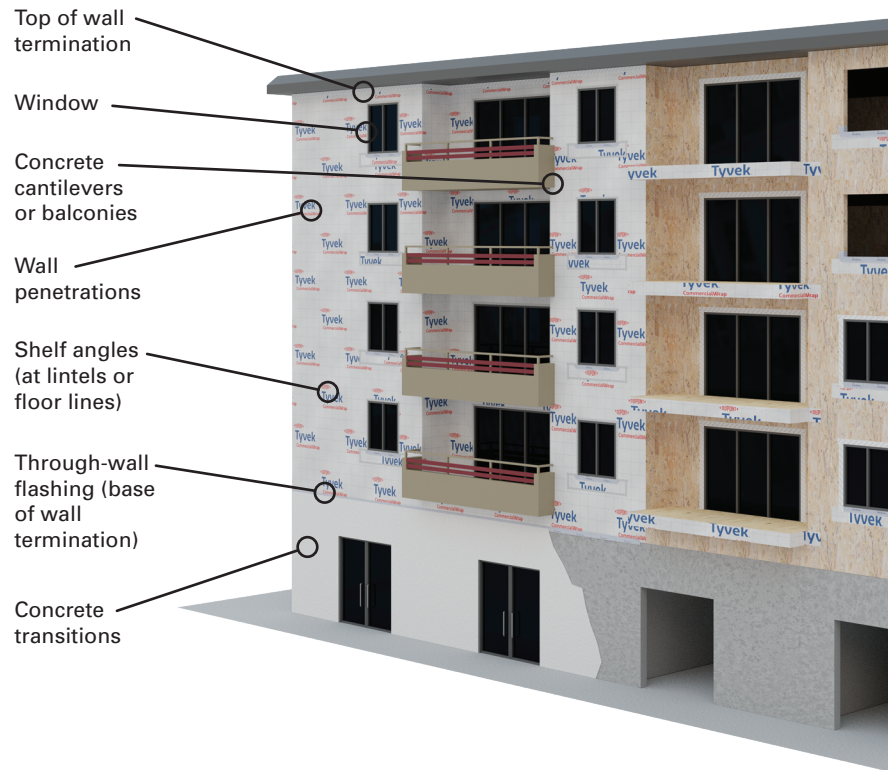
#### Final Step

- A. Bring the bottom portion of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron through the sill perimeter cut and horizontal slits so it laps over the top layer of **Tyvek® WRB**.
- B. Working from bottom to top, install **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to secure horizontal and vertical seams of the **Tyvek® WRB** apron.
- C. Install **Tyvek® Tape** along jambs and head to seal **Tyvek® WRB** around window. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** can be used.
- D. **ALTERNATE STEP C:** If Step 2 Alternate Step A was followed, install **Tyvek® Tape** along the jambs extending to the bottom of the cut and then at head to seal the **Tyvek® WRB** around the window. For a more robust termination, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** can be used.

# DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

## Continuity

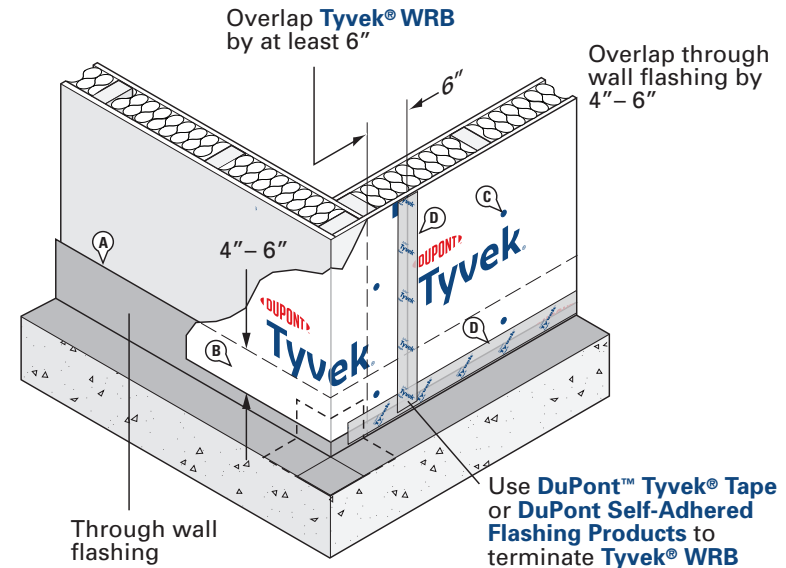
### Terminations



It is important to maintain the continuity of the **Tyvek® WRB** from top to bottom with proper shingling. The entire wall surface shall be wrapped, including unconditioned spaces.

Special attention should be given to all terminations and transitions to ensure a proper drainage plane and a continuous air and water barrier is maintained.

### Base of Wall



- Install through wall flashing per manufacturer's instructions. The through wall flashing may be terminated by using a reglet, counterflashing, termination bar or by embedding in a mortar joint.
- Overlap through wall flashing with **Tyvek® WRB** by 4"–6".
- Mechanically fasten bottom of the **Tyvek® WRB** through top of through wall flashing.
- Seal vertical and horizontal seams using **Tyvek® Tape** or a **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product**.

## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB) Continuity

### Installation of Metal Flashing at Façade Transitions

The following options for terminating metal flashing can be used for various exterior façade transitions. The cladding materials shown to the right are for general reference.

#### Option 1: Metal Flashing Terminated onto Tyvek® WRB

##### STEP 1

Install the “Z” or “L” metal flashing over the lower façade and onto the **Tyvek® WRB** with mechanical fasteners.

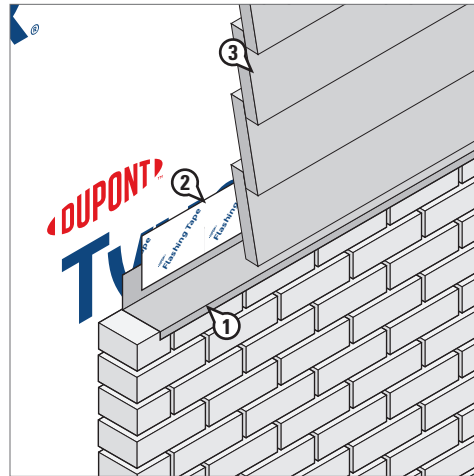
**NOTE:** Do not install **Tyvek® WRB** fasteners where the metal flashing or **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product** will be installed.

##### STEP 2

Terminate the vertical leg of the metal flashing to **Tyvek® WRB** with **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product** so there is a minimum of 2” adhesion onto the **Tyvek® WRB**.

##### STEP 3

Install the upper façade according to the manufacturer’s instructions.



#### Option 2: Metal Flashing Terminated onto Sheathing

##### STEP 1

Install the first course of **Tyvek® WRB** so it extends a minimum of 2” **BEYOND** where the top edge of the lower façade will be located.

**NOTE:** Do not install **Tyvek® WRB** fasteners where the metal flashing or **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product** will be installed.

##### STEP 2

Install the “Z” or “L” metal flashing along the top edge of the lower façade with the vertical leg overlapping the **Tyvek® WRB**.

##### STEP 3

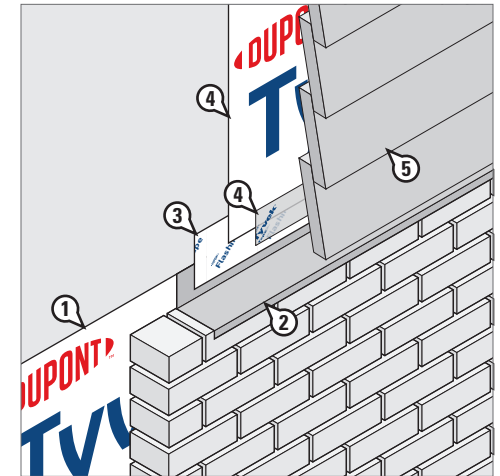
Terminate the vertical leg of the metal flashing directly to the sheathing with **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product** with minimum of 2” adhesion onto the sheathing. **NOTE:** A [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) is required for gypsum sheathing.

##### STEP 4

Install the next course of **Tyvek® WRB** to overlap the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** by a minimum of 2” and seal with **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** or a [chemically-compatible sealant](#).

##### STEP 5

Install upper façade according to the manufacturer’s instructions.



## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

### Continuity

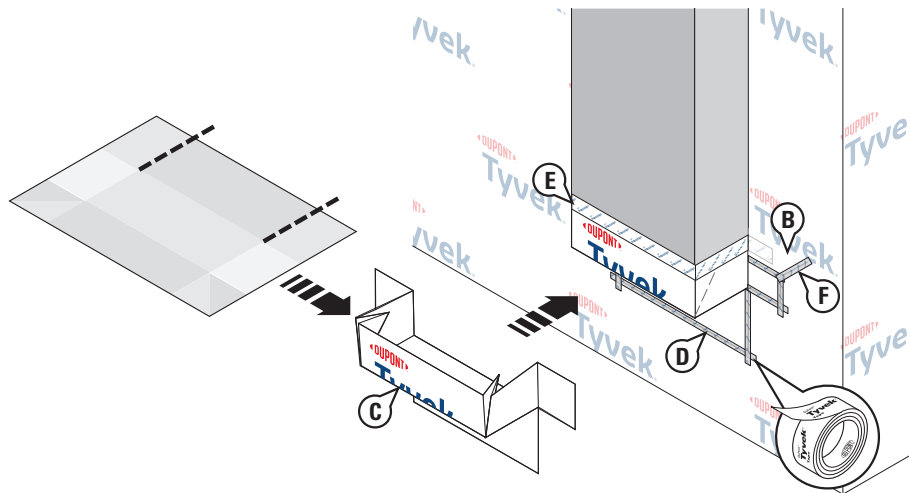
#### Wall Protrusions with Horizontal Plane

For wall protrusions such as conditioned cantilevered spaces, build-outs, eye brows, etc. to ensure **Tyvek® WRB** continuity along the bottom horizontal plane. This detail can be used in conjunction with the general *Horizontal Plane Transition* detail to the right.

**NOTE:** If top of wall protrusion includes a horizontal plane, the condition should be treated as a roofing interface. **Tyvek® WRBs** and **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** should not be used on roofs.

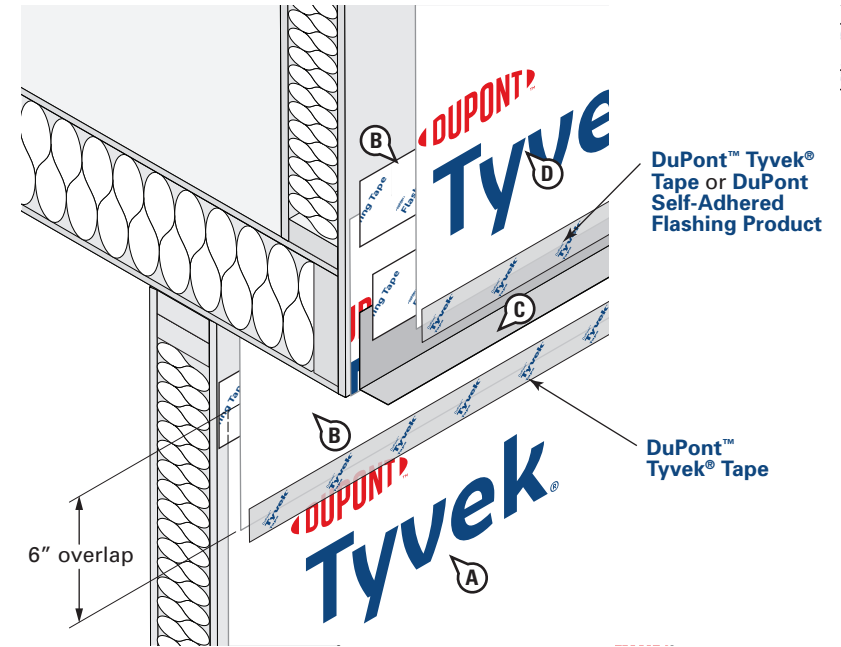
- Below horizontal plane, terminate the **Tyvek® WRB** to the sheathing using a **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product**. Terminating the **Tyvek® WRB** is optional if the horizontal plane is 12" or less.
- At outside edges of horizontal plane, cut a flap minimum 6" above bottom edge of cantilever. Fold up and temporarily secure in place to expose sheathing.
- Wrap the **Tyvek® WRB** along the horizontal plane and fold the **Tyvek® WRB** up the sides of the wall protrusion a minimum of 6". The **Tyvek® WRB** should also overlap the layer below by minimum 6".
- Tape all **Tyvek® WRB** seams with **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.
- Seal the top edge of the **Tyvek® WRB** to the sheathing using **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product**. **NOTE:** A [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) is required for gypsum sheathing.
- Fold down flap at outside edges of horizontal plane and seal with **Tyvek® Tape**.
- Install upper course of **Tyvek® WRB**, overlapping bottom layer minimum 6".

**NOTE:** Make the inside corner as tight as possible using a 1" x 4" or similar.



#### Horizontal Plane Transition: Method 1

Detail isolates horizontal plane from vertical walls for water management



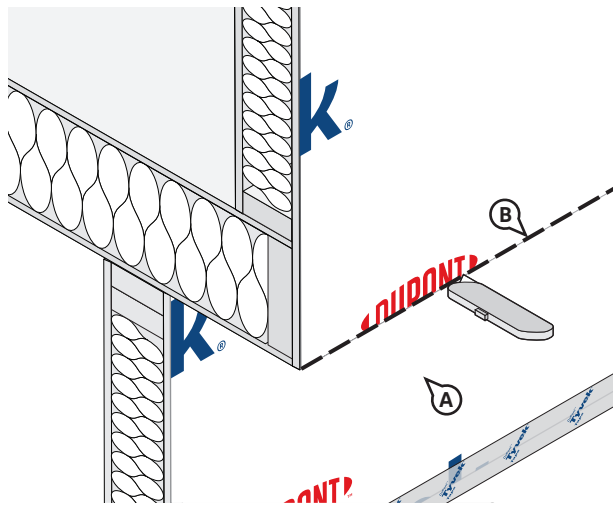
- Install **Tyvek® WRB** on wall below horizontal plane and terminate with a **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product**. Terminating the **Tyvek® WRB** is optional if the horizontal plane is 12" or less. **NOTE:** A [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) is required for gypsum sheathing.
- Install **Tyvek® WRB** on horizontal plane, overlapping the **Tyvek® WRB** below by 6", and extend a minimum of 6" onto the vertical wall above. Install **Tyvek® Tape** to seal horizontal seam below and terminate onto upper wall with a **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product**. **NOTE:** A [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) is required for gypsum sheathing.
- OPTIONAL:** Install a kick-out flashing at outside corner as recommended best practice per plans and specifications. Terminate vertical leg of kick-out flashing with a **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product**.
- Install **Tyvek® WRB** on wall above horizontal plane and terminate onto kick-out flashing with a **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product** or **Tyvek® Tape**. **NOTE:** If kick-out flashing is not used, ensure a 6" overlap and seal the horizontal **Tyvek® WRB** seam with **Tyvek® Tape**.

# DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

## Continuity

### Horizontal Plane Transition: Method 2

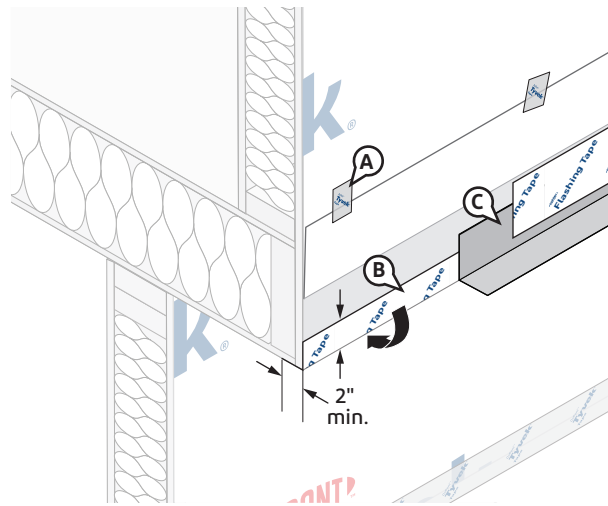
Detail isolates horizontal plane from vertical walls for water management



#### STEP 1

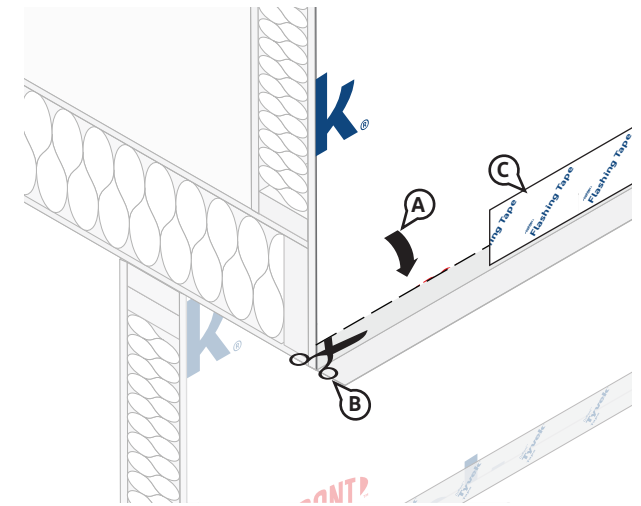
- A. Install **Tyvek® WRB** on wall below horizontal plane, across the horizontal plane, then on the wall above horizontal plane according to the [Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section.
- B. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** horizontally across the outside corner. This will create a flap above the soffit to expose the sheathing and allow for future installation of the in the next step.

**NOTE:** Create vertical cuts at outside corners of vertical wall as needed to fold up flap.



#### STEP 2

- A. Fold up the flap and temporarily secure with **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**, or tuck flap under the **Tyvek® WRB**.
- B. Install **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** along the edge of the horizontal plane with a minimum 2" of adhesion on the underside of the horizontal plane and a minimum 2" of adhesion onto the exposed sheathing. **NOTE:** A [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) is required for gypsum sheathing.
- C. **OPTIONAL:** Install a kick-out flashing at outside corner as recommended best practice per plans and specifications. For a more robust installation, terminate vertical leg of kick-out flashing with a **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product**.



#### STEP 3

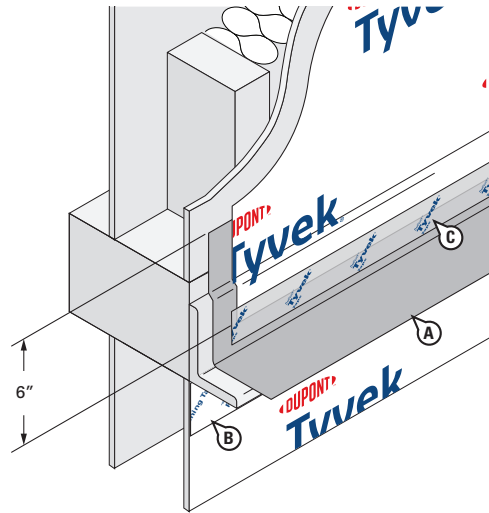
- A. Flip down **Tyvek® WRB** flap.
- B. Trim ~2" strip along the horizontal edge of the **Tyvek® WRB** flap.
- C. Seal the horizontal seam with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, or **Tyvek® Tape**.

**NOT SHOWN:** Seal any vertical cuts that were made at the outside corners of the upper wall with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**.

## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

### Continuity

#### Shelf Angles



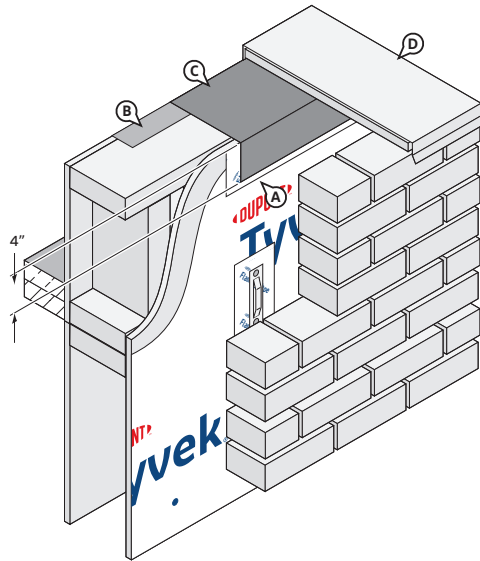
- A. Self-adhered through wall flashing should be applied to the top of the shelf angle and the **Tyvek® WRB** should be properly shingled over by at least 6".
- B. Seal the **Tyvek® WRB** to the bottom of the shelf angle using **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**.
- C. Seal bottom of the **Tyvek® WRB** to through wall flashing using **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** or a **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product**.

# DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

## Continuity

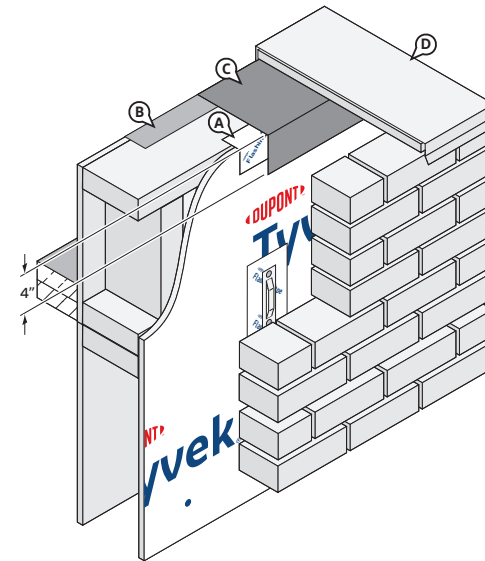
### Parapet Wall with Brick and Top of Wall Termination

#### Method 1



- Install **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** to terminate the **Tyvek® WRB**. **NOTE:** A [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) is required for gypsum sheathing.
- Install roofing membrane (by others).
- Install through wall flashing over parapet wall, overlapping the **Tyvek® WRB** and the roofing membrane by a minimum of 4" in the proper shingling manner.  
**NOTE:** The roofing membrane and through wall flashing (by others) may be one/ the same product.
- Install coping cap.

#### Method 2



- Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** flush with the top of wall and terminate with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** a minimum of 2" onto the **Tyvek® WRB** and a minimum of 2" (**maximum of 4"**) adhesion onto the top of the parapet. **NOTE:** A [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) is required for gypsum sheathing.
- Install roofing membrane (by others).
- Install through wall flashing over parapet wall, overlapping the **Tyvek® WRB** and the roofing membrane by a minimum of 4" in the proper shingling manner.  
**NOTE:** The roofing membrane and through wall flashing (by others) may be one/ the same product.
- Install coping cap.

**NOTE:** Proper water management is required at top of wall through proper shingling, overlaps, etc. Terminating the **Tyvek® WRB** with a **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product** is recommended for a more robust termination and is **required for air barrier installations**. If top of wall condition includes a chemically-compatible self-adhered membrane, the self-adhered membrane can seal directly over the **Tyvek® WRB** with a 2" minimum overlap.

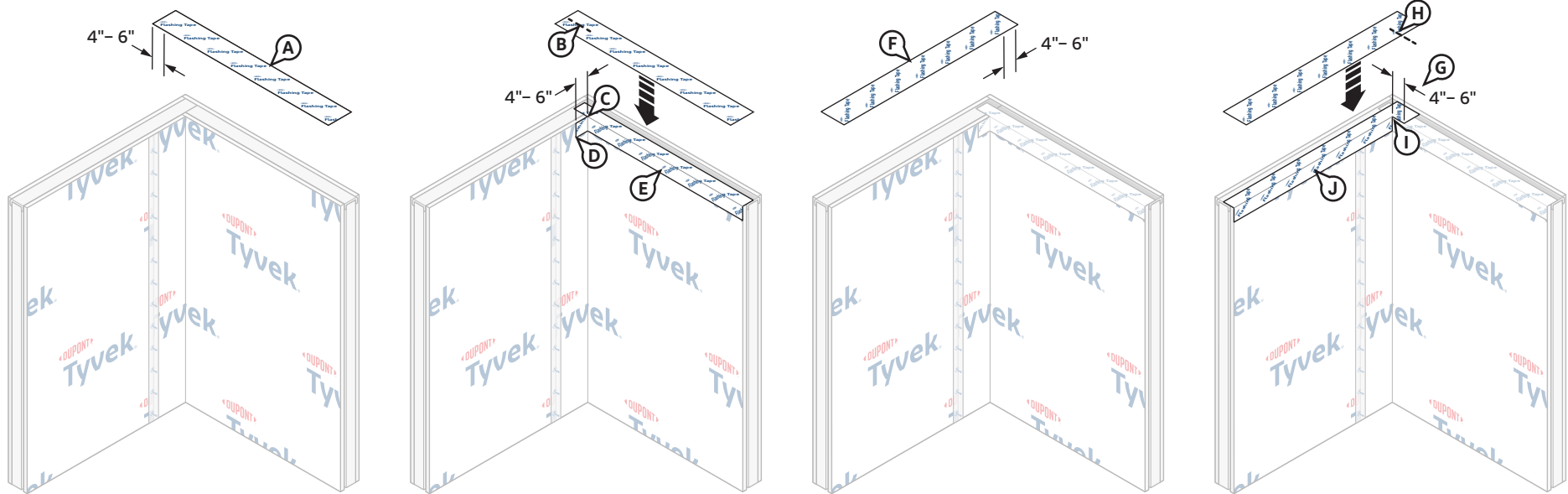
**NOTE:** For non-air barrier installations, if a roofing membrane such as TPO or EPDM overlaps the **Tyvek® WRB** on the vertical wall, a minimum 4"– 6" overlap is required if a **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product** is not used.\*

\*DuPont assumes no liability for alternate self-adhered membranes or other roofing products.

# DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

## Continuity

### Top of Wall Termination at Inside Corner when using [Method 2](#) of the Parapet Wall with Brick



A. Prepare 9" **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** for installation and ensure flashing extends 4"– 6" on the top of the adjacent wall surface beyond the edge of the inside corner.

**NOTE:** A [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) is required for gypsum sheathing.

B. Create a slit in the **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** parallel to the wall plane that extends to/from the inside corner to the edge of the flashing.

C. Align the end of the slit with the inside corner. Remove release paper for flashing positioned over the horizontal wall plane. Ensure the installation of 9" **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** has 3"– 4" adhered along the top of the wall surface and 5"– 6" adhered to the face of the **Tyvek® WRB**. Adhere **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** to horizontal plane.

D. Remove the remaining release paper and gently fold **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** onto the face of **Tyvek® WRB** and into the inside corner.

E. Use firm hand pressure or a j-roller on the **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** to ensure proper adhesion.

F. Prepare 9" **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** for installation and align along top of wall. Ensure flashing extends 4"– 6" beyond the edge of the inside corner.

**NOTE:** A [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) is required for gypsum sheathing.

G. Create a slit in the **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** prior to installation. The slit should extend from the inside corner to edge of flashing. Be careful not to cut through previously installed flashing and/or **Tyvek® WRB**.

H. Align the end of the slit with the inside corner. Remove release paper for flashing position over the adjacent horizontal wall plane. Adhere **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** to horizontal plane.

I. Remove the remaining release paper and gently fold **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** onto the face of **Tyvek® WRB** and into the inside corner.

J. Apply a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) to the pinhole area.

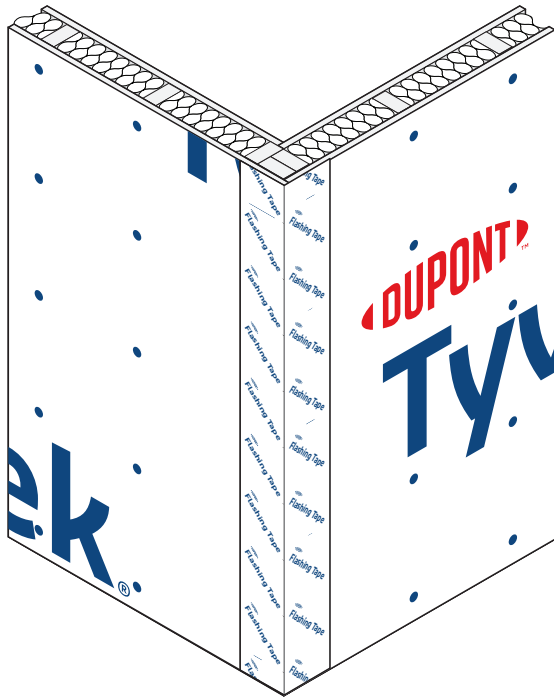
## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

### Continuity

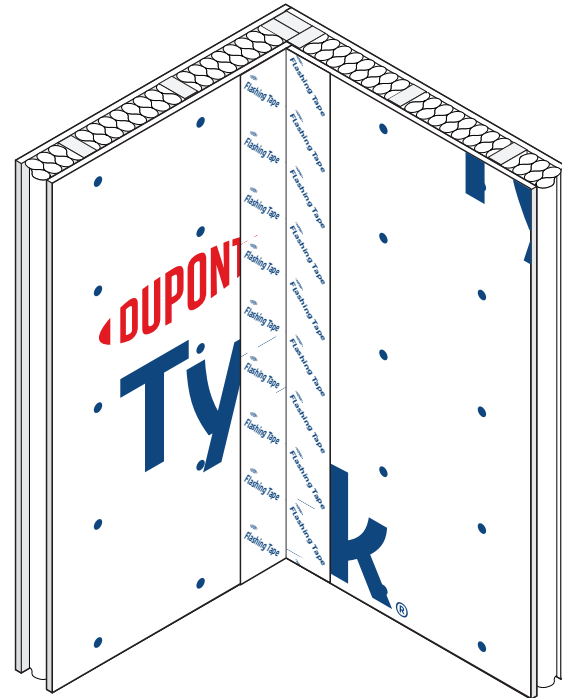
#### Inside and Outside Corners – OPTIONAL Use of 12" DuPont™ Flashing Tape

12" wide **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** can be used for additional protection during the construction process at inside and outside corners. The diagrams below show 12" **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** installed over the **Tyvek® WRB**; however, the flashing could alternatively be installed directly to the sheathing prior to the **Tyvek® WRB** installation. Ensure the **Tyvek® WRB** and 12" **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** are installed tightly into or around the inside or outside corners, respectively. If using multiple pieces of **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, ensure a minimum of 2" overlap of each piece. For more information regarding the installation of 12" **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** at building corners, refer to the Installation Bulletin: [DuPont™ Flashing Tape for Inside and Outside Wall Corners](#).

Outside Corner



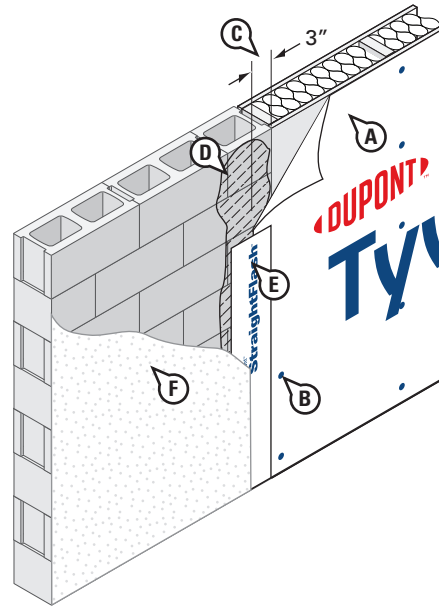
Inside Corner



## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

### Continuity

#### Hybrid Wall – Transition to DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products



- A. Install **Tyvek® WRB** prior to application of **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™** or fluid-applied membrane (by others).
- B. Fasten the **Tyvek® WRB** to the stud adjoining the transition substrate.
- C. Cut the **Tyvek® WRB** so that approximately 3" will overlap the adjoining substrate.
- D. Fold back the 3" flap of **Tyvek® WRB** and prime adjoining substrate with a [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#).
- E. Fold the **Tyvek® WRB** back down over the interface and seal it to the primed substrate using **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, overlapping both surfaces evenly by approximately 2". Apply pressure along entire surface of flashing. Refer to the *Special Consideration* section for additional information.
- F. Apply **Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™** or fluid-applied membrane (by others) onto wall surface, overlapping the **StraightFlash™** by a minimum of 2". For **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™** installation instructions, refer to the [DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™ and DuPont Flashing Products Installation Guidelines](#).

**Uncured Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products must not come in contact with Tyvek® WRBs due to potential impact on performance properties. Therefore, use of a spray guard or other physical barrier to avoid overspray onto the Tyvek® WRB is recommended.**

- G. Upon completion, inspect surface to ensure that **Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™** is continuous and free of any voids or pinholes.

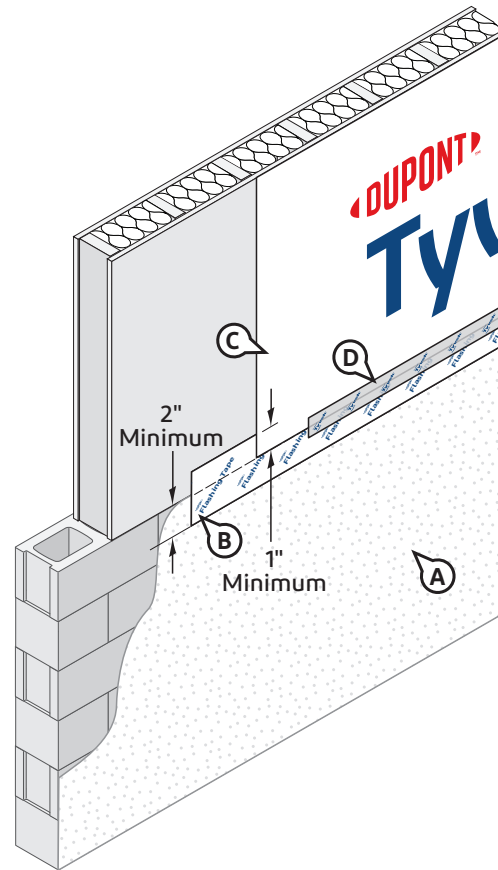
**NOTE:** When spraying, the outer edge of **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product** at the interface with the **Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™** can be treated with **DuPont Tyvek® Fluid Applied Flashing and Joint Compound+** tapered to the wall substrate to help ensure installation is free of pinholes and voids.

# DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

## Continuity

### Podium – Transition to DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products

#### Method 1



A. Install **Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™**, or fluid-applied membrane (by others), on the concrete/CMU podium. Upon completion, inspect surface to ensure that **Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™** is continuous and free of any voids or pinholes.

**NOTE:** If the **Tyvek® WRB** was installed first, flip the bottom flap up and temporarily secure with **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to prevent contact with the fluid-applied membrane.

**ALTERNATE METHOD TO SECURE FLAP:** In lieu of temporarily taping, the flap can be tucked under the **Tyvek® WRB**.

B. Install **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** with 2" of adhesion onto the cured fluid-applied membrane. A field adhesion test may be required to ensure proper adhesion of the flashing to the cured fluid-applied membrane. If necessary, flashing adhesion can be improved by using a [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) or by installing flashing onto a wet bed of the fluid applied membrane.

**NOTE:** A [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) is required for gypsum sheathing.

C. Install the **Tyvek® WRB** with a minimum 1" overlap of the **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** (or fold down the **Tyvek® WRB** flap if the **Tyvek® WRB** was previously installed).

**NOTE:** **Tyvek® WRBs** must **NOT** come in direct contact with other manufacturer's cured or uncured fluid-applied products due to potential impact on performance properties.

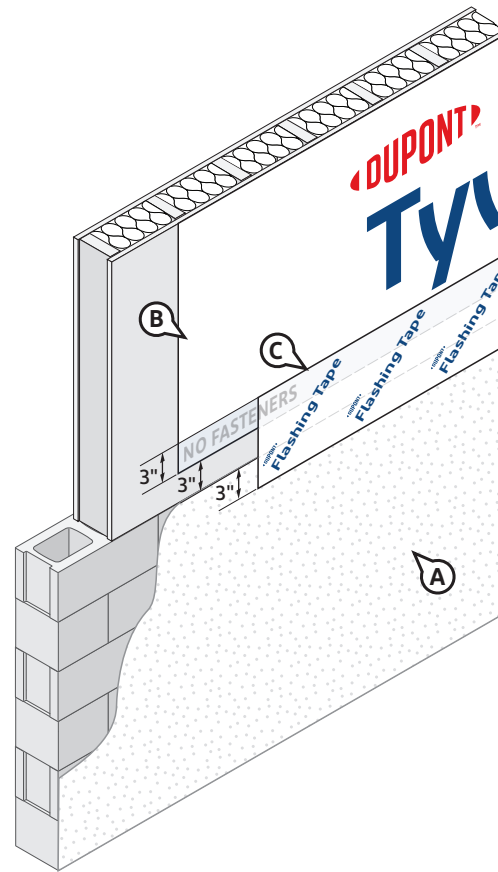
D. Seal the **Tyvek® WRB** to the topsheet of the **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** with **Tyvek® Tape** or **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products**.

## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

### Continuity

#### Podium – Transition to DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products

##### Method 2



A. Install **Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™**, or fluid-applied membrane (by others), on the concrete/CMU podium. Upon completion, inspect surface to ensure that **Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™** is continuous and free of any voids or pinholes.

**NOTE:** If the **Tyvek® WRB** was installed first, trim the bottom edge 3" away from the fluid-applied membrane to expose the sheathing, and flip the bottom flap up and temporarily secure with **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to prevent contact with the fluid-applied membrane.

**ALTERNATE METHOD TO SECURE FLAP:** In lieu of temporarily taping, the flap can be tucked under the **Tyvek® WRB**.

B. Install the **Tyvek® WRB** 3" away from the fluid applied membrane. **DO NOT INSTALL** fasteners within 3" of the bottom edge of the **Tyvek® WRB** for flashing installation in the next step (if the **Tyvek® WRB** was installed first, fold down the **Tyvek® WRB** flap).

**NOTE:** **Tyvek® WRBs** must **NOT** come in direct contact with other manufacturer's cured or uncured fluid-applied products due to potential impact on performance properties.

C. Install 9" wide **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** with 3" of adhesion onto the cured fluid-applied membrane, 3" of adhesion onto the sheathing, and 3" of adhesion onto the **Tyvek® WRB**. A field adhesion test may be required to ensure proper adhesion of the flashing to the cured fluid-applied membrane. If necessary, flashing adhesion can be improved by using a [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) or by installing flashing onto a wet bed of the fluid applied membrane.

**NOTE:** A [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) is required for gypsum sheathing.

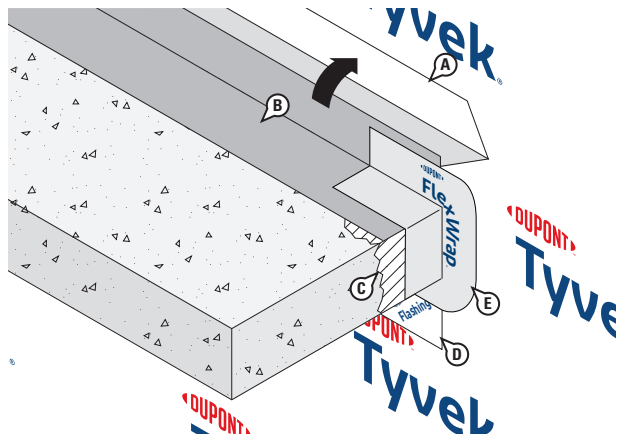
## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

### Continuity

#### Concrete Cantilevers or Balconies

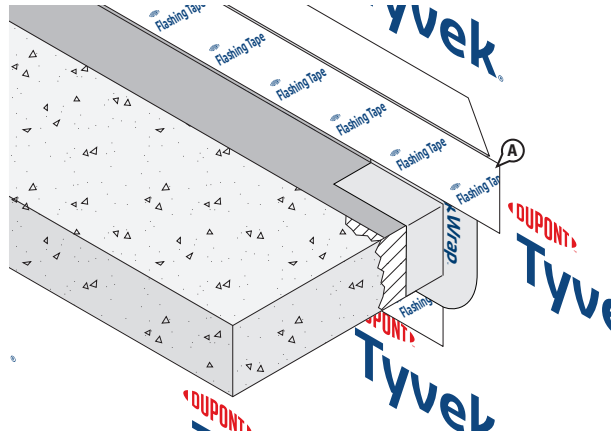
Seal to concrete cantilevers or balconies using **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** and a [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#).

**NOTE:** Cantilever and balcony conditions vary. The detail below captures one typical cantilever condition with a termination of the **Tyvek® WRB** along the bottom and side surfaces of the cantilever prior to sealing the **Tyvek® WRB** flap. Ensure proper shingling of **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** and terminations of the **Tyvek® WRB**. Contact your local DuPont Representative for more information regarding additional cantilever or balcony conditions.



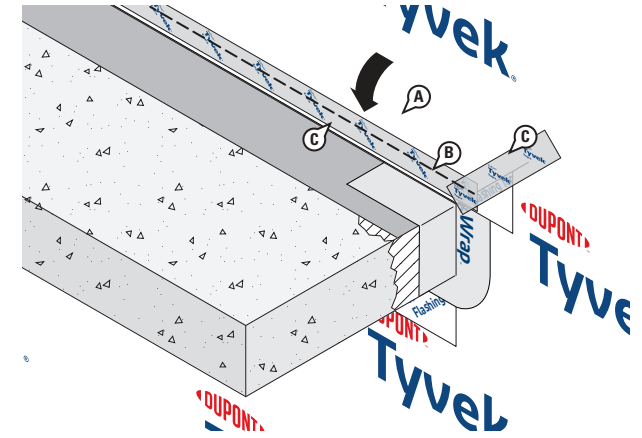
#### STEP 1

- Cut and flip up **Tyvek® WRB** flap.
- Install waterproofing sheet membrane or metal flashing per plans and specifications and/or manufacturer's requirements. Metal flashing recommended to be embedded in sealant.
- Apply a [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) to concrete surfaces where **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** will be installed. **NOTE:** On wall surface, an adhesive/primer is not required for wood-based sheathing, except when applying flashing during adverse weather conditions.
- Before applying **DuPont™ FlexWrap™**, seal the **Tyvek® WRB** to bottom of cantilever or balcony with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**.
- Wrap **FlexWrap™** around cantilever or balcony edge. **NOTE:** Ensure **FlexWrap™** will not be exposed after completion of cladding.



#### STEP 2

- Apply 4" **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™** over **FlexWrap™** and top edge of the metal flashing, when used. **NOTE:** A [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) is required for gypsum sheathing.



#### STEP 3

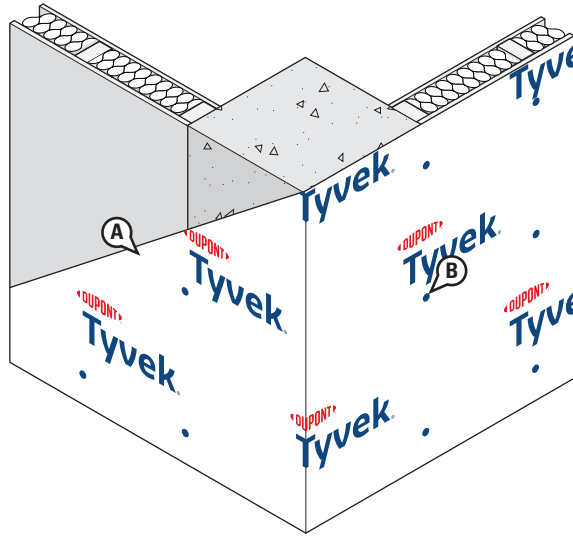
- Flip down **Tyvek® WRB** flap.
- Trim ~1" strip along horizontal edge of **Tyvek® WRB** flap
- Tape seams using **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** or a **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product**.

## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

### Continuity

#### Concrete Column

##### Method 1

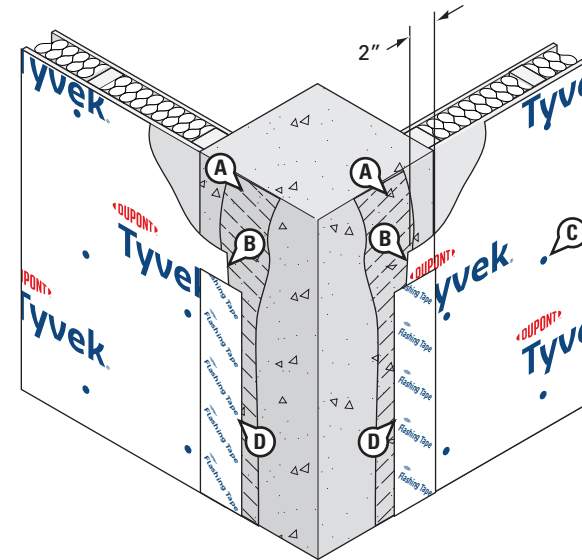


A. Wrap **Tyvek® WRB** around concrete column.

B. Mechanically fasten **Tyvek® WRB** at recommended spacing. (See [Key Installation Requirements for DuPont™ Tyvek® WRBs](#) section of this document)

**NOTE:** Mechanically fasten **Tyvek® WRB** to concrete column if necessary to maintain recommended fastener spacing.

##### Method 2



A. Prime concrete column with a [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#).

B. Cut **Tyvek® WRB** at concrete column, leaving approximately 2" overlapping column.

C. Mechanically fasten **Tyvek® WRB** into studs.

D. Seal **Tyvek® WRB** to concrete using **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**. Ensure air barrier continuity at the concrete interfaces. If condition includes a transition from a **Tyvek® WRB** to a fluid applied membrane, **StraightFlash™** is required to terminate the **Tyvek® WRB**.

**NOTE:** To increase holding power at the transition, additional fasteners may be necessary to secure **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **StraightFlash™**. Use appropriate fastener for each substrate.

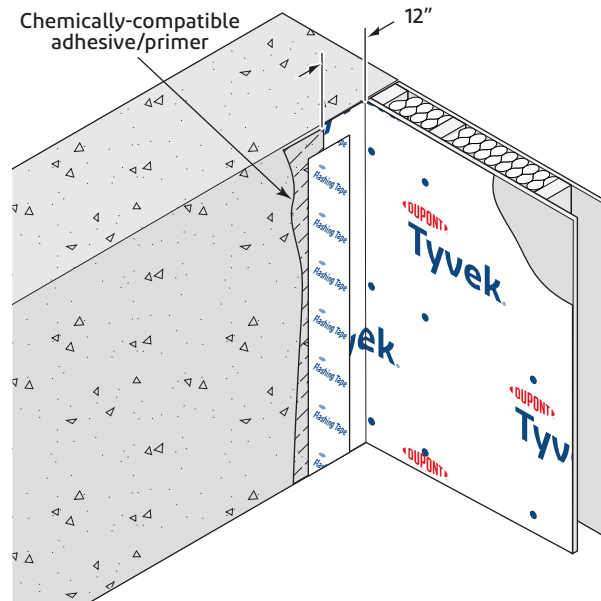
## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

### Continuity

#### Inside Corner Termination at Concrete Transition

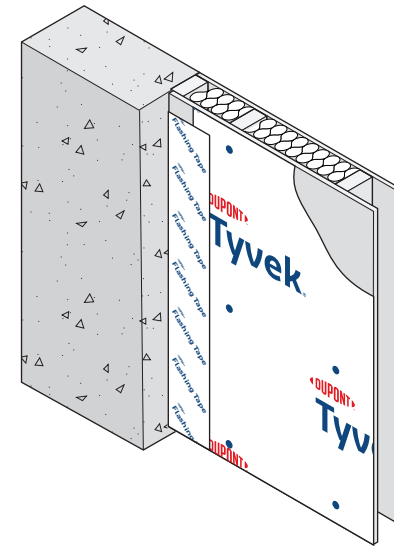
**NOTE:** Ensure air barrier continuity at the concrete interfaces. If condition includes a transition from a Tyvek® WRB to a fluid applied membrane, DuPont™ StraightFlash™ is required to terminate the Tyvek® WRB.

#### Method 1



- Cut Tyvek® WRB so there is approximately 12" overlapping concrete.
- Mechanically fasten Tyvek® WRB to studs.
- Prime concrete with a [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#).
- Seal Tyvek® WRB to concrete using DuPont™ Flashing Tape or StraightFlash™.

#### Method 2



- Cut Tyvek® WRB to expose approximately 2" of the wall.
- Mechanically fasten Tyvek® WRB to studs.
- Seal Tyvek® WRB to the wall along the inside corner using DuPont™ Flashing Tape or StraightFlash™. **NOTE:** A [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) is required for gypsum sheathing.

**NOTE:** Additional CAD details are available in the Technical Information section of [building.dupont.com](http://building.dupont.com).

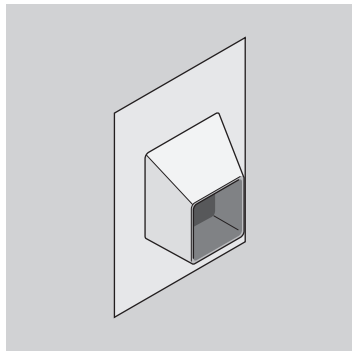
# DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

## Penetrations

Seal around plumbing pipes, HVAC components, electrical outlets, exterior lights, flashing panels, and other objects that penetrate the **Tyvek® WRB**. Always use positive shingling by installing **Tyvek® WRBs** and **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** from bottom to top, with upper layer installed over lower layer. **NOTE:** A backing support for flashing made of solid OSB or wood sheathing must be installed around the penetration before the **Tyvek® WRB** and flashing for open stud applications.

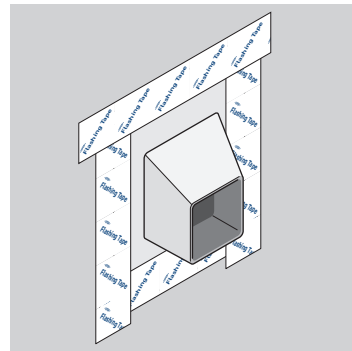
## Flashing Integral Flanged Products – Installed BEFORE the Tyvek™ WRB

### Method 1



#### STEP 1

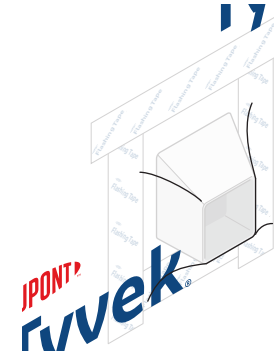
Install integral flanged product onto sheathing per manufacturer's instructions.



#### STEP 2

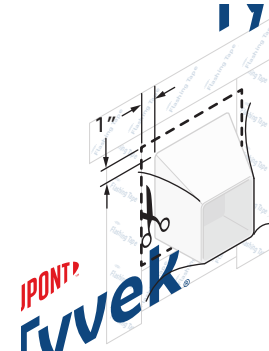
Install **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product** onto flanges, extending onto sheathing by a minimum of 2".

**NOTE:** A [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) is required for gypsum sheathing.



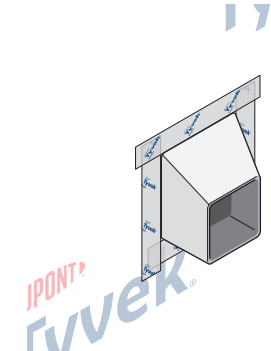
#### STEP 3

Install **Tyvek® WRB**.



#### STEP 4

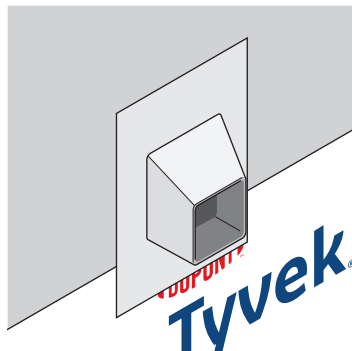
Make cut in **Tyvek® WRB**, ensuring a minimum of 1" gap for adhesion of **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.



#### STEP 5

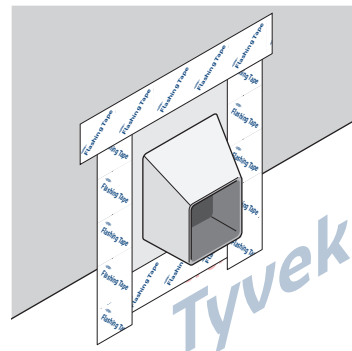
Seal edges of **Tyvek® WRB** with **Tyvek® Tape**.

### Method 2



#### STEP 1

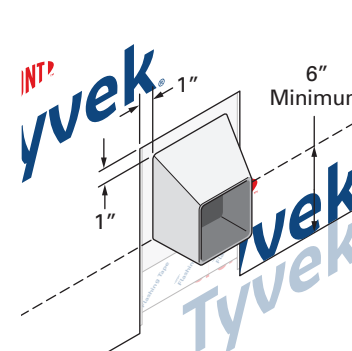
Install **Tyvek® WRB** under bottom flange.



#### STEP 2

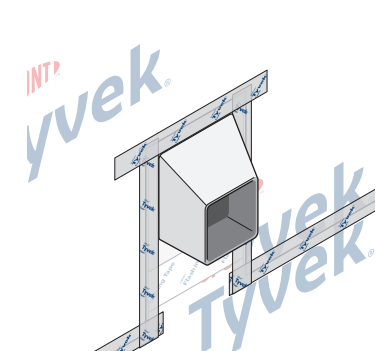
Adhere **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product** onto sides and top flange. **NOTE:** Also install at bottom flange as a recommended best practice and for air barrier installations.

**NOTE:** A [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) is required for gypsum sheathing.



#### STEP 3

Install next course of **Tyvek® WRB** with a minimum of 6" overlap. Cut back 1" to expose flanges.



#### STEP 4

Seal seams using **Tyvek® Tape**.

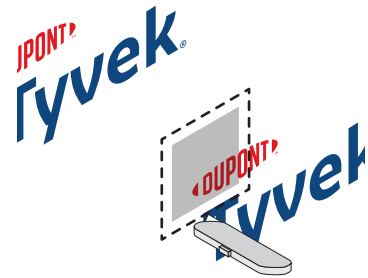
**OPTIONAL LAST STEP FOR ALL INSTALLATIONS:** Install a piece of **Tyvek® WRB** and seal with **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** to overlap the top edge of the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product** (shown in Method 1 below).

**OPTIONAL INTERIOR SEAL:** The penetration rough opening can be sealed from the interior side using a [chemically-compatible sealant](#) (and backer rod as necessary), or **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, **Great Stuff Pro™ Gaps & Cracks Polyurethane Foam Sealant**, or recommended foam.

# DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB) Penetrations

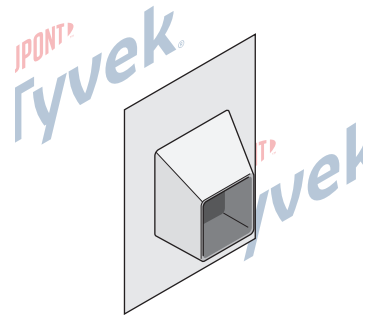
## Flashing Integral Flanged Products Installed AFTER DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB

### Method 1



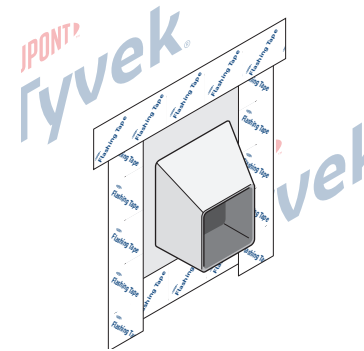
#### STEP 1

Install **Tyvek® WRB** and cut as necessary to accommodate integral flanged product.



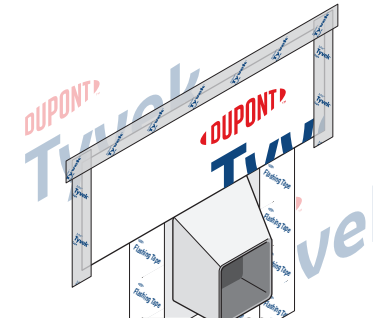
#### STEP 2

Install integral flanged product per manufacturer's instructions.



#### STEP 3

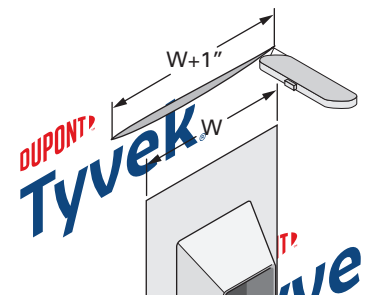
Install **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product** (recommended best practice) or **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** onto bottom, sides, and top flanges, extending onto **Tyvek® WRB** by a minimum of 2". **NOTE:** Bottom piece is optional, but is recommended as a best practice and is required for air barrier installations.



#### STEP 4 (OPTIONAL)

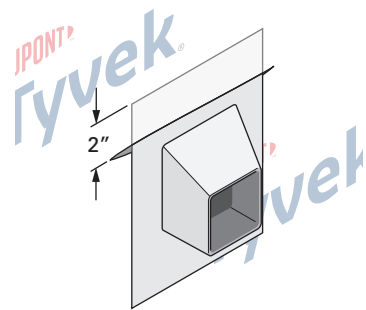
Install a piece of **Tyvek® WRB** to overlap the top edge of the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product**. Seal sides and top with **Tyvek® Tape**.

### Method 2



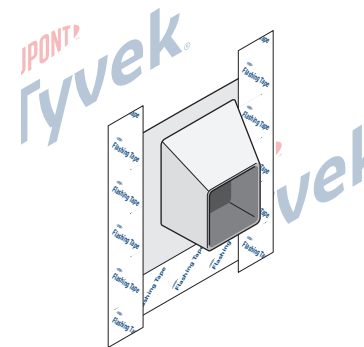
#### STEP 1

Install **Tyvek® WRB** and make horizontal cut a minimum of 1" wider than flange.



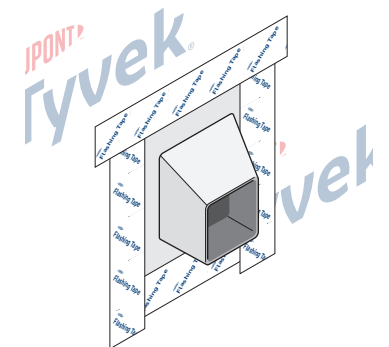
#### STEP 2

Slide top flange into slit with minimum 2" overlap of **Tyvek® WRB**, and install per manufacturer's instructions.



#### STEP 3

Adhere **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product** (recommended best practice) or **Tyvek® Tape** bottom and side flanges, extending onto **Tyvek® WRB** by 2". **NOTE:** Bottom piece is optional, but is recommended as a best practice and is required for air barrier installations.



#### STEP 4

Install **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product** (recommended best practice) or **Tyvek® Tape** to top flange, extending **BEYOND** the **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product**, or **Tyvek® Tape**, on side flanges.

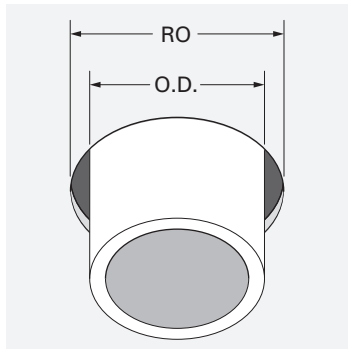
# DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB) Penetrations

Flashing Non-Flanged Products – Sealed AFTER the Tyvek™ WRB Installation

## Method 1: Flashing Non-Flanged Products Using DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ

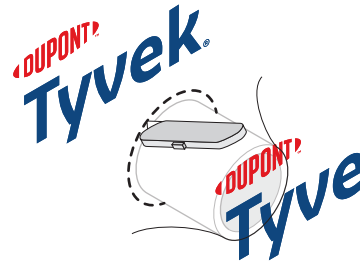
**NOTE:** Ensure FlexWrap™ EZ will not be exposed to UV after the installation of the facade.

For non-flanged products with O.D. GREATER than 2”



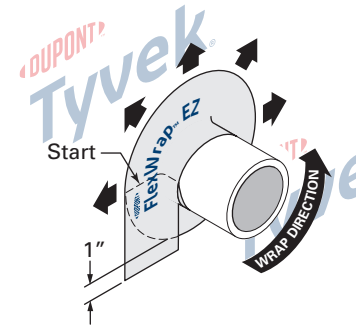
Use FlexWrap™ EZ only when penetration rough opening (RO) is not more than 1/2” larger than the outside diameter/dimension (O.D.) of non-flanged product.

**NOTE:** For more information regarding the installation of FlexWrap™ EZ, refer to the [Installation Information Bulletin for FlexWrap™ EZ](#).



### STEP 1

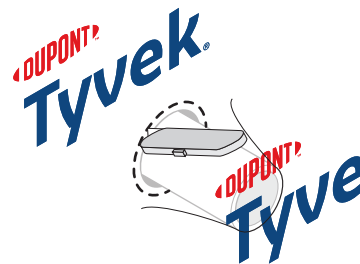
Install Tyvek® WRB over non-flanged product and cut around penetration.



### STEP 2

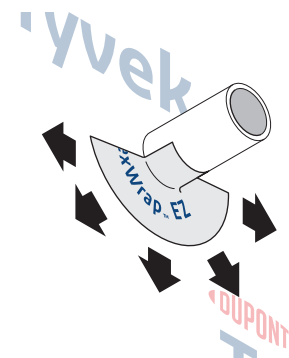
Cut a piece of FlexWrap™ EZ LONGER than the circumference of non-flanged product to ensure a minimum 1” overlap onto the Tyvek® WRB. Starting at the horizontal position on either side, adhere around penetration and onto Tyvek® WRB.

For non-flanged products with O.D. LESS than 2”



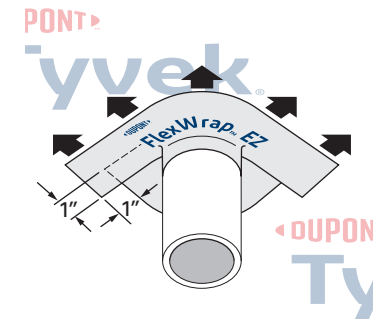
### STEP 1

Install Tyvek® WRB over non-flanged product and cut around penetration.



### STEP 2

Cut a piece of FlexWrap™ EZ the length of 1/2 the circumference of the non-flanged product. Adhere onto bottom section and fan out onto Tyvek® WRB.



### STEP 3

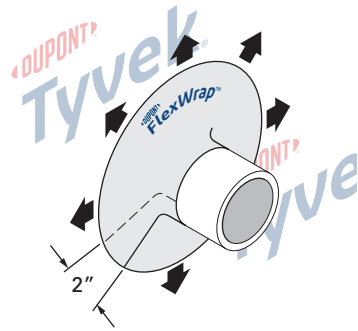
Cut a second piece of FlexWrap™ EZ the length of the pipe circumference. Adhere onto top section and fan out onto face of wall with a minimum of 1” overlap of the edges of FlexWrap™ EZ below.

## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB) Penetrations

### Method 2: Flashing Non-Flanged Products Using DuPont™ FlexWrap™

**NOTE:** Ensure **FlexWrap™** will not be exposed to UV after the installation of the facade.

#### FlexWrap™ installed onto Tyvek® WRB around penetration



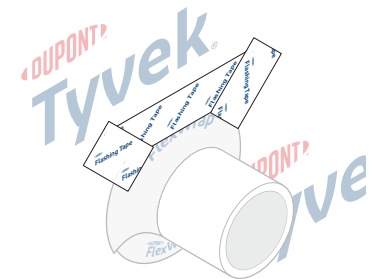
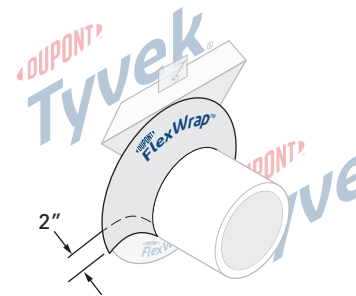
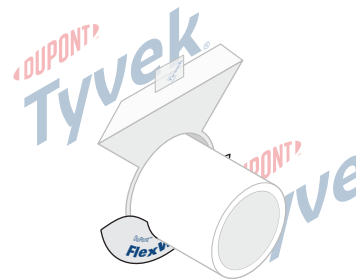
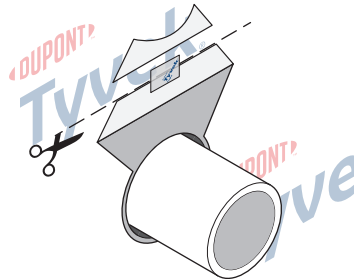
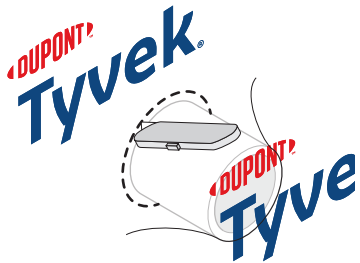
#### STEP 1

Install **Tyvek® WRB** over non-flanged product and cut around penetration.

#### STEP 2

Starting at the horizontal position on either side, install **FlexWrap™** around penetration with a minimum 2" overlap.

#### FlexWrap™ adhered to sheathing above penetration\*



#### STEP 1

Install **Tyvek® WRB** over non-flanged product and cut around penetration.

#### STEP 2

Cut diagonal flap in **Tyvek® WRB**, trim back ~1" to make straight edge, and temporarily secure.

#### STEP 3

Install **FlexWrap™** around bottom of penetration.

#### STEP 4

Install **FlexWrap™** around top of penetration, overlapping bottom layer of **FlexWrap™** by 2" on either side.

#### STEP 5

Flip down and secure head flap using **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product**.

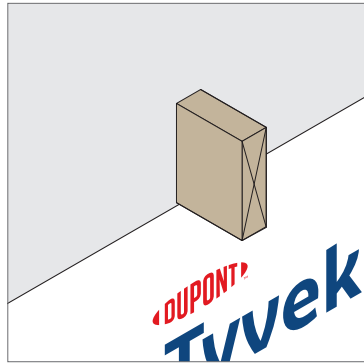
\*Allows positive shingling of **Tyvek® WRB**

## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB) Flashing Beam/Truss Penetrations

### Option 1: Using Pieces of Tyvek® WRB Around Beam

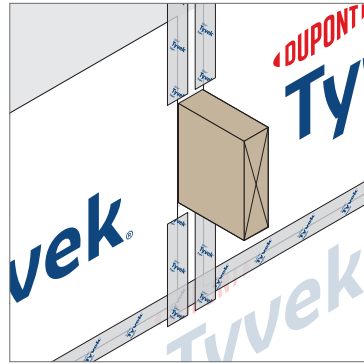
**NOTE:** A backing support for flashing made of solid OSB or wood sheathing must be installed around the beam before the **Tyvek® WRB** and flashing for open stud applications.

**OPTIONAL:** **DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ** may be used in place of **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** (STEP 3) when the beam penetration rough opening (RO) is not more than 1/2" larger than the outside diameter/dimension (O.D.) of the beam. Refer to the detail [Method 1 – Flashing Non-Flanged Products Using DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ](#) in this guide.



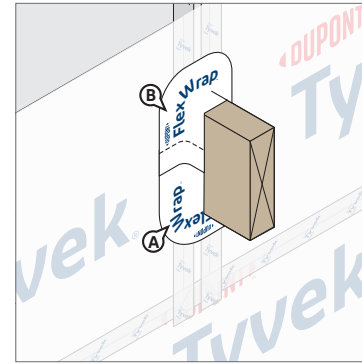
#### STEP 1

Install the first course of **Tyvek® WRB** so the top edge is flush with the bottom of the beam.



#### STEP 2

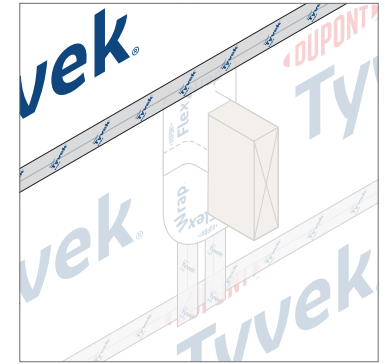
Cut pieces of **Tyvek® WRB** to fit between beams. The pieces should extend a minimum of 7" above the beams and overlap the course below by a minimum of 6". Seal the vertical seams with **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**. **NOTE:** For air barrier installations, seal all vertical and horizontal seams.



#### STEP 3

Seal around the beam using two pieces of 6" wide **FlexWrap™** (or **FlexWrap™ EZ** as captured in the note above).

- Cut the first piece of **FlexWrap™** long enough wrap around the bottom half of the beam. Break the perforation in the release paper by folding the **FlexWrap™** top sheet to the inside of the fold. With the **FlexWrap™** still folded, remove the narrow piece of release paper and adhere the exposed butyl to the bottom and up each side of the beam. Remove the remaining release paper and fan the **FlexWrap™** out onto the **Tyvek® WRB** on the face of the wall.
- Cut the second piece of **FlexWrap™** long enough to wrap around the top half of the beam, overlapping the first piece of **FlexWrap™** on each side by 2". Install along the top of the beam and down each side, overlapping the lower piece of **FlexWrap™** by 2" using the method above.



#### STEP 4

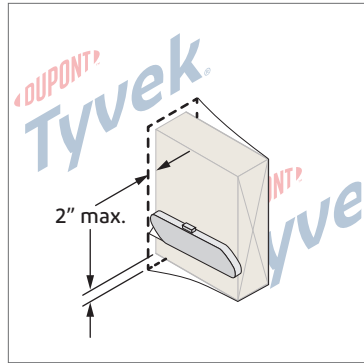
Install the top course of the **Tyvek® WRB**, overlapping the **Tyvek® WRB** below with 1" gap above the beam. Tape all vertical seams with **Tyvek® Tape**. **NOTE:** For air barrier installations, seal all vertical and horizontal seams.

## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB) Flashing Beam/Truss Penetrations

### Option 2: Tyvek® WRB Flap Created Above Framing Members

**NOTE:** A backing support made of solid OSB or wood sheathing must be installed around the framing before the Tyvek® WRB and DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Product installation.

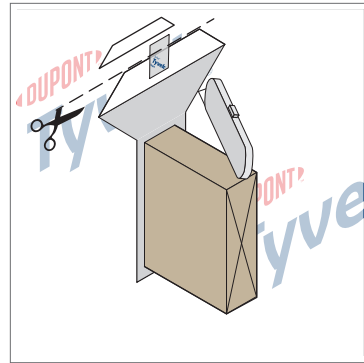
**NOTE:** Ensure DuPont™ FlexWrap™ will NOT be left exposed after the completion of the cladding.



#### STEP 1

Install the Tyvek® WRB over the beam and cut around the perimeter of the member.

**NOTE:** Do NOT cut the Tyvek® WRB more than 2" from the beam on all sides.

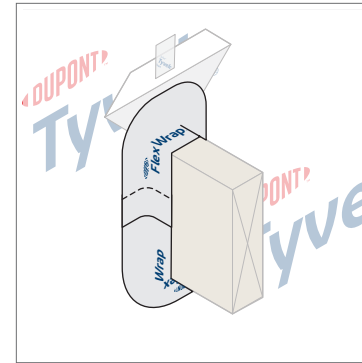


#### STEP 2

Cut a 45-degree slit a minimum of 8" extending from the corner of the beam, up and away from the corner. This will create a flap above the beam to expose the sheathing and allow for future installation of the FlexWrap™ in STEP 3.

Cut a 1"–2" strip of the Tyvek® WRB at lower horizontal edge of the head flap and temporarily secure with DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape.

**ALTERNATE METHOD TO SECURE TYVEK® WRB FLAP.** In lieu of temporarily taping the flap can be tucked under the Tyvek® WRB.

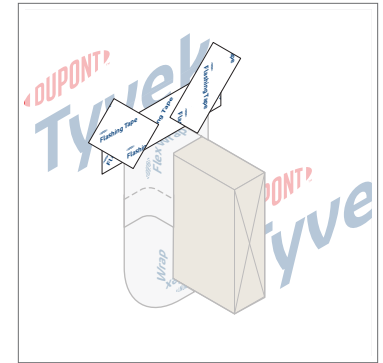


#### STEP 3

Seal around the beam using two pieces of 6" wide FlexWrap™.

Cut the first piece of FlexWrap™ long enough to wrap around the bottom half of the beam. Break the perforation in the release paper by folding the FlexWrap™ top sheet to the inside of the fold. With the FlexWrap™ still folded, remove the narrow piece of release paper and adhere the exposed butyl to the bottom and up each side of the beam. Remove the remaining release paper and fan the FlexWrap™ out onto the Tyvek® WRB on the face of the wall.

Cut the second piece of FlexWrap™ long enough to wrap around the top half of the beam, overlapping the first piece of FlexWrap™ on each side by 2". Install\* along the top of the beam and down each side, overlapping the lower piece of FlexWrap™ by 2" using the method above.



#### STEP 4

##### Final Step

Flip down the Tyvek® WRB flap.

Tape seams using DuPont™ Flashing Tape, DuPont™ StraightFlash™, or Tyvek® Tape.

**NOTE:** For a more robust head flap termination, seal with DuPont™ Flashing Tape or DuPont™ StraightFlash™.

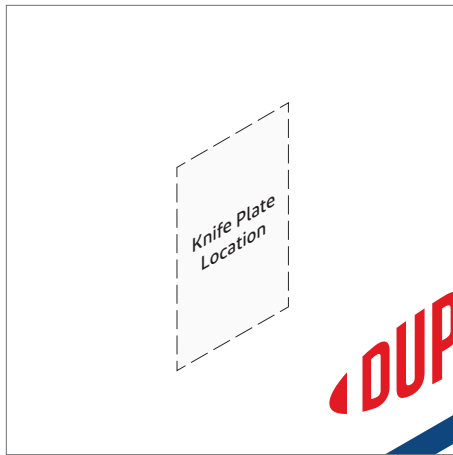
\*Use DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products with a [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) as applicable to seal directly to gypsum sheathing, concrete, wood, or other rough surfaces. An adhesive/primer is not required for wood-based sheathing, except when applying flashing during adverse weather.

## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB) Knife Plates

### Surface-Mounted

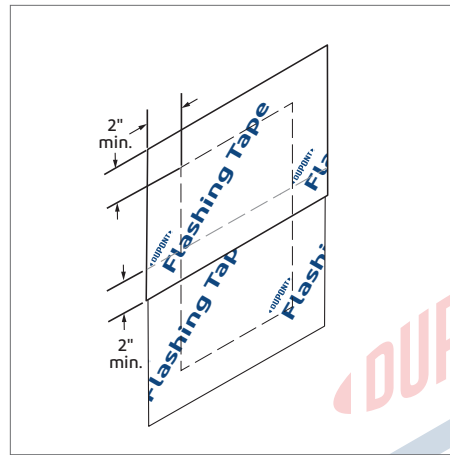
Knife plates represented in this detail are steel connectors used to attach balconies and other external structures to the main building structure.

**NOTE:** Knife plate styles may vary.



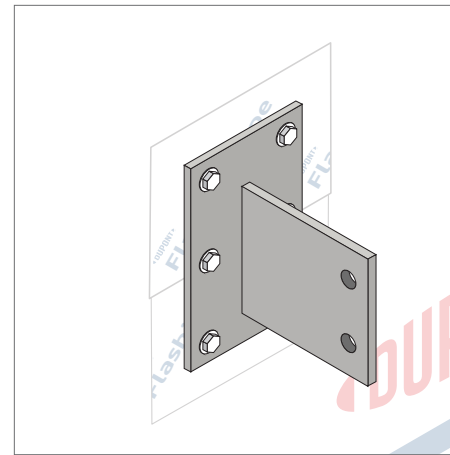
#### STEP 1

Install **Tyvek® WRB** and identify location of future knife plate.



#### STEP 2

Using overlapping pieces as needed, install **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** extending a minimum of 2" past the location of the knife plate on all sides (once installed) and with a minimum 2" overlap between flashing layers.



#### STEP 3

Install the knife plate per architectural plans/drawings.

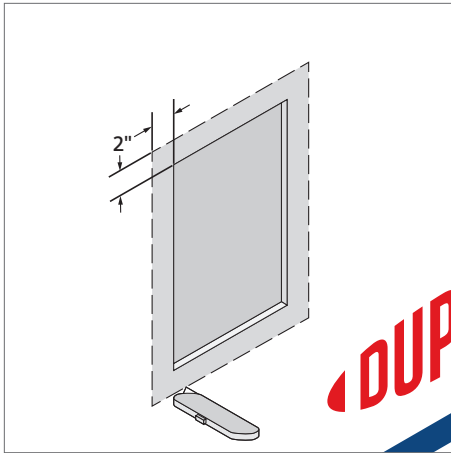
**OPTIONAL STEP:** Fasteners can be set in [chemically-compatible sealant](#) prior to installation for more redundancy.

## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB) Knife Plates

### Inset/Recessed with Wall

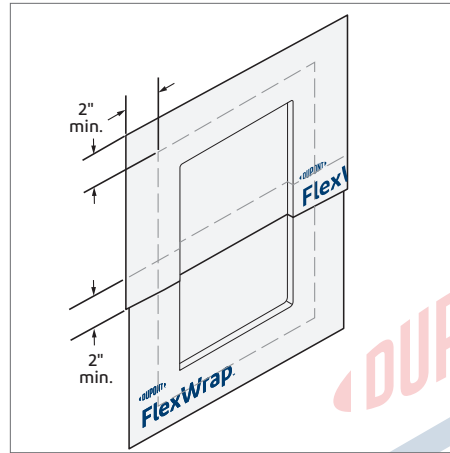
Knife plates represented in this detail are steel connectors used to attach balconies and other external structures to the main building structure.

**NOTE:** Knife plate styles may vary.



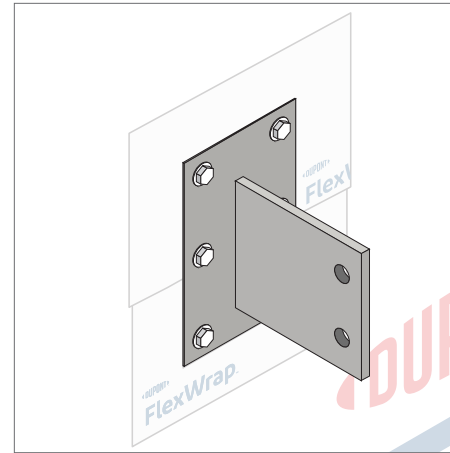
#### STEP 1

Install **Tyvek® WRB** and cut away 2" from the edge of the inset/recessed plane on all sides to expose the sheathing prior to installation of the flashing in next step.



#### STEP 2

Using overlapping pieces as needed, install\* **DuPont™ FlexWrap™** extending a minimum of 2" onto the **Tyvek® WRB** on all sides, and with a minimum 2" overlap between the flashing layers.



#### STEP 3

Install the knife plate per architectural plans/drawings.

**OPTIONAL STEP:** Fasteners can be set in [chemically-compatible sealant](#) prior to installation for more redundancy.

\*Use **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** with a [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) as applicable to seal directly to gypsum sheathing, concrete, wood, or other rough surfaces. An adhesive/primer is not required for wood-based sheathing, except when applying flashing during adverse weather.

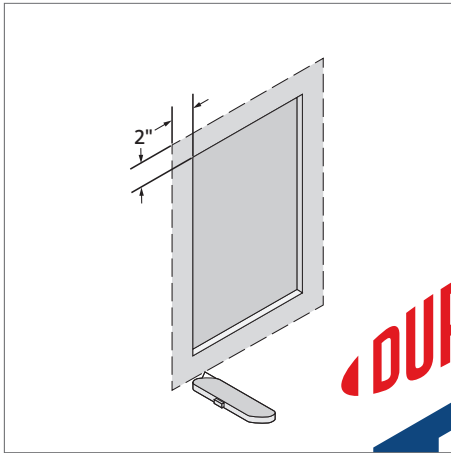
# DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

## Knife Plates

### Inset/Recessed with Wall (Hybrid Method Using DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products)

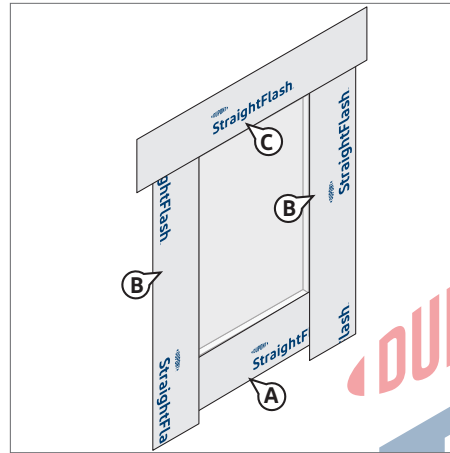
Knife plates represented in this detail are steel connectors used to attach balconies and other external structures to the main building structure.

**NOTE:** Knife plate styles may vary.



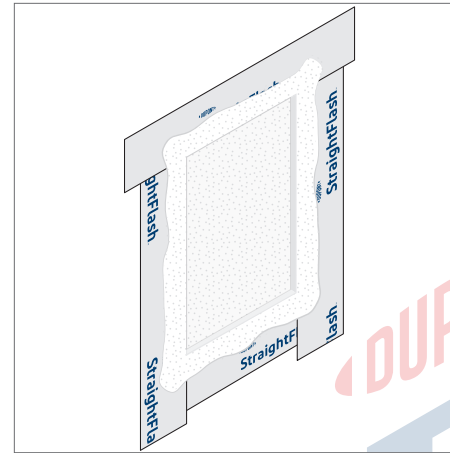
#### STEP 1

Install **Tyvek® WRB** and cut away 2" from the edge of the inset/recessed plane on all sides to expose the sheathing prior to installation of the flashing in next step.



#### STEP 2

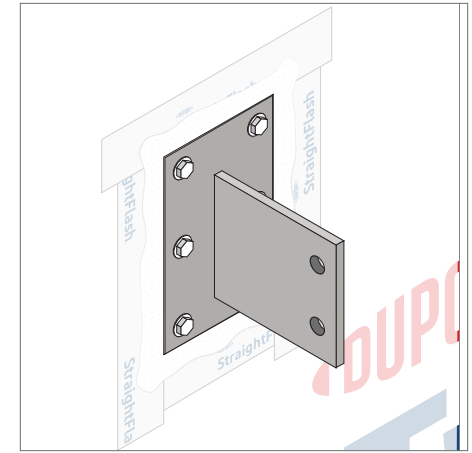
Terminate the **Tyvek® WRB** on all sides with 4 pieces of **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**. This sequence should first start with the bottom piece (A), side pieces (B), and lastly the top piece (C) for proper shingling and overlaps. Install\* **StraightFlash™** with minimum 2" of adhesion onto the **Tyvek® WRB**.



#### STEP 3

Apply **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Flashing and Joint Compound+** at 25 mils thick over the entire inset/recessed plane and overlap onto the topsheet of the **StraightFlash™** used on all sides. Ensure **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Flashing and Joint Compound+** is free of any voids or pinholes.

**NOTE:** Uncured **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** **MUST NOT** come in contact with **Tyvek® WRBs** due to potential impact on performance properties



#### STEP 4

Install the knife plate per architectural plans/drawings.

**NOTE:** Fasteners can be set in [chemically-compatible sealant](#) prior to installation for more redundancy.

\*Use **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** with a [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) as applicable to seal directly to gypsum sheathing, concrete, wood, or other rough surfaces. An adhesive/primer is not required for wood-based sheathing, except when applying flashing during adverse weather.

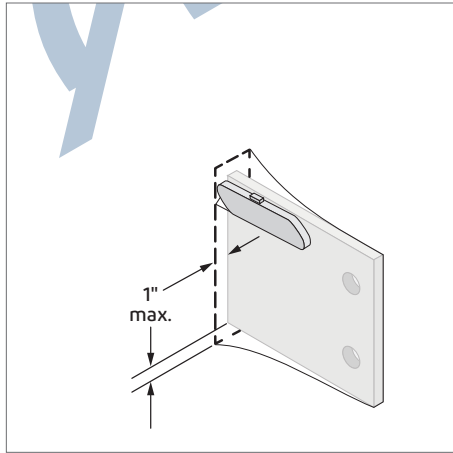
## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

### Knife Plates

#### Wall-Penetrating

Knife plates represented in this detail are steel connectors used to attach balconies and other external structures to the main building structure.

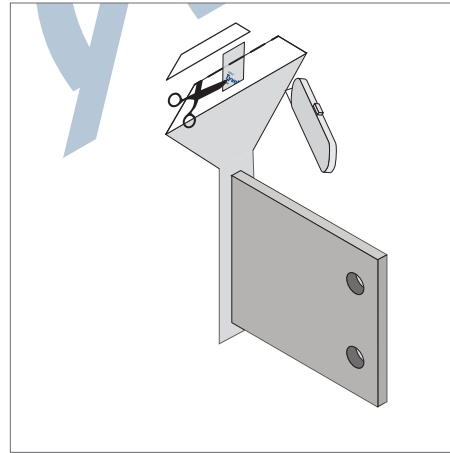
**NOTE:** Knife plate styles may vary. **Ensure DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ will NOT be left exposed after the completion of the cladding.**



#### STEP 1

Install the **Tyvek® WRB** over the knife plate and cut around the perimeter of the knife plate.

**NOTE: DO NOT CUT** the **Tyvek® WRB** more than 1" from the knife plate on all sides.

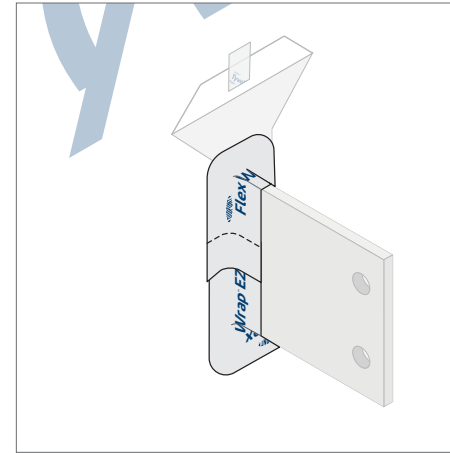


#### STEP 2

Cut a 45-degree slit a minimum of 8" extending from the corner of the knife plate, up and away from the corner. This will create a flap above the knife plate to expose the sheathing and allow for installation of **FlexWrap™ EZ** in STEP 3.

Cut a 1"–2" strip of the **Tyvek® WRB** at lower horizontal edge of the head flap and temporarily secure with **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape**.

**ALTERNATE METHOD TO SECURE TYVEK® WRB FLAP.** In lieu of temporarily taping, the **Tyvek® WRB** flap can be tucked under the **Tyvek® WRB**.

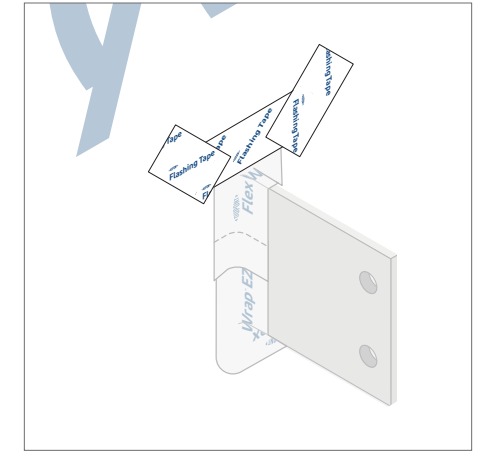


#### STEP 3

Seal around the knife plate using two pieces of **FlexWrap™ EZ**.

Cut the first piece of **FlexWrap™ EZ** long enough to wrap around the bottom half of the knife plate. Break the perforation in the release paper by folding the **FlexWrap™ EZ** top sheet to the inside of the fold. With the **FlexWrap™ EZ** still folded, remove the narrow piece of release paper and adhere the exposed butyl to the bottom and up each side of the knife plate. Remove the remaining release paper and fan the **FlexWrap™ EZ** out onto the **Tyvek® WRB** on the face of the wall.

Cut the second piece of **FlexWrap™ EZ** long enough to wrap around the top half of the knife plate, overlapping the first piece of **FlexWrap™ EZ** on each side by 2". Install\* along the top of the knife plate and down each side, overlapping the lower piece of **FlexWrap™ EZ** by 2" using the method above.



#### STEP 4

Flip down the **Tyvek® WRB** flap.

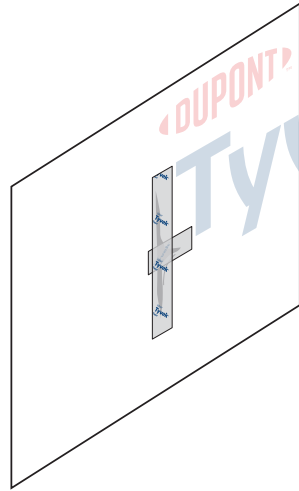
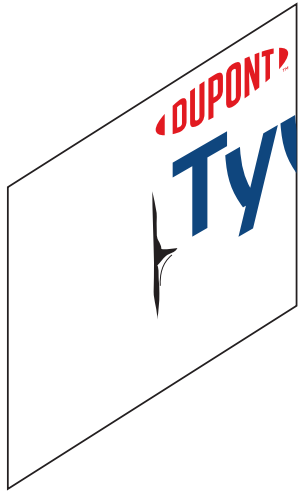
Tape seams using **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, or **Tyvek® Tape**.

**NOTE:** For a more robust head flap termination, seal with **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** or **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**.

\*Use **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** with a [chemically-compatible adhesive/primer](#) as applicable to seal directly to gypsum sheathing, concrete, wood, or other rough surfaces. An adhesive/primer is not required for wood-based sheathing, except when applying flashing during adverse weather.

## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB) Handling Tears and Holes

### Tears



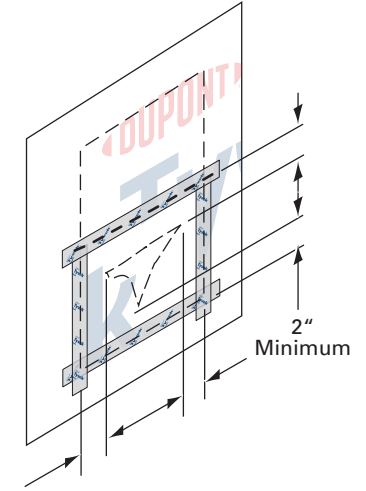
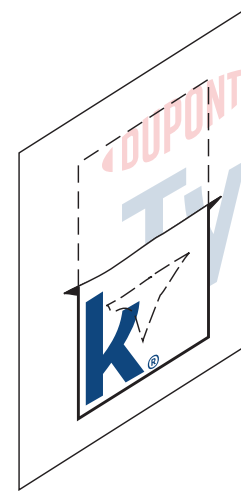
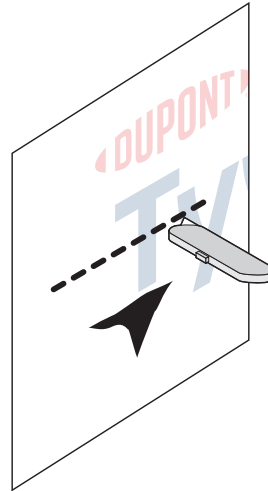
#### STEP 1

During the course of installing the **Tyvek® WRB**, minor tears may occur.

#### STEP 2

All tears should be sealed with **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** (2" or 3") or **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products**.

### Holes



#### STEP 1

Larger holes (greater than 1") may require cutting a piece of **Tyvek® WRB** to cover the hole, maintaining proper shingling. Cut a slit 2" above the hole and extending a minimum of 2" on each side of the hole.

#### STEP 2

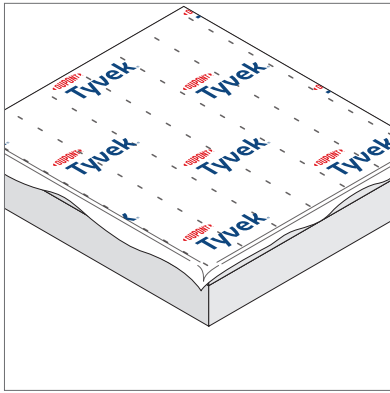
Measure and cut a piece of **Tyvek® WRB** to fit into the slit and cover the hole. Tuck the cut piece of **Tyvek® WRB** into the slit.

#### STEP 3

Seal seams with **Tyvek® Tape** along the perimeter by starting at the bottom of the patch, shingling upper tape over bottom tape.

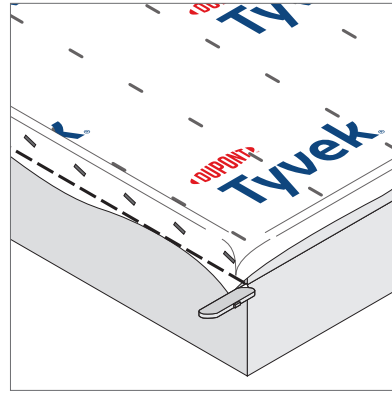
## DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions (Windows/Doors Installed BEFORE the Tyvek® WRB)

### Tilt Wall Instructions



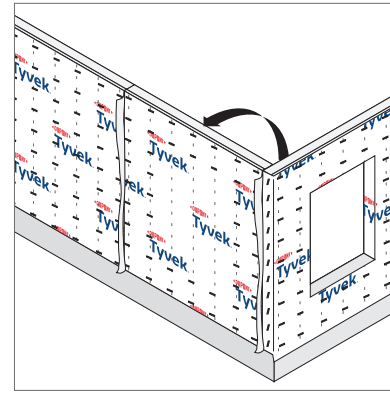
#### STEP 1

Unroll and secure **Tyvek® WRB** over the wall panel. Leave enough excess at sides and bottom to ensure a minimum 6" overlap of the **Tyvek® WRB** onto adjacent wall panels and minimum 1" overlap of the foundation below. These flaps allow for a **Tyvek® WRB-to-Tyvek® WRB** seal with adjacent sides. Position/cut the **Tyvek® WRB** so that it is flush with the top of the wall. When taping, make sure the stud marks printed on the **Tyvek® WRB** line up with the first stud and that the roll is plumb.



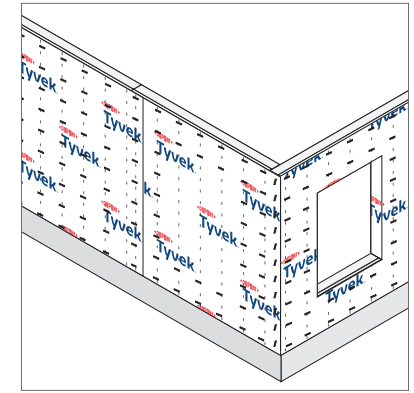
#### STEP 2

When starting a wall section, fold the beginning side flap over the vertical side of the stud and secure. Trim off excess. Only one side flap is needed (either left or right side of wall panel) to overlap adjacent panels; however, having the flap on the same side of each panel will ensure proper overlap from panel to panel and at building corners. Fold the flap that will overlap the adjacent panel onto the exterior face of the panel and temporarily secure with small pieces of **DuPont™ Tyvek® Tape** as needed to assist with raising the panel upright. Ensure that the bottom flap overhangs enough so that, when the wall is tilted upright, it overlaps the sill plate.



#### STEP 3

As each wall section is raised, ensure that the bottom flaps overlap the sill plate and that the side flaps are on the exterior of the house.



#### STEP 4

Fasten the side flaps and terminate the bottom flap in accordance with Option 1-3, depending on bottom of wall condition, in the [DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB Installation Instructions](#) section.

#### STEP 5

All vertical seams shall be taped with **Tyvek® Tape**. When installing as an air barrier, also tape all horizontal seams. Taping all vertical and horizontal seams, and taping or sealing all terminations (including, but not limited to, roof-wall interfaces and sill plates) is required when installing **Tyvek® WRBs** as air barriers. Use 3" **Tyvek® Tape** when taping horizontal laps of **DuPont™ Tyvek® StuccoWrap®** and **Tyvek® DrainWrap™**. Use **DuPont™ Tyvek® Metalized Tape** when taping **DuPont™ Tyvek® ThermaWrap® LE**.

#### STEP 6

After **Tyvek® WRB** is installed refer to the applicable window and door flashing conditions in this guide.

## Façade Considerations

Water-resistive barrier performance is dependent upon the ability of the facade to drain. **DuPont™ Tyvek® HomeWrap®** and **Tyvek® CommercialWrap®** provide >90% drainage efficiency, and **Tyvek® DrainWrap™**, **Tyvek® StuccoWrap®**, and **Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D** provide >98% drainage efficiency when tested in accordance with ASTM E2273. The following must be considered for specific facades:

### Stucco

The 2024 International Building Code (Section 2510.6) requires “a water-resistive barrier shall be installed as required in Section 1403.2 and shall comply with Section 2510.6.1 or 2510.6.2. Not fewer than one layer of water-resistive barrier material shall be attached to the studs or sheathing, with flashing as described in Section 1404.4, in such a manner as to provide a continuous water-resistive barrier behind the exterior wall veneer. The intersection between the water-resistive barrier material and fenestration openings shall be flashed and assembled in accordance with the fenestration manufacturer’s installation instructions, or other approved methods for applications not addressed by the fenestration manufacturer’s instructions. The water-resistive barrier material shall be continuous to the top of walls and terminated at penetrations and building appendages in a manner to meet the requirements of the exterior wall envelope as described in Section 1402.2. In a two-layer system, the individual layers shall be installed independently such that each layer provides a separate continuous plan and any flashing, installed in accordance with Section 1404.4 and intended to drain to the water-resistive barrier, is directed between the layers”. **Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™** should be installed directly over the primary wall substrate and integrated with the window and door flashings, the weep screed at the bottom of the wall and any through wall flashings or expansion joints. **DuPont™ Tyvek® Mechanically Fastened Water-Resistive and Air Barrier (WRB)** can be used as the intervening layer (second layer). Lath shall be installed over the intervening layer in accordance with ASTM C1063-03 *Standard Specification for Installation of Lathing and Furring to Receive Interior and Exterior Portland Cement-Based Plaster* and applicable codes. **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or recommended alternate may be required behind lath fasteners for high-performance installations.

### Brick (or Other Stacked/Anchored Masonry Veneers)

The Brick Industry Association recommends a 1-inch air-space in front of wood stud construction and a 2 inch air-space in front of steel stud construction. Consistent with these requirements and recommendations, **Tyvek® WRBs** shall be separated from the brick veneer by a nominal 1 inch air-space. Window and door flashing, and through-wall flashing shall be integrated with the **Tyvek® WRB** layer ensuring proper shingling. For maximum moisture management and drying of the wall system, the airspace in front of the **Tyvek® WRB** shall be vented to the exterior at the top and bottom of the wall. Some types of brick ties will act as additional fasteners for **Tyvek® WRBs**, and if installed as soon as practically possible after the **Tyvek® WRB**, may reduce the required number of fasteners used for the initial attachment of the **Tyvek® WRB**. **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or recommended alternate patch is required for high performance installations.

### Stone Veneer (or Other Adhered Masonry Veneers)

The 2024 International Building Code (Section 1404.7) requires two layers of air and water barrier behind stone veneers over wood frame construction. When used behind stone veneer, **Tyvek® WRBs** shall be installed in a similar manner as they are installed behind stucco. The **Tyvek® WRB** should be separated from the stone and mortar by a second layer of **Tyvek® WRB**, a layer of grade D building paper, felt, exterior continuous foam insulation or the paper backing of paper-backed lath. The first layer (directly over sheathing or studs) serves as the wall system’s air and water barrier and shall be integrated with window and door flashings, the weep screed at the bottom of the wall and any through wall flashing or expansion joints. Lath shall be installed over the intervening layer (second layer) in accordance with ASTM C1063 *Standard Specification for Installation of Lathing and Furring to Receive Interior and Exterior Portland Cement-Based Plaster* and applicable codes. When exterior continuous foam insulation is used as the second layer, it is installed over the **Tyvek® WRB**. **Tyvek® StuccoWrap®**, **Tyvek® DrainWrap™** or **Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D** is recommended for this application, since these products provide >98% drainage efficiency when tested in accordance with ASTM E2273. **Tyvek® HomeWrap®** and **Tyvek® CommercialWrap®** provide >90% drainage efficiency when tested in accordance with ASTM E2273. **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** or recommended alternate patch is required for high performance installations.

### Wood Siding

**Tyvek® WRBs** and wood siding shall be installed according to manufacturer’s instructions, industry standards and applicable codes. As recommended by the Western Red Cedar Lumber Association and U. S. Forest Product Laboratory, wood siding should be primed on all six sides before installation. When installed over exterior continuous insulation, the Western Red Cedar Lumber Association and other wood siding manufacturers recommend that furring strips are used to create an air space between foam sheathing and siding. Other recommendations that should be followed to minimize potential problems are:

- Use thicker siding patterns in widths of 8 inches or less. Thick, narrow siding is more stable than thinner, wider patterns and better able to resist dimensional changes.
- Use kiln-dried siding over rigid foam sheathing.
- Proper pre-finishing is essential.
- Use light color finish coats to maximize heat reflection and reduce dimensional movement.
- **Tyvek® StuccoWrap®**, **DuPont™ Tyvek® DrainWrap™** or **Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D** applied over the foam sheathing is recommended for this application.

## Façade Considerations

### Wood Siding (Continued)

In high exposure installations, enhanced drainage and water management may be provided by using **DuPont™ Tyvek® StuccoWrap®**, **Tyvek® DrainWrap™** or **DuPont™ Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D**, by installing a drainage mesh over the water-resistive barrier, or by creating rainscreen cladding with a larger air space behind the siding using furring strips. If furring is installed over the **DuPont™ Tyvek® WRB** to create a rainscreen, the primary fastener spacing can exceed 18". **DuPont™ Tyvek® HomeWrap®** and **Tyvek® CommercialWrap®** provide >90% drainage efficiency, and **Tyvek® DrainWrap™**, **Tyvek® StuccoWrap®**, and **Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D** provide >98% drainage efficiency when tested in accordance with ASTM E2273.

### Fiber Cement Siding

**Tyvek® WRBs** and fiber cement siding shall be installed according to manufacturer's instructions and industry standards. In high exposure installations, enhanced drainage and water management may be provided by using **Tyvek® StuccoWrap®**, **Tyvek® DrainWrap™** or **Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D**, by installing a drainage mesh over the water-resistive barrier, or by creating rainscreen cladding with a larger air space behind the siding using furring strips. If furring is installed over the **Tyvek® WRB** to create a rainscreen, the primary fastener spacing can exceed 18". In high wind areas at gable end walls, FEMA recommends fiber cement siding be installed over wood sheathing rather than over plastic foam sheathing. **Tyvek® WRBs** and fiber cement siding shall be installed according to manufacturer's instructions, industry standards and applicable codes. **Tyvek® HomeWrap®** and **Tyvek® CommercialWrap®** provide >90% drainage efficiency, and **Tyvek® DrainWrap™**, **Tyvek® StuccoWrap®**, and **Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D** provide >98% drainage efficiency when tested in accordance with ASTM E2273.

### Vinyl Siding

Vinyl Siding is installed directly over **Tyvek® WRBs**. Vinyl siding shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, industry standards and applicable codes, including ASTM D4756-15 *Standard Practice for Installation of Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Siding and Soffit*. In high wind areas at gable end walls, FEMA recommends vinyl siding be installed over wood sheathing rather than over plastic foam sheathing.

### EIFS

**Tyvek® WRBs** and EIFS cladding shall be installed according to manufacturer's instructions and industry standards. In order to promote drainage, it is recommended that **Tyvek® StuccoWrap®**, **Tyvek® DrainWrap™** or **Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D** be installed behind the exterior insulation. Window and door flashing, and through wall flashing shall be integrated with the **Tyvek® WRB** layer ensuring proper shingling. The successful installation and performance of EIFS cladding is dependent upon the proper design and construction of the adjacent materials and systems of the structure.

**Tyvek® HomeWrap®** and **Tyvek® CommercialWrap®** provide >90% drainage efficiency, and **Tyvek® DrainWrap™**, **Tyvek® StuccoWrap®**, and **Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D** provide >98% drainage efficiency when tested in accordance with ASTM E2273.

### Metal Panel

**Tyvek® WRBs** and metal panel cladding systems shall be installed according to manufacturer's instructions and industry standards. **DuPont™ StraightFlash™**, **DuPont™ Flashing Tape**, or recommended alternate patch can be installed behind all metal installation brackets and hat-channels fasteners for additional air and water infiltration resistance.

**NOTE:** The maximum in-service temperature for **Tyvek® WRBs**, **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products**, and **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** is 180°F.

### Exterior Insulation

When using **Tyvek® WRBs** with **DuPont Exterior Continuous Insulation Products**, please refer to the Installation Bulletin: [Integrating DuPont Building Envelope Solutions Products with DuPont Exterior Continuous Insulation](#) for guidance on fasteners and product installation. **Tyvek® WRBs** and exterior continuous insulation shall be installed according to the manufacturer's instructions and industry standards.

**Tyvek® WRBs** can be installed either over the rigid exterior continuous insulation or underneath between the sheathing and the exterior insulation. In order to promote drainage, it is recommended that **Tyvek® StuccoWrap®**, **Tyvek® DrainWrap™** or **Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D** be used when installing the **Tyvek® WRB** layer between the sheathing and exterior continuous insulation. Window flashing, door flashing, and through wall flashing shall be integrated with the **Tyvek® WRB** layer ensuring proper shingling. The successful installation and performance of exterior continuous insulation is dependent upon the proper design and construction of adjacent materials and systems of the structure.

**NOTE:** **DuPont™ RainVent™ Battens** can be used to improve the ventilation and draining space behind wood, stucco or stone masonry, vinyl, and fiber cement cladding types.

## Product Composition and UV Stability

**DuPont™ Tyvek® WRBs** used in construction products are made from 100% flash spunbonded high density polyethylene fibers which have been bonded together by heat and pressure, without binders or fillers, into a tough durable sheet structure. Additives have been incorporated into the polyethylene to provide ultraviolet light resistance. DuPont requires that **DuPont™ Tyvek® HomeWrap®**, **Tyvek® DrainWrap™**, **Tyvek® StuccoWrap®**, and **Tyvek® ThermaWrap® LE** be covered within 4 months (120 days) of installation. DuPont requires that **DuPont™ Tyvek® CommercialWrap®** and **Tyvek® CommercialWrap® D** be covered within 9 months (270 days) of installation.

**DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** are made from a synthetic rubber adhesive, and a top sheet of flash spunbonded high density polyethylene fibers or polypropylene film. Additives have been incorporated into these materials to provide ultraviolet light resistance. DuPont requires that **DuPont™ FlexWrap™**, **DuPont™ FlexWrap™ EZ**, **DuPont™ StraightFlash™** and **DuPont™ VersaFlange™** be covered within nine months (270 days) of installation. DuPont requires that **DuPont™ Flashing Tape** be covered within 4 months (120 days) of installation.

**DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** are silyl-terminated polyether based. They are formulated to include elastomeric polymers that cure to a continuous, fully-adhered, tough, durable membrane. Additives have been incorporated to provide ultraviolet light resistance.

DuPont requires that the **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™** and **DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Flashing and Joint Compound+** are to be covered within 9 months (270 days) of installation.

### Design Considerations

DuPont Building Envelope Solutions Products are to be used as outlined in this installation guideline. **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing** and **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Flashing and Joint Compound+** should only be used to seal penetrations and flash openings in buildings. **Tyvek® WRBs**, **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products**, and **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** are not to be used in roofing applications.

When installed in conjunction with other building materials, **Tyvek® WRBs**, **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products**, and **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** must be properly shingled with these materials such that water is diverted to the exterior of the wall system. **Tyvek® WRBs** and **Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™** are secondary weather barriers. The outer facade is the primary barrier.

Follow facade manufacturer's installation and maintenance requirements for all facade systems in order to maintain water holdout properties and ensure performance of **Tyvek® WRBs** and **Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™**.

Do not install on a wall that does not feature a continuous path for moisture drainage. Any standing water must be allowed to drain off the membrane.

Use of additives, coatings or cleaners on or in the facade system may impact the performance of **Tyvek® WRBs** and **Tyvek® Fluid Applied WB+™**.

For superior protection against bulk water penetration, DuPont suggests a system combining a quality exterior facade, a good secondary air and water barrier and exterior sheathing, high quality windows and doors, and appropriate flashing materials paying attention to proper installation of each component.

In a system where no exterior sheathing is used and **Tyvek® WRBs** are installed directly over the wall studs, exterior facade materials should be selected to ensure maximum protection against water intrusion. Careful workmanship and proper installation of each component is very important.

Depending on job site conditions, stains may appear on the **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products**, these discolorations will not alter the products' performance.

## Safety and Handling

### Warning

**Tyvek® WRBs** are slippery and should not be used in any application where they will be walked on. In addition, because they are slippery, DuPont recommends using kickjacks, scaffolding, or lifts for exterior work above the first floor. If ladders must be used, extra caution must be taken to use them safely by following the requirements set forth in ANSI Standards 14.1, 14.2, and 14.5 for ladders made of wood, aluminum, and fiberglass, respectively. **DuPont™ Tyvek®** is combustible and should be protected

from flames and other high heat sources. **DuPont™ Tyvek®** will melt at 275°F (135°C) and if the temperature of **DuPont™ Tyvek®** reaches 750°F (400°C), it will burn and the fire may spread and fall away from the point of ignition. For more information, call 1-833-338-7668.

**DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** and their release paper are slippery and should not be walked on. Remove release paper from work area immediately.

**DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** will melt at temperatures greater than 250°F (121°C). **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** are combustible and should be protected from flames and other high heat sources. **DuPont Self-Adhered Flashing Products** will not support combustion if the heat source is removed. However, if burning occurs, ignited droplets may fall away from the point of ignition. For more information, call 1-833-338-7668.

Tower® Residential Sealant (formerly DuPont™ Residential Sealant) is irritating to skin, eyes, and respiratory tract. For proper usage, follow directions stated on the product label. For health information, refer to the Safety Data Sheet (SDS) or call Chemtrec at 1-800-424-9300.

**Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** may cause irritation. Repeated or prolonged skin contact may cause allergic reactions with susceptible persons. May cause irritation of respiratory tract. **Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** are mixtures. Safety and Handling information is based on the products' components. Refer to each product's Safety Data Sheet (SDS) for further information.

## Safety and Handling (continued)

### KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN.

Children can fall in to bucket and drown. Keep children away from bucket with even a small amount of liquid.

Use only as directed. Avoid inhalation of vapor aerosol.

### Caution

#### DuPont™ Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products

are **FOR PROFESSIONAL USE ONLY**. Do not handle until all safety precautions have been read and understood. Avoid breathing dust/fumes/gas/mist/vapors/spray. Vapor and aerosols are harmful when using a spray application. If airborne particles are inhaled while spraying, immediately, immediately move from exposure to fresh air and contact a physician. Use in a well-ventilated area. A NIOSH-approved particulate filtering full-face respirator with a P95 particulate filter or half-mask respirator with a P95 particulate filter and splash impact goggles must be used when spraying. NIOSH-approved N95 disposable safety mask with splash impact goggles can be used for manual application such as troweling or rolling, and for clean-up. If vapors are inhaled, immediately move from exposure to fresh air and contact a physician.

Contaminated work clothing should not be allowed out of the workplace. Wear protective gloves/protective clothing/eye protection/face protection. IF ON SKIN: Wash with plenty of soap and water. IF IN EYES: Rinse cautiously with water for several minutes. Remove contact lenses, if present and easy to do. Continue rinsing. IF EXPOSED OR CONCERNED: Get medical advice/attention. Immediately call a POISON CENTER/doctor. IF SKIN IRRITATION OR RASH OCCURS: Get medical advice/ attention. Wash contaminated clothing before reuse. Store locked up. Dispose of contents/ container to an approved waste disposal plant. Avoid contact with eyes and skin.

When cured, **Great Stuff Pro™ Window & Door Polyurethane Foam Sealant** is combustible and will burn if exposed to open flame or sparks from high-energy sources. Do not expose to temperatures above 240°F (116°C). For more information, consult the Safety Data Sheet (SDS), call DuPont at 1-866-583-2583. When air sealing buildings, ensure that combustion appliances, such as furnaces, water heaters, wood burning stoves, gas stoves and gas dryers are properly vented to the outside. See website: <https://www.nrel.gov/docs/fy14osti/61326.pdf>.

In Canada visit: <https://nrc-publications.canada.ca/eng/view/ft/?id=96acba7c-afd4-4ea1-94b0-1f8f3500c582>.

**Great Stuff Pro™** polyurethane foam sealant and adhesive products contain isocyanate and a flammable blowing agent. Read all instructions and the Safety Data Sheet (SDS), carefully before use. Eliminate all sources of ignition before use. Cover all skin. Wear long sleeves, gloves, and safety glasses or goggles. Not for use in aviation, or food/beverage contact, or as structural support in marine applications. Provide adequate ventilation or wear proper respiratory protection. Contents under pressure. Not to be used for filling closed cavities or voids such as behind walls and under tub surrounds; this improper use of the product could result in the accumulation of flammable vapors and/or uncured material. Failure to follow the warnings and instructions provided with the product, and/or all applicable rules and regulations, can result in injury or death.

Building and/or construction practices unrelated to building materials could greatly affect moisture and the potential for mold formation. No material supplied by DuPont can give assurance that mold will not develop in any specific system.

Read all instructions and the Safety Data Sheet (SDS) carefully before use.

For more information, visit [greatstuffpro.com](http://greatstuffpro.com) or [building.dupont.com](http://building.dupont.com)

### Hazard Statement

**Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products** may cause an allergic skin reaction. May cause serious eye damage. May cause genetic defects. May damage fertility or the unborn child. As it relates to California Prop 65, Tyvek® Fluid Applied Products can expose you to substances including Crystalline silica, which is /are known to the State of California to cause cancer. For more information, visit [p65Warnings.ca.gov](http://p65Warnings.ca.gov).

### For More Information

Visit the *Quick Links* section of our website (<https://www.dupont.com/building/resources.html>) where you'll find links to essential documents and resources to help you get the job done right:

- Installation Guidelines
- Safety Data Sheets (SDS)
- CAD Drawings
- DuPont Performance Building Solutions Document Library

For complete warranty information please call 1-833-338-7668 or visit us at [building.dupont.com](http://building.dupont.com).

*NOTICE: No freedom from any patent owned by DuPont or others is to be inferred. Because use conditions and applicable laws may differ from one location to another and may change with time, Customer is responsible for determining whether products and the information in this document are appropriate for Customer's use and for ensuring that Customer's workplace and disposal practices are in compliance with applicable laws and other government enactments. The product shown in this literature may not be available for sale and/or available in all geographies where DuPont is represented. The claims made may not have been approved for use in all countries or regions. DuPont assumes no obligation or liability for the information in this document. References to "DuPont" or the "Company" mean the DuPont legal entity selling the products to Customer unless otherwise expressly noted. NO EXPRESS WARRANTIES ARE GIVEN EXCEPT FOR ANY APPLICABLE WRITTEN WARRANTIES SPECIFICALLY PROVIDED BY DUPONT. ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES INCLUDING THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE EXPRESSLY EXCLUDED. The buyer assumes all risks as to the use of the material. Buyer's exclusive remedy or any claim (including without limitations, negligence, strict liability, or tort) shall be limited to the refund of the purchase price of the material. Failure to strictly adhere to any recommended procedures shall release DuPont de Nemours, Inc., and its affiliates, of all liability with respect to the materials or the use thereof. The information herein is not intended for use by non-professional designers, applicators or other persons who do not purchase or utilize this product in the normal course of their business.*

© 2025 DuPont. DuPont™, the DuPont Oval Logo, and all trademarks and service marks denoted with ™, SM, or ® are owned by affiliates of DuPont de Nemours, Inc. unless otherwise noted. S2-Seal™ is a trademark of Hohmann & Barnard, Inc. Grip-Deck®, Grip-Lok®, Thermal-Grip FastCap™, and Thermal-Grip FastCap™ are trademarks or registered trademarks of TRUFAST. Heckmann™ and Pos-I-Tie® are trademarks or registered trademarks of Mechanical Plastics Corp. Stinger® is a registered trademark of National Nail Corp. Tapcon is a registered trademark of Illinois Tool Works Inc. Tower® is a registered trademark of Tower Sealants.



For more information about DuPont Performance Building Solutions, please call 1-833-338-7668 or visit us at [building.dupont.com](https://building.dupont.com)